Genie®
A TEREX BRAND

Service Manual

Serial Number Range

ZX-135/70

From ZX13513-2001
to ZX13514-2532

(does not include
ZX13514-2463,
ZX13514-2469 and
ZX13514-2531)

Part No. 218700
Rev F
September 2015

Introduction

Important

Read, understand and obey the safety rules and operating instructions in the appropriate Operator's Manual on your machine before attempting any maintenance procedure.

This manual provides detailed scheduled maintenance information for the machine owner and user. It also provides troubleshooting and repair procedures for qualified service professionals.

Basic mechanical, hydraulic and electrical skills are required to perform most procedures. However, several procedures require specialized skills, tools, lifting equipment and a suitable workshop. In these instances, we strongly recommend that maintenance and repair be performed at an authorized Genie dealer service center.

Compliance

Machine Classification

Group B/Type 3 as defined by ISO 16368

Machine Design Life

Unrestricted with proper operation, inspection and scheduled maintenance.

Technical Publications

Genie has endeavored to deliver the highest degree of accuracy possible. However, continuous improvement of our products is a Genie policy. Therefore, product specifications are subject to change without notice.

Readers are encouraged to notify Genie of errors and send in suggestions for improvement. All communications will be carefully considered for future printings of this and all other manuals.

Contact Us:

Internet: www.genielift.com
E-mail: awp.techpub@terex.com

Find a Manual for this Model

Go to http://www.genielift.com

Use the links to locate Operator's, Parts, Maintenance, and Service and Repair manuals.

218700 Rev F, September 2015

First Edition, Sixth Printing

Revision History

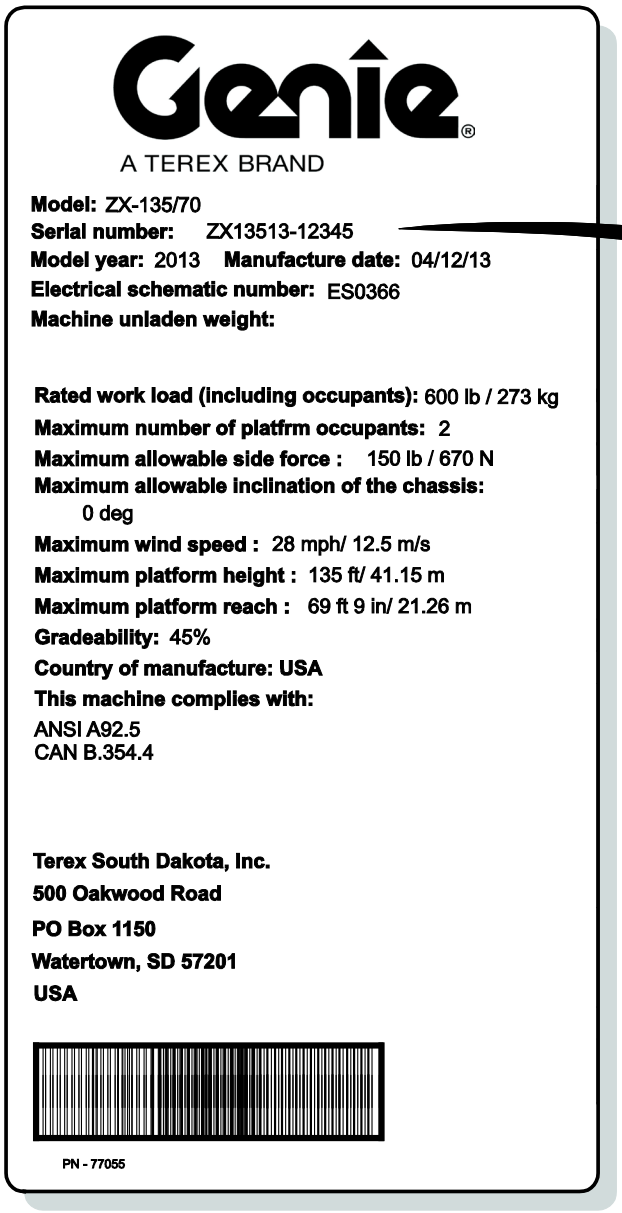
Revision	Date	Section	Procedure / Page / Description
A	12/2012		Initial Release
A1	9/2013	Schematics	Electrical Schematic
B	9/2013	Maintenance Schematics	B-18, D-1 Electrical Schematic
B1	12/2013	Repair	4-8
C	4/2014	Specifications Repair	Perkins 1104D-44T 4-8, 4-9
D	4/2014	Fault Codes Specifications	Fault Codes Performance Specifications
D1	6/2014	Maintenance	B-19
D2	8/2014	Maintenance Repair	Added B-20, Moved D-9 to C-8, C-1, C-3 1-2
D3	10/2014	Specifications Repair	Deutz TD2011L04i 6-1
D4	11/2014	Specifications Repair	Machine Specifications Display Module, 4-8, 4-9
D5	11/2014	Specifications	Performance Specifications
E	2/2015	Maintenance Repair Fault Codes Schematics	Checklist B, B-3, B-19, B-20, B-21, B-22, B-23, B-24 1-1, 3-6, 4-8, 4-9, 6-1, 6-2, 6-4, 8-5, 9-2 Display Module Fault Matrix Hydraulic Schematic
E1	5/2015	Maintenance Repair	B-23 6-1 (Recovery mode)
Reference Examples:			
Section – Maintenance, B-3			**Electronic Version** Click on any content or procedure in the Table of Contents to view the update.
Section – Repair Procedure, 4-2			
Section – Fault Codes, All charts			
Section – Schematics, Legends and schematics			

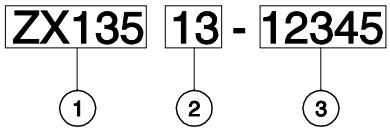
Introduction

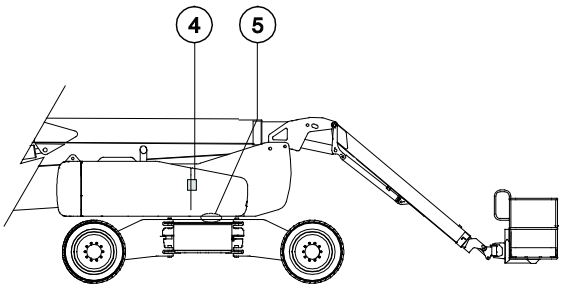
Revision History

Revision	Date	Section	Procedure / Page / Description
F	9/2015	Repair	3-6, 4-8, 4-9, 6-1
		Fault Codes	Added Deutz TD2.9 L4, Perkins 854F-34T
		Schematics	Updated Perkins 1104D-44T Added Perkins 854F-34T Added Deutz TD2.9 L4 Electrical schematic
Reference Examples:			
Section – Maintenance, B-3			**Electronic Version** Click on any content or procedure in the Table of Contents to view the update.
Section – Repair Procedure, 4-2			
Section – Fault Codes, All charts			
Section – Schematics, Legends and schematics			

Serial Number Legend







1 Model
2 Model year
3 Sequence number
4 Serial label (located under cover)
5 Serial number (stamped on chassis)

Safety Rules

Danger

Failure to obey the instructions and safety rules in this manual and the appropriate Operator's Manual on your machine will result in death or serious injury.

Many of the hazards identified in the operator's manual are also safety hazards when maintenance and repair procedures are performed.

Do Not Perform Maintenance Unless:

☑ You are trained and qualified to perform maintenance on this machine.

☑ You read, understand and obey:

- manufacturer's instructions and safety rules
- employer's safety rules and worksite regulations
- applicable governmental regulations

☑ You have the appropriate tools, lifting equipment and a suitable workshop.

Safety Rules

Personal Safety

Any person working on or around a machine must be aware of all known safety hazards. Personal safety and the continued safe operation of the machine should be your top priority.

Read each procedure thoroughly. This manual and the decals on the machine, use signal words to identify the following:

Safety alert symbol—used to alert personnel to potential personal injury hazards. Obey all safety messages that follow this symbol to avoid possible injury or death.

⚠ DANGER Indicates a imminently hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.

⚠ WARNING Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.

⚠ CAUTION Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may cause minor or moderate injury.

NOTICE Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in property damage.

Be sure to wear protective eye wear and other protective clothing if the situation warrants it.

Be aware of potential crushing hazards such as moving parts, free swinging or unsecured components when lifting or placing loads. Always wear approved steel-toed shoes.

Workplace Safety

Any person working on or around a machine must be aware of all known safety hazards. Personal safety and the continued safe operation of the machine should be your top priority.

Be sure to keep sparks, flames and lighted tobacco away from flammable and combustible materials like battery gases and engine fuels. Always have an approved fire extinguisher within easy reach.

Be sure that all tools and working areas are properly maintained and ready for use. Keep work surfaces clean and free of debris that could get into machine components and cause damage.

Be sure any forklift, overhead crane or other lifting or supporting device is fully capable of supporting and stabilizing the weight to be lifted. Use only chains or straps that are in good condition and of ample capacity.

Be sure that fasteners intended for one time use (i.e., cotter pins and self-locking nuts) are not reused. These components may fail if they are used a second time.

Be sure to properly dispose of old oil or other fluids. Use an approved container. Please be environmentally safe.

Be sure that your workshop or work area is properly ventilated and well lit.

Table of Contents

Table of Contents

Table of Contents

Table of Contents

Table of Contents

Table of Contents

Table of Contents

Table of Contents

This page intentionally left blank.

Specifications

Machine Specifications

Tires and wheels	
Tire size	445D50/710, 18PR
Tire ply rating	18
Tire weight, new foam-filled (minimum)	800 lbs 363 kg
Overall tire diameter	45.47 in 115.5 cm
Wheel diameter	28 in 71.1 cm
Wheel width	15 in 38.1 cm
Wheel lugs	10 @ 3/4 -16
Lug nut torque, dry	420 ft-lbs 569.4 Nm
Lug nut torque, lubricated	320 ft-lbs 433.9 Nm
Fluid capacities	
Fuel tank	40 gallons 151.4 liters
Hydraulic tank	65 gallons 246 liters
Hydraulic system (including tank)	123 gallons 466 liters
Drive hubs	47 fl oz 1390 cc
Turntable rotation drive hub	40 fl oz 1183 cc
Drive hub oil type: SAE 90 multipurpose hypoid gear oil API service classification GL5	

Performance Specifications

Drive speed, maximum	
Stowed position, high speed	3.0 mph 4.8 km/h 40 ft / 9.1 sec 12.2 m / 9.1 sec
Raised or extended	0.7 mph 1.1 km/h 40 ft / 40 sec 12.2 m / 40 sec
Primary and Secondary booms raised, and Primary and Jib extended	0.4 mph 0.6 km/h 40 ft / 68 sec 12.2 m / 68 sec
Braking distance, maximum	
High range on paved surface	3 to 6 ft 1 to 2 m
Gradeability	See Operator's Manual
Boom function speeds, maximum from platform controls	
Jib boom up/down	38 to 43 seconds
Jib boom extend/retract	28 to 38 seconds
Primary boom up/down -60° to +70°	110 to 125 seconds
Primary boom extend/retract	35 to 48 seconds
Secondary boom up/down	80 to 95 seconds
Secondary boom extend/retract	88 to 98 seconds
Turntable rotate, 360° fully stowed	88 to 92 seconds
Turntable rotate, 360°jib or primary booms extended	160 to 180 seconds
Turntable rotate, 360°jib and primary booms extended	280 to 350 seconds

For operational specifications, refer to the Operator's Manual.

Specifications

Hydraulic Oil Specifications

Hydraulic Fluid Specifications	
Genie specifications require hydraulic oils which are designed to give maximum protection to hydraulic systems, have the ability to perform over a wide temperature range, and the viscosity index should exceed 140. They should provide excellent antiwear, oxidation prevention, corrosion inhibition, seal conditioning, and foam and aeration suppression properties.	
Cleanliness level, minimum	ISO 15/13
Water content, maximum	250 ppm
Recommended Hydraulic Fluid	
Hydraulic oil type	Chevron Rando HD Premium
Viscosity grade	32
Viscosity index	200
Optional Hydraulic Fluids	
Mineral based	Shell Tellus S2 V 32 Shell Tellus S2 V 46 Shell Tellus S4 VX 32 Shell Shell Donax TG (Dexron III) Chevron 5606A
Biodegradable	Petro Canada Environ MV 46
Fire resistant	UCON Hydrolube HP-5046

Note: Genie specifications require additional equipment and special installation instructions for the approved optional fluids. Consult Genie Product Support before use.

NOTICE

Optional fluids may not have the same hydraulic lifespan and may result in component damage.

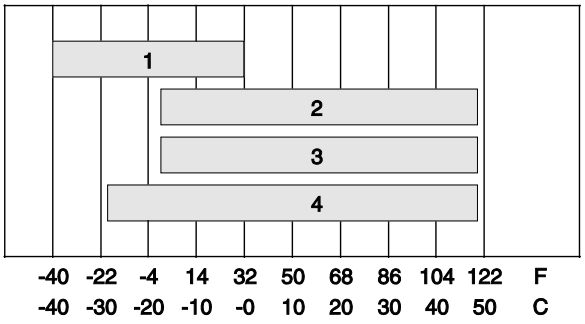
Note: Extended machine operation can cause the hydraulic fluid temperature to increase beyond it's maximum allowable range. If the hydraulic fluid temperature consistently exceeds 200°F / 90°C an optional oil cooler may be required.

NOTICE

Do not top off with incompatible hydraulic fluids. Hydraulic fluids may be incompatible due to the differences in base additive chemistry. When incompatible fluids are mixed, insoluble materials may form and deposit in the hydraulic system, plugging hydraulic lines, filters, control valves and may result in component damage.

Note: Do not operate the machine when the ambient air temperature is consistently above 120°F / 49°C.

Hydraulic Fluid Temperature Range



Ambient air temperature

1 Chevron hydraulic oil 5606A
2 Petro-Canada Environ MV 46
3 UCON Hydrolube HP-5046D
4 Chevron Rando HD premium oil MV

Chevron Rando HD Premium Oil MV Fluid Properties

ISO Grade	32
Viscosity index	200
Kinematic Viscosity cSt @ 200°F / 100°C cSt @ 104°F / 40°C	 7.5 33.5
Brookfield Viscosity cP @ -4°F / -20°C cP @ -22°F / -30°C	 1040 3310
Flash point	375°F / 190°C
Pour point	-58°F / -50°C
Maximum continuous operating temperature	171°F / 77°C

Note: An hydraulic oil heating system is recommended when the ambient temperature is consistently below 0°F / -18°C.

Note: Do not operate the machine when the ambient temperature is below -20°F / -29°C with Rando HD Premium MV.

Chevron 5606A Hydraulic Oil Fluid Properties

ISO Grade	15
Viscosity index	300
Kinematic Viscosity cSt @ 200°F / 100°C cSt @ 104°F / 40°C cSt @ -40°F / -40°C	 5.5 15.0 510
Flash point	180°F / 82°C
Pour point	-81°F / -63°C
Maximum continuous operating temperature	124°F / 51°C

Note: Use of Chevron 5606A hydraulic fluid, or equivalent, is required when ambient temperatures are consistently below 0°F / -17°C unless an oil heating system is used.

NOTICE

Continued use of Chevron 5606A hydraulic fluid, or equivalent, when ambient temperatures are consistently above 32°F / 0°C may result in component damage

Petro-Canada Environ MV 46 Fluid Properties

ISO Grade	46
Viscosity index	154
Kinematic Viscosity cSt @ 200°F / 100°C cSt @ 104°F / 40°C	 8.0 44.4
Flash point	482°F / 250°C
Pour point	-49°F / -45°C
Maximum continuous operating temperature	180°F / 82°C

UCON Hydrolube HP-5046 Fluid Properties

ISO Grade	46
Viscosity index	192
Kinematic Viscosity cSt @ 149°F / 65°C cSt @ 104°F / 40°C cSt @ 0°F / -18°C	 22 46 1300
Flash point	None
Pour point	-81°F / -63°C
Maximum continuous operating temperature	189°F / 87°C

Specifications

Hydraulic Component Specifications

Drive Pump	
Type: bi-directional variable displacement piston pump	
Displacement per revolution	2.8 cu in 46 cc
Flow rate @ 2350 rpm	28.5 gpm 108 L/min
Drive pressure, maximum	3625 psi 250 bar
Charge Pump	
Type	gerotor
Displacement per revolution	0.85 cu in 13.9 cc
Flow rate @ 2350 rpm	9 gpm 34 L/min
Charge pressure @ 2350 rpm Neutral position	315 ps 21.7 bar
Function pump	
Type: variable displacement piston pump	
Displacement per revolution	0 to 2.75 cu in 0 to 45 cc
Flow rate @ 2350 rpm	0 to 28 gpm 0 to 106 L/min
Pressure, maximum	2900 psi 200 bar
Pressure compensator	2900 psi 200 bar
Standby pressure	250 psi 17 bar

Auxiliary Pump	
Type: fixed displacement gear pump	
Displacement per revolution	0.15 cu in 2.47 cc
Function manifold	
System relief valve pressure, maximum (measured at test port)	3100 psi 213.7 bar
Primary boom extend relief pressure (measured at ptest port)	2600 psi 179 bar
Jib and platform manifolds	
Platform rotate and platform level flow regulator	0.2 gpm 0.76 L/min
Jib manifold flow regulator	2 gpm 7.6 L/min
Steer/Axle Manifold	
Axle extend relief pressure	2400 psi 165 bar
Traction Manifold	
Hot oil relief pressure	250 psi 17.2 bar
Hydraulic Filters	
High pressure filter:	Beta 3 ≥ 200
High pressure filter bypass pressure	102 psi 7 bar
Medium pressure filter	Beta 3 ≥ 200
Medium pressure filter bypass pressure	51 psi 3.5 bar
Hydraulic tank return filter	10 micron with 25 psi / 1.7 bar bypass
Drive motor case drain return filter	Beta 10 ≥ 2

Specifications

Brakes	
Brake relief pressure	190 psi 13 bar
Drive Motors	
Displacement per revolution, high speed	0.8 cu in 13.3 cc
Displacement per revolution, low speed (square end)	2.7 cu in 45 cc
Displacement per revolution, low speed (circle end)	1.5 cu in 25 cc

Manifold Component Specifications	
Plug torque	
SAE No. 2	36 in-lbs / 4 Nm
SAE No. 4	10 ft-lbs / 13 Nm
SAE No. 6	14 ft-lbs / 19 Nm
SAE No. 8	38 ft-lbs / 51 Nm
SAE No. 10	41 ft-lbs / 55 Nm
SAE No. 12	56 ft-lbs / 76 Nm
Valve coil resistance specifications	
Solenoid valve, 3 position 4 way (schematic item A, B, C, D, W)	7.2Ω
Solenoid Valve, 2 position 3 way (schematic items D, E, F, G, I, Z)	5.6Ω
Solenoid Valve, 2 position 3 way (schematic items P,Q)	7.2Ω
Solenoid Valve, 2 position 3 way (schematic items AE)	8.8Ω
Proportional solenoid valve, 3 position 4 way (schematic items Y and AF)	8.8Ω
Solenoid Valve, 2 position 3 way (schematic items AD)	7.1Ω
Solenoid valve, 2 position, 2 way (schematic item A)	3.5 to 5.5Ω

Specifications

Deutz TD2011L04i Engine

Displacement	220.9 cu. in 3.62 liters
Number of cylinders	4
Bore and Stroke	3.78 x 4.92 inches 96 x 125 mm
Horsepower net intermittent @ 2400 rpm	74 hp 55 kW
Induction system	turbocharged
Firing order	1 - 3 - 4 - 2
Low idle	1500 rpm 383 Hz
High idle	2350 rpm 599 Hz
Compression ratio	17.5:1
Compression pressure pressure (psi or bar) of the lowest cylinder must be at least 75% of the highest cylinder	
Governor	centrifugal mechanical
Valve Clearance, cold	
Intake	0.012 in 0.3 mm
Exhaust	0.020 in 0.5 mm
Lubrication system	
Oil pressure, hot (@ 2000 rpm)	40 to 60 psi 2.8 to 4.1 bar
Oil capacity (including filter)	12.8 quarts 12.1 liters
Oil viscosity requirements	
-22°F to 86°F / -30°C to 30°C	5W-30 (synthetic)
-4°F to 104°F / -20°C to 40°C	10W-40
Above 5°F / -15°C	15W-40

Unit ships with 15W-40. Extreme operating temperatures may require the use of alternative engine oils. For oil requirements, refer to the Engine Operator Manual for your engine.

Oil temperature switch	
Installation torque	8 - 18 ft-lbs 11 - 24 Nm
Temperature switch point	275°F 135°C
Oil Pressure switch	
Installation torque	8 - 18 ft-lbs 11 - 24 Nm
Pressure switch point	22 psi 1.5 bar
Fuel injection system	Motorpal
Injection pump pressure, maximum	15,000 psi 1034 bar
Injector opening pressure	3046 psi 210 bar
Fuel requirement	
For fuel requirements, refer to the engine Operator Manual for your engine.	
Starter motor	
Current draw, normal load	140 - 200A
Cranking speed	250 - 350 rpm
Battery – Auxiliary power units	
Type	6V DC
Quantity	2
Battery capacity, maximum	285 AH
Reserve capacity @ 25A rate	745 minutes
Battery – Engine starting and control system	
Type	12V DC, Group 31
Quantity	1
Battery capacity, maximum	1000A
Reserve capacity @ 25A rate	200 Minutes
Alternator output	80A @ 14V DC
Fan belt deflection	3/8 to 1/2 inch 9 to 12 mm

Deutz TD 2.9 Engine

Displacement	177 cu. in 2.9 liters
Number of cylinders	4
Bore and Stroke	3.6 x 4.3 inches 92 x 110 mm
Horsepower net intermittent @ 2600 rpm	74.2 hp 55 kW
Induction system	turbocharged
Firing order	1 - 3 - 4 - 2
Low idle	1000 rpm
High idle	2500 rpm
Compression ratio	17.4:1
Compression pressure pressure (psi or bar) of the lowest cylinder must be at least 75% of the highest cylinder	
Governor	electronic
Lubrication system	
Oil pressure, hot (@ 2000 rpm)	40 to 60 psi 2.8 to 4.1 bar
Oil capacity (including filter)	9.4 quarts 8.9 liters
Oil viscosity requirements	
-22°F to 86°F / -30°C to 30°C	5W-30 (synthetic)
-4°F to 104°F / -20°C to 40°C	10W-40
Above 5°F / -15°C	15W-40
Unit ships with 15W-40. Extreme operating temperatures may require the use of alternative engine oils. For oil requirements, refer to the Engine Operator Manual for your engine.	

Oil temperature switch	
Installation torque	8 - 18 ft-lbs 11 - 24 Nm
Temperature switch point	275°F 135°C
Oil Pressure switch	
Installation torque	8 - 18 ft-lbs 11 - 24 Nm
Pressure switch point	22 psi 1.5 bar
Fuel injection system	Motorpal
Injection pump pressure, maximum	15,000 psi 1034 bar
Injector opening pressure	3046 psi 210 bar
Fuel requirement	
For fuel requirements, refer to the engine Operator Manual for your engine.	
Starter motor	
Current draw, normal load	140 - 200A
Cranking speed	250 - 350 rpm
Battery – Engine starting and control system	
Type	12V DC, Group 31
Quantity	1
Battery capacity, maximum	1000A
Reserve capacity @ 25A rate	200 Minutes
Engine coolant	Ethylene Glycol
Engine coolant capacity	11.1 quarts 10.5 liters
Alternator output	95A @ 14V DC
Fan belt deflection	3/8 to 1/2 inch 9 to 12 mm

Specifications

Perkins 1104D-44T

Displacement	268.5 cu. in 4.4 liters
Number of cylinders	4
Bore and Stroke	4.13 x 5 inches 105 x 127 mm
Horsepower net intermittent @ 2200 rpm	68 hp / 50.7 kW 74 hp / 55.2 kW
Induction system	turbocharged
Firing order	1 - 3 - 4 - 2
Low idle	1300 rpm 312 Hz
High idle	2350 rpm 572 Hz
Compression ratio	18.2:1
Compression pressure pressure (psi or bar) of the lowest cylinder must be at least 75% of the highest cylinder	
Governor	centrifugal mechanical
Valve Clearance, cold	
Intake	0.008 in 0.2 mm
Exhaust	0.018 in 0.45 mm

Lubrication system	
Oil pressure, hot (@ 2000 rpm)	40 to 60 psi 2.8 to 4.1 bar
Oil capacity (including filter)	8.3 quarts 7.9 liters
Oil viscosity requirements	
-22°F to 86°F / -30°C to 30°C	5W-20
-4°F to 104°F / -20°C to 40°C	10W-40
Above 5°F / -15°C	15W-40
Unit ships with 15W-40. Extreme operating temperatures may require the use of alternative engine oils. For oil requirements, refer to the Engine Operator Manual for your engine.	
Oil Pressure switch	
Installation torque	8 - 18 ft-lbs 11 - 24 Nm
Pressure switch point	8 psi 0.55 bar
Oil Sensor Settings	
0 psi	10 ohms
50 psi	120 ohms
Fuel injection system	
Injector opening pressure	43 psi 3 bar
Fuel requirement	
For fuel requirements, refer to the engine Operator Manual for your engine.	

Perkins 1104D-44T cont.	
Starter motor	
Current draw, normal load	115A
Cranking speed	200 - 250 rpm
Battery – Auxiliary power units	
Type	6V DC
Quantity	2
Battery capacity, maximum	285 AH
Reserve capacity @ 25A rate	745 minutes
Battery – Engine starting and control system	
Type	12V DC, Group 31
Quantity	1
Battery capacity, maximum	1000A
Reserve capacity @ 25A rate	200 Minutes
Engine coolant	
Capacity (engine only)	9.5 quarts 9 liters
Coolant temperature switch	
Installation torque	8 - 18 ft-lbs 11 - 24 Nm
Temperature switch point	230°F 110°C
Temperature Sensor Settings	
215°F 102°C	37 ohms
170°F 82°C	78 ohms
Alternator output	85A @ 12V DC
Fan belt deflection	3/8 to 1/2 inch 9 to 12 mm

Specifications

Perkins 854F-34T

Displacement	207 cu. in 3.4 liters
Number of cylinders	4
Bore and Stroke	3.89 x 4.33 inches 99 x 110 mm
Horsepower net intermittent @ 2500 rpm	74 hp / 55.2 kW
Induction system	turbocharged
Firing order	1 - 3 - 4 - 2
Standby speed	1000 rpm
Low idle	1500 rpm
High idle	2500 rpm
Compression ratio	17.0:1
Compression pressure pressure (psi or bar) of the lowest cylinder must be at least 75% of the highest cylinder	
Governor	Electronic
Lubrication system	
Oil pressure, hot (@ 2000 rpm)	40 to 60 psi 2.8 to 4.1 bar
Minimum oil pressure	12 psi 0.82 bar
Oil capacity (including filter)	7.7 quarts 7.3 liters
Oil viscosity requirements	
-22°F to 86°F / -30°C to 30°C	5W-20
-4°F to 104°F / -20°C to 40°C	10W-40
Above 5°F / -15°C	15W-40
Unit ships with 15W-40. Extreme operating temperatures may require the use of alternative engine oils. For oil requirements, refer to the Engine Operator Manual for your engine.	

Oil Pressure switch	
Installation torque	18.4 ft-lbs 25 Nm
Pressure switch point	12 psi 0.82 bar
Oil Sensor Settings	
0 psi	10 ohms
50 psi	120 ohms
Fuel injection system	
Transfer pump pressure	10-12 psi / 0.69-0.83 bar
Injection pressure	23000 psi / (1600 bar)
Fuel requirement	
For fuel requirements, refer to the engine Operator Manual for your engine.	
Glow plugs	
Initial load (0-10 sec)	80A
Continuous load (>10 sec)	40A
Starter motor	
Current draw, normal load	68A
Cranking speed	130 - 200 rpm
Battery – Auxiliary power units	
Type	6V DC
Quantity	2
Battery capacity, maximum	285 AH
Reserve capacity @ 25A rate	745 minutes
Battery – Engine starting and control system	
Type	12V DC, Group 31
Quantity	1
Battery capacity, maximum	1000A
Reserve capacity @ 25A rate	200 Minutes

Perkins 854F-34T cont.	
Engine coolant	Ethylene Glycol
Capacity (50/50 extended life)	16.5 quarts 15.6 liters
Coolant temperature switch	
Installation torque	18.4 ft-lbs 25 Nm
Maximum continuous temperature	226°F 108°C
Temperature Sensor Settings	
215°F 102°C	37 ohms
170°F 82°C	78 ohms
Alternator output	120A @ 12V DC
Fan belt deflection	3/8 to 1/2 inch 9 to 12 mm

Machine Torque Specifications

Platform Rotator	
1-8 center bolt, GR 5	480 ft-lbs 651 Nm
3/8 -16 bolts, GR 8	44 ft-lbs 60 Nm
Turntable rotate assembly	
Rotate bearing mounting bolts, lubricated (3/4 -10 SHC)	320 ft-lbs 434 Nm
Rotate bearing mounting bolts, lubricated (5/8 -11 SHC)	180 ft-lbs 244 Nm
Rotate drive hub mounting bolts, lubricated	80 ft-lbs 108 Nm
Drive motor mounting bolts, dry	75 ft-lbs 102 Nm
Drive motor mounting bolts, lubricated	56 ft-lbs 76 Nm
Backlash plate mounting bolts, lubricated	320 ft-lbs 434 Nm
Drive motors and hubs	
Drive hub mounting bolts, lubricated	180 ft-lbs 217 Nm
Drive motor mounting bolts, dry	75 ft-lbs 102 Nm
Drive motor mounting bolts, lubricated	56 ft-lbs 76 Nm
Engine vibration isolators	
Mounting bolts, dry	60 ft-lbs 81 Nm
Mounting bolts, lubricated	45 ft-lbs 61 Nm

Specifications

Hydraulic Hose and Fitting Torque Specifications

Your machine is equipped with Parker Seal-Lok™ ORFS or 37° JIC fittings and hose ends. Genie specifications require that fittings and hose ends be torqued to specification when they are removed and installed or when new hoses or fittings are installed.

Seal-Lok™ Fittings

(hose end - ORFS)

SAE Dash Size	Torque
-4	10 ft-lbs / 13.6 Nm
-6	30 ft-lbs / 40.7 Nm
-8	40 ft-lbs / 54.2 Nm
-10	60 ft-lbs / 81.3 Nm
-12	85 ft-lbs / 115 Nm
-16	110 ft-lbs / 150 Nm
-20	140 ft-lbs / 190 Nm
-24	180 ft-lbs / 245 Nm

JIC 37° Fittings

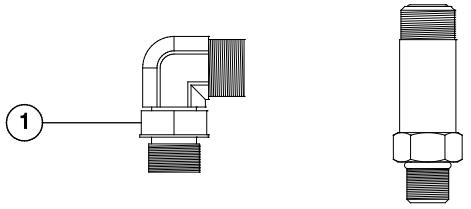
(swivel nut or hose connection)

SAE Dash Size	Thread Size	Flats
-4	7/16-20	2
-6	9/16-18	1 ¼
-8	3/4-16	1
-10	7/8-14	1
-12	1 1/16-12	1
-16	1 5/16-12	1
-20	1 5/8-12	1
-24	1 7/8-12	1

SAE O-ring Boss Port

(tube fitting - installed into Aluminum)
(all types)

SAE Dash Size	Torque
-4	14 ft-lbs / 19 Nm
-6	23 ft-lbs / 31.2 Nm
-8	36 ft-lbs / 54.2 Nm
-10	62 ft-lbs / 84 Nm
-12	84 ft-lbs / 114 Nm
-16	125 ft-lbs / 169.5 Nm
-20	151 ft-lbs / 204.7 Nm
-24	184 ft-lbs / 249.5 Nm



Adjustable Fitting

Non-adjustable fitting

1 jam nut

SAE O-ring Boss Port

(tube fitting - installed into Steel)

SAE Dash Size		Torque
-4	ORFS / 37° (Adj) ORFS (Non-adj) 37° (Non-adj)	15 ft-lbs / 20.3 Nm 26 ft-lbs / 35.3 Nm 22 ft-lbs / 30 Nm
-6	ORFS (Adj / Non-adj) 37° (Adj / Non-adj)	35 ft-lbs / 47.5 Nm 29 ft-lbs / 39.3 Nm
-8	ORFS (Adj / Non-adj) 37° (Adj / Non-adj)	60 ft-lbs / 81.3 Nm 52 ft-lbs / 70.5 Nm
-10	ORFS (Adj / Non-adj) 37° (Adj / Non-adj)	100 ft-lbs / 135.6 Nm 85 ft-lbs / 115.3 Nm
-12	(All types)	135 ft-lbs / 183 Nm
-16	(All types)	200 ft-lbs / 271.2 Nm
-20	(All types)	250 ft-lbs / 339 Nm
-24	(All types)	305 ft-lbs / 413.5 Nm

Torque Procedure

Seal-Lok™ fittings

1 Replace the O-ring. The O-ring must be replaced anytime the seal has been broken. The O-ring cannot be re-used if the fitting or hose end has been tightened beyond finger tight.

Note: The O-ring in Parker Seal Lok™ fittings and hose end are custom-size O-rings. They are not standard size O-rings. They are available in the O-ring field service kit (Genie part number 49612).

2 Lubricate the O-ring before installation.

3 Be sure the O-ring face seal is seated and retained properly.

4 Position the tube and nut squarely on the face seal end of the fitting, and tighten the nut finger tight.

5 Tighten the nut or fitting to the appropriate torque. Refer to the appropriate torque chart in this section.

6 Operate all machine functions and inspect the hose, fittings and related components to confirm there are no leaks.

JIC 37° fittings

1 Align the tube flare (hex nut) against the nose of the fitting body (body hex fitting) and tighten the hex nut to the body hex fitting to hand tight, approximately 30 in-lbs / 3.4 Nm.

2 Using a permanent ink marker, make a reference mark on one the flats of the hex nut and continue the mark onto the body of the hex fitting. Refer to Illustration 1.

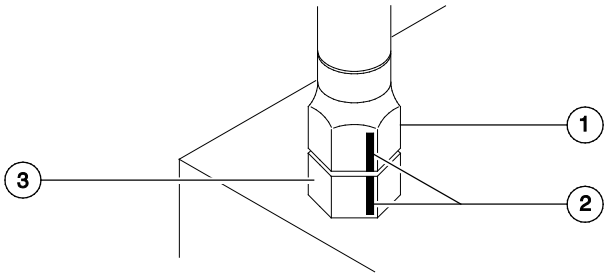


Illustration 1

1 hex nut
2 reference mark
3 body hex fitting

3 Working clockwise on the body hex fitting, make a second mark with a permanent ink marker to indicate the proper tightening position. Refer to Illustration 2.

Note: Use the JIC 37° Fitting table in this section to determine the correct number of flats, for the proper tightening position.

Note: The marks indicate the correct tightening positions have been determined. Use the second mark on the body hex fitting to properly tighten the joint after it has been loosened.

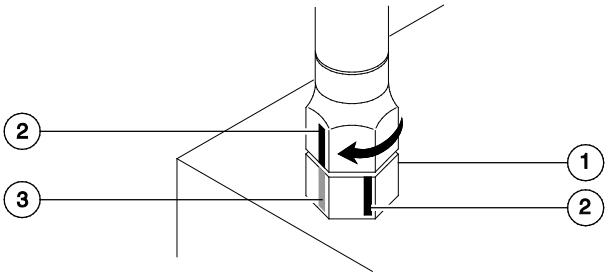


Illustration 2

1 body hex fitting
2 reference mark
3 second mark

4 Tighten the hex nut until the mark on the hex nut is aligned with the second mark on the body hex fitting.

5 Operate all machine functions and inspect the hose, fittings and related components to confirm there are no leaks.

Specifications

SAE FASTENER TORQUE CHART

• This chart is to be used as a guide only unless noted elsewhere in this manual •

SIZE	THREAD	Grade 5				Grade 8				A574 High Strength Black Oxide Bolts	
		LUBED		DRY		LUBED		DRY		LUBED	
		in-lbs	Nm	in-lbs	Nm	in-lbs	Nm	in-lbs	Nm	in-lbs	Nm
1/4	20	80	9	100	11.3	110	12.4	140	15.8	130	14.7
	28	90	10.1	120	13.5	120	13.5	160	18	140	15.8
		LUBED		DRY		LUBED		DRY		LUBED	
		ft-lbs	Nm	ft-lbs	Nm	ft-lbs	Nm	ft-lbs	Nm	ft-lbs	Nm
5/16	18	13	17.6	17	23	18	24	25	33.9	21	28.4
	24	14	19	19	25.7	20	27.1	27	36.6	24	32.5
3/8	16	23	31.2	31	42	33	44.7	44	59.6	38	51.5
	24	26	35.2	35	47.4	37	50.1	49	66.4	43	58.3
7/16	14	37	50.1	49	66.4	50	67.8	70	94.7	61	82.7
	20	41	55.5	55	74.5	60	81.3	80	108.4	68	92.1
1/2	13	57	77.3	75	101.6	80	108.4	110	149	93	126
	20	64	86.7	85	115	90	122	120	162	105	142
9/16	12	80	108.4	110	149	120	162	150	203	130	176
	18	90	122	120	162	130	176	170	230	140	189
5/8	11	110	149	150	203	160	217	210	284	180	244
	18	130	176	170	230	180	244	240	325	200	271
3/4	10	200	271	270	366	280	379	380	515	320	433
	16	220	298	300	406	310	420	420	569	350	474
7/8	9	320	433	430	583	450	610	610	827	510	691
	14	350	474	470	637	500	678	670	908	560	759
1	8	480	650	640	867	680	922	910	1233	770	1044
	12	530	718	710	962	750	1016	990	1342	840	1139
1 1/8	7	590	800	790	1071	970	1315	1290	1749	1090	1477
	12	670	908	890	1206	1080	1464	1440	1952	1220	1654
1 1/4	7	840	1138	1120	1518	1360	1844	1820	2467	1530	2074
	12	930	1260	1240	1681	1510	2047	2010	2725	1700	2304
1 1/2	6	1460	1979	1950	2643	2370	3213	3160	4284	2670	3620
	12	1640	2223	2190	2969	2670	3620	3560	4826	3000	4067

METRIC FASTENER TORQUE CHART

• This chart is to be used as a guide only unless noted elsewhere in this manual •

Size	Class 4.6				Class 8.8				Class 10.9				Class 12.9			
(mm)	LUBED		DRY		LUBED		DRY		LUBED		DRY		LUBED		DRY	
	in-lbs	Nm	in-lbs	Nm	in-lbs	Nm	in-lbs	Nm	in-lbs	Nm	in-lbs	Nm	in-lbs	Nm	in-lbs	Nm
5	16	1.8	21	2.4	41	4.63	54	6.18	58	6.63	78	8.84	68	7.75	91	10.3
6	19	3.05	36	4.07	69	7.87	93	10.5	100	11.3	132	15	116	13.2	155	17.6
7	45	5.12	60	6.83	116	13.2	155	17.6	167	18.9	223	25.2	1.95	22.1	260	29.4
	LUBED		DRY		LUBED		DRY		LUBED		DRY		LUBED		DRY	
	ft-lbs	Nm	ft-lbs	Nm	ft-lbs	Nm	ft-lbs	Nm	ft-lbs	Nm	ft-lbs	Nm	ft-lbs	Nm	ft-lbs	Nm
8	5.4	7.41	7.2	9.88	14	19.1	18.8	25.5	20.1	27.3	26.9	36.5	23.6	32	31.4	42.6
10	10.8	14.7	14.4	19.6	27.9	37.8	37.2	50.5	39.9	54.1	53.2	72.2	46.7	63.3	62.3	84.4
12	18.9	25.6	25.1	34.1	48.6	66	64.9	88	69.7	94.5	92.2	125	81	110	108	147
14	30.1	40.8	40	54.3	77.4	105	103	140	110	150	147	200	129	175	172	234
16	46.9	63.6	62.5	84.8	125	170	166	226	173	235	230	313	202	274	269	365
18	64.5	87.5	86.2	117	171	233	229	311	238	323	317	430	278	377	371	503
20	91	124	121	165	243	330	325	441	337	458	450	610	394	535	525	713
22	124	169	166	225	331	450	442	600	458	622	612	830	536	727	715	970
24	157	214	210	285	420	570	562	762	583	791	778	1055	682	925	909	1233

Scheduled Maintenance Procedures

Observe and Obey:

☑ Maintenance inspections shall be completed by a person trained and qualified on the maintenance of this machine.

☑ Scheduled maintenance inspections shall be completed daily, quarterly, semi-annually, annually and every 2 years as specified of the *Maintenance inspection Report*. The frequency and extent of periodic examinations and tests may also depend on national regulations.

⚠WARNING Failure to perform each procedure as presented and scheduled may cause death, serious injury or substantial damage.

☑ Immediately tag and remove from service a damaged or malfunctioning machine.

☑ Repair any machine damage or malfunction before operating the machine.

☑ Use only Genie approved replacement parts.

☑ Machines that have been out of service for a period longer than 3 months must complete the quarterly inspection.

Machine Configuration:

☑ Unless otherwise specified, perform each procedure with the machine in the following configuration:

- Machine parked on a firm, level surface
- Key switch in the off position with the key removed
- The red Emergency Stop button in the off position at both ground and platform controls
- Wheels chocked
- All external AC power supply disconnected from the machine
- Boom in the stowed position
- Turntable secured with the turntable rotation lock

Scheduled Maintenance Procedures

About This Section

This section contains detailed procedures for each scheduled maintenance inspection.

Each procedure includes a description, safety warnings and step-by-step instructions.

Symbols Legend

Safety alert symbol—used to alert personnel to potential personal injury hazards. Obey all safety messages that follow this symbol to avoid possible injury or death.

⚠ DANGER Indicates a imminently hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.

⚠ WARNING Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.

⚠ CAUTION Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may cause minor or moderate injury.

NOTICE Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in property damage.

⊙ Indicates that a specific result is expected after performing a series of steps.

☒ Indicates that an incorrect result has occurred after performing a series of steps.

Scheduled Maintenance Procedures

Maintenance Symbols Legend

Note: The following symbols have been used in this manual to help communicate the intent of the instructions. When one or more of the symbols appear at the beginning of a maintenance procedure, it conveys the meaning below.

Indicates that tools will be required to perform this procedure.

Indicates that new parts will be required to perform this procedure.

Indicates that dealer service will be required to perform this procedure.

Indicates that a cold engine will be required to perform this procedure.

Indicates that a warm engine will be required to perform this procedure.

Pre-delivery Preparation Report

The pre-delivery preparation report contains checklists for each type of scheduled inspection.

Make copies for each inspection. Store completed forms as required.

Maintenance Schedule

The *Scheduled Maintenance Procedures* section and the *Maintenance Inspection Report* have been divided into subsections. Use the following chart to determine which group(s) of procedures are required to perform a scheduled inspection.

Inspection	Checklist
Daily or every 8 hours	A
Quarterly or every 250 hours	A + B
Semi-annually or every 500 hours	A + B + C
Annually or every 1000 hours	A + B + C + D
Two-year or every 2000 hours	A + B + C + D + E

Maintenance Inspection Report

The maintenance inspection report contains checklists for each type of scheduled inspection.

Make copies of the *Maintenance Inspection Repor*t to use for each inspection. Maintain completed forms for a minimum of 4 years or in compliance with your employer, jobsite and governmental regulations and requirements.

This page intentionally left blank.

Pre-Delivery Preparation Report

Fundamentals

It is the responsibility of the dealer to perform the Pre-delivery Preparation.

The Pre-delivery Preparation is performed prior to each delivery. The inspection is designed to discover if anything is apparently wrong with a machine before it is put into service.

A damaged or modified machine must never be used. If damage or any variation from factory delivered condition is discovered, the machine must be tagged and removed from service.

Repairs to the machine may only be made by a qualified service technician, according to the manufacturer's specifications.

Scheduled maintenance inspections shall be performed by qualified service technicians, according to the manufacturer's specifications and the requirements listed in the responsibilities manual.

Instructions

Use the operator's manual on your machine.

The Pre-delivery Preparation consists of completing the Pre-operation Inspection, the Maintenance items and the Function Tests.

Use this form to record the results. Place a check in the appropriate box after each part is completed. Follow the instructions in the operator's manual.

If any inspection receives an N, remove the machine from service, repair and re-inspect it. After repair, place a check in the R box.

Legend

Y = yes, acceptable
N = no, remove from service
R = repaired

Comments

Pre-delivery Preparation	Y	N	R
Pre-operation inspection completed			
Maintenance items completed			
Function tests completed			

Model

Serial number

Date

Machine owner

Inspected by (print)

Inspector signature

Inspector title

Inspector company

Genie
A TEREX BRAND

Terex South Dakota, Inc USA
500 Oak Wood Road
PO Box 1150
Watertown, SD 57201-6150
(605) 882-4000

Genie UK
The Maltings, Wharf Road
Grantham, Lincolnshire
NG31- 6BH England
(44) 1476-584333

This page intentionally left blank.

Maintenance Inspection Report

Model

Serial number

Date

Hour meter

Machine owner

Inspected by (print)

Inspector signature

Inspector title

Inspector company

Instructions

- Make copies of this report to use for each inspection.
- Select the appropriate checklist(s) for the type of inspection(s) to perform.

☐	**Daily or every 8 hours**	**A**
☐	**Quarterly or every 250 hours**	**A + B**
☐	**Semi-annually or every 500 hours**	**A + B + C**
☐	**Annually or every 1000 hours**	**A + B + C + D**
☐	**Two-year or every 2000 hours**	**A + B + C + D + E**

- Place a check in the appropriate box after each inspection procedure is completed.
- Use the step-by-step procedures in this section to learn how to perform these inspections.
- If any inspection receives an "N," tag and remove the machine from service, repair and re-inspect it. After repair, place a check in the "R" box.

Legend

Y = yes, acceptable
N = no, remove from service
R = repaired

Checklist A		**Y**	**N**	**R**
A-1	Inspect the manuals and decals			
A-2	Pre-operation inspection			
A-3	Function tests			
A-4	Engine maintenance - Perkins models			
A-5	Engine maintenance - Deutz models			
A-6	Filter condition indicator			
Perform after 40 hours:				
A-7	30-day service			
Perform after 100 hours:				
A-8	Rotation Bearing			
Perform after 150 hours:				
A-9	Drive hub oil			

Checklist B		**Y**	**N**	**R**
B-1	Batteries			
B-2	Electrical wiring			
B-3	Key switches			
B-4	Inspect air filter			
B-5	Oil cooler and fins - Deutz models			
B-6	Exhaust system			
B-7	Brake configuration			
B-8	Tires and wheels			
B-9	Drive hub oil			
B-10	Platform leveling			
B-11	Engine idle select			
B-12	Ground control override			
B-13	Drive brakes			
B-14	Drive speed - stowed			
B-15	Drive speed - raised or extended			
B-16	Drive speed - raised and extended			
B-17	Alarm package			
B-18	Hydraulic oil analysis			
B-19	Turntable level sensor			
B-20	Secondary boom angle sensor			
B-21	Primary boom angle sensor			
B-22	Safety envelope limit switches			
B-23	Recovery mode			
B-24	Calibration decal			
Perform after 3 months				
B-25	Turntable bearing wear			

Comments

Maintenance Inspection Report

Model

Serial number

Date

Hour meter

Machine owner

Inspected by (print)

Inspector signature

Inspector title

Inspector company

Instructions

- Make copies of this report to use for each inspection.
- Select the appropriate checklist(s) for the type of inspection(s) to perform.

☐	**Daily or every 8 hours**	**A**
☐	**Quarterly or every 250 hours**	**A + B**
☐	**Semi-annually or every 500 hours**	**A + B + C**
☐	**Annually or every 1000 hours**	**A + B + C + D**
☐	**Two-year or every 2000 hours**	**A + B + C + D + E**

- Place a check in the appropriate box after each inspection procedure is completed.
- Use the step-by-step procedures in this section to learn how to perform these inspections.
- If any inspection receives an "N," tag and remove the machine from service, repair and re-inspect it. After repair, place a check in the "R" box.

Legend

Y = yes, acceptable
N = no, remove from service
R = repaired

Checklist C		**Y**	**N**	**R**
C-1	Engine maintenance - Deutz models			
C-2	Engine maintenance - Deutz models			
C-3	Engine maintenance - Perkins models			
C-4	Engine air filter			
C-5	Grease platform overload (if equipped)			
C-6	Test platform overload (if equipped)			
C-7	Engine RPM			
C-8	Turntable bearing wear			

Checklist D		**Y**	**N**	**R**
D-1	Boom wear pads			
D-2	Free-wheel configuration			
D-3	Drive hub oil			
D-4	Turntable rotation gear backlash			
D-5	Hydraulic filter			
D-6	Engine maintenance - Deutz models			
D-7	Engine maintenance - Perkins models			
D-8	Turntable bearing bolts			

Checklist E		**Y**	**N**	**R**
E-1	Hydraulic oil			
E-2	Engine maintenance - Perkins models			
E-3	Engine maintenance - Deutz models			
Perform every 3000 hours:				
E-4	Engine maintenance - Perkins models			
E-5	Engine maintenance - Perkins models			
E-6	Engine maintenance - Deutz models			
Perform every 4000 hours:				
E-7	Engine maintenance - Perkins models			
Perform every 5000 hours:				
E-8	Engine maintenance - Deutz models			

Comments

A-1
Inspect the Manuals and Decals

Genie specifications require that this procedure be performed every 8 hours or daily, whichever comes first.

Maintaining the operator’s and safety manuals in good condition is essential to safe machine operation. Manuals are included with each machine and should be stored in the container provided in the platform. An illegible or missing manual will not provide safety and operational information necessary for a safe operating condition.

In addition, maintaining all of the safety and instructional decals in good condition is mandatory for safe machine operation. Decals alert operators and personnel to the many possible hazards associated with using this machine. They also provide users with operation and maintenance information. An illegible decal will fail to alert personnel of a procedure or hazard and could result in unsafe operating conditions.

1 Check to make sure that the operator's and safety manuals are present and complete in the storage container on the platform.

2 Examine the pages of each manual to be sure that they are legible and in good condition.

⊙ Result: The operator's manual is appropriate for the machine and all manuals are legible and in good condition.

☒ Result: The operator's manual is not appropriate for the machine or all manuals are not in good condition or is illegible. Remove the machine from service until the manual is replaced.

3 Open the operator's manual to the decals inspection section. Carefully and thoroughly inspect all decals on the machine for legibility and damage.

⊙ Result: The machine is equipped with all required decals, and all decals are legible and in good condition.

☒ Result: The machine is not equipped with all required decals, or one or more decals are illegible or in poor condition. Remove the machine from service until the decals are replaced.

4 Always return the manuals to the storage container after use.

Note: Contact your authorized Genie distributor or Genie if replacement manuals or decals are needed.

Checklist A Procedures

A-2
Perform Pre-operation Inspection

Genie specifications require that this procedure be performed every 8 hours or daily, whichever comes first.

Completing a Pre-operation Inspection is essential to safe machine operation. The Pre-operation Inspection is a visual inspection performed by the operator prior to each work shift. The inspection is designed to discover if anything is apparently wrong with a machine before the operator performs the function tests. The Pre-operation Inspection also serves to determine if routine maintenance procedures are required.

Complete information to perform this procedure is available in the appropriate operator's manual. Refer to the Operator's Manual on your machine.

A-3
Perform Function Tests

Genie specifications require that this procedure be performed every 8 hours or daily, whichever comes first.

Completing the function tests is essential to safe machine operation. Function tests are designed to discover any malfunctions before the machine is put into service. A malfunctioning machine must never be used. If malfunctions are discovered, the machine must be tagged and removed from service.

Complete information to perform this procedure is available in the appropriate operator's manual. Refer to the Operator's Manual on your machine.

A-4
Perform Engine Maintenance – Perkins Models

Engine specifications require that this procedure be performed every 8 hours or daily, whichever comes first.

- Engine oil level – check
- Coolant level – check/add
- Fuel system filter/water separator – drain
- Engine tightness – check for leaks
- Exhaust system – check for leaks

Required maintenance procedures and additional engine information is available in the Perkins 1100D Operation and Maintenance Manual.

Perkins 1100D Operation and Maintenance Manual	
Genie part number	123702

A-5
Perform Engine Maintenance – Deutz Models

Engine specifications require that this procedure be performed every 8 hours or daily, whichever comes first.

- Engine oil level – check
- Fuel system filter/water separator – drain
- Engine tightness – check for leaks
- Exhaust system – check for leaks

Required maintenance procedures and additional engine information is available in the Deutz TD2011 Operation Manual.

Deutz TD2011 Operation Manual	
Genie part number	139320

Checklist A Procedures

A-6
Check the Hydraulic Return Filter Condition Indicator

Genie specifications require that this procedure be performed every 8 hours or daily, whichever comes first.

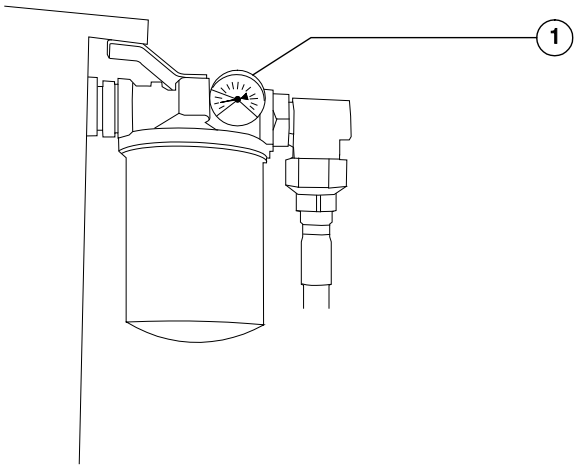
Maintaining the hydraulic filters in good condition is essential to good system performance and safe machine operation. The filter condition indicator will show when the hydraulic flow is bypassing a clogged filter. If the filter is not frequently checked and replaced, impurities will remain in the hydraulic system and cause component damage.

Note: There are four hydraulic filters on the machine: one tank return filter, one medium pressure filter, one high pressure filter and one drive motor case drain filter. Only the tank return filter has a condition indicator.

1 Start the engine from the ground controls.

2 Press and release the engine idle select button to change the engine rpm to high idle.

3 Open the ground control side turntable cover and inspect the filter condition indicator gauge on the in-tank return filter.



1 Filter condition indicator gauge.

⊙ Result: The needle on the gauge should be operating in the green area.

⊠ Result: If the needle is in the red area, the hydraulic filter is being bypassed and the filter needs to be replaced. Refer to Maintenance Procedure, *Replace the Hydraulic Filter Elements*.

A-7
Perform 30-Day Service

The 30-day maintenance procedure is a one time procedure to be performed after the first 30 days or 40 hours of usage. After this interval, refer to the maintenance tables for continued scheduled maintenance.

1 Perform the following maintenance procedures:

- A-8 Grease the Turntable Rotation Bearing and Rotate Gear
- B-8 Inspect the Tires, Wheels and Lug Nut Torque
- B-9 Check the Drive Hub Oil Level and Fastener Torque
- D-5 Replace the Hydraulic Filter Elements
- D-8 Check the Turntable Rotation Bearing Bolts

A-8
Grease the Turntable Rotation Bearing and Rotate Gear

Genie specifications require that this procedure be performed every 100 hours of operation.

Perform this procedure more often if dusty conditions exist.

Frequent application of lubrication to the turntable bearing and rotate gear is essential to good machine performance and service life. Continued use of an improperly greased bearing and gear will result in component damage.

1 Locate the grease fitting for the turntable rotate bearing.

2 Pump grease into the turntable rotation bearing. Rotate the turntable in increments of 4 to 5 inches / 10 to 13 cm at a time and repeat this step until the entire bearing has been greased.

3 Apply grease to each tooth of the drive gear, located under the turntable.

Grease Specification
Chevron Ultra-duty grease, EP NLGI 1 (lithium based) or equivalent

Checklist A Procedures

A-9
Replace the Drive Hub Oil

Drive hub specifications require that this one-time procedure be performed after the first 100 hours of usage. After this interval, refer to the maintenance checklist for continued scheduled maintenance.

Failure to replace the drive hub oil may cause the machine to perform poorly and continued use may result in component damage.

1 Refer to Maintenance Procedure, *Replace the Drive Hub Oil*.

B-1
Inspect the Batteries

Genie specifications require that this procedure be performed every 250 hours or quarterly, whichever comes first.

Proper battery condition is essential to good engine performance and operational safety. Improper fluid levels or damaged cables and connections can result in engine component damage and hazardous conditions.

There are 3 batteries on the machine. One is used for starting the engine and powering the control system. The other two batteries are 6V DC deep cycle batteries which are wired in series to provide power for the auxiliary power units. The batteries are charged by the alternator through a battery separator.

⚠WARNING Electrocution/burn hazard. Contact with electrically charged circuits could result in death or serious injury. Remove all rings, watches and other jewelry.

⚠WARNING Bodily injury hazard. Batteries contain acid. Avoid spilling or contacting battery acid. Neutralize battery acid spills with baking soda and water.

Note: Fully charge the batteries and allow the batteries to rest 24 hours before performing this procedure to allow the battery cells to equalize.

1 Remove the cover from the auxiliary power unit batteries located at the ground controls side of the machine.

Note: Perform the remaining steps on the auxiliary power unit batteries and the engine starting battery.

2 Be sure that the battery cable connections are free of corrosion.

Note: Adding terminal protectors and a corrosion preventative sealant will help eliminate corrosion on the battery terminals and cables.

3 Be sure that the battery retainers and cable connections are tight.

4 Be sure that the battery separator wire connections are tight (if equipped).

Models without maintenance-free or sealed batteries:

5 Put on protective clothing and eye wear.

6 Remove the battery vent caps and check the specific gravity of each battery cell with a hydrometer. Note the results.

7 Check the ambient air temperature and adjust the specific gravity reading for each cell as follows:

- Add 0.004 to the reading of each cell for every 10° F / 5.5° C above 80° F / 26.7° C.
- Subtract 0.004 from the reading of each cell for every 10° F / 5.5° C below 80° F / 26.7° C.

⊙ Result: All battery cells display an adjusted specific gravity of 1.277 or higher. The battery is fully charged. Proceed to step 11.

⊠ Result: One or more battery cells display a specific gravity of 1.276 or below. Proceed to step 8.

Checklist B Procedures

8 Perform an equalizing charge OR fully charge the battery(s) and allow the battery(s) to rest at least 6 hours.

9 Remove the battery vent caps and check the specific gravity of each battery cell with a hydrometer. Note the results.

10 Check the ambient air temperature and adjust the specific gravity reading for each cell as follows:

- Add 0.004 to the reading of each cell for every 10° F / 5.5° C above 80° F / 26.7° C.
- Subtract 0.004 from the reading of each cell for every 10° F / 5.5° C below 80° F / 26.7° C.

⊙ Result: All battery cells display a specific gravity of 1.277 or greater. The battery is fully charged. Proceed to step 11.

⊠ Result: One or more battery cells display a specific gravity from 1.218 to 1.269. The battery is still usable, but at a lower performance. The battery will need to be recharged more often. Proceed to step 11.

⊠ Result: One or more battery cells display a specific gravity from 1.217 to 1.173. The battery is approaching the end of it's life. Proceed to step 11.

⊠ Result: The difference in specific gravity readings between cells is greater than 0.1 OR the specific gravity of one or more cells is less than 1.177. Replace the battery.

11 Check the battery acid level. If needed, replenish with distilled water to 1/8 inch / 3 mm below the bottom of the battery fill tube. Do not overfill.

12 Install the vent caps and neutralize any electrolyte that may have spilled.

13 Install the cover for the auxiliary power unit batteries.

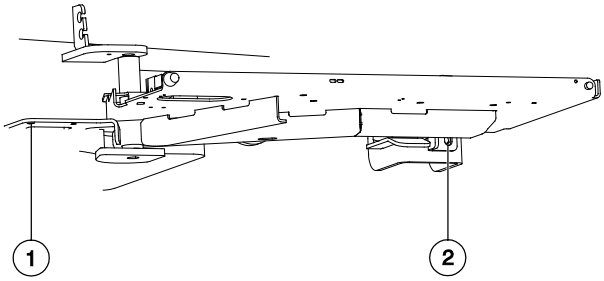
B-2
Inspect the Electrical Wiring

Genie specifications require that this procedure be performed every 250 hours or quarterly, whichever comes first.

Maintaining electrical wiring in good condition is essential to safe operation and good machine performance. Failure to find and replace burnt, chafed, corroded or pinched wires could result in unsafe operating conditions and may cause component damage.

⚠WARNING Electrocution/burn hazard. Contact with electrically charged circuits could result in death or serious injury. Remove all rings, watches and other jewelry.

1 Remove the engine pivot plate retaining fastener. Swing the engine pivot plate out away from the machine.



1 engine pivot plate anchor hole
2 engine pivot plate retaining fastener

2 Locate the engine pivot plate anchor hole at the pivot end of the engine pivot plate.

Checklist B Procedures

3 Install the bolt that was just removed into the anchor hole to secure the engine pivot plate from moving.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. Failure to install the bolt into the engine pivot plate to secure it from moving could result in death or serious injury.

4 Inspect the following areas for burnt, chafed, corroded pinched and loose wires:

- Engine wiring harness
- Battery area wiring

5 Open the ground controls side turntable cover.

6 Inspect the following areas for burnt, chafed, corroded pinched and loose wires:

- Inside of the ground control box
- Hydraulic manifold wiring
- Battery area wiring
- Hydraulic oil cooler wiring

7 Inspect for a liberal coating of dielectric grease in the following locations:

- All wire harness connectors to ground control box
- Wire harness connectors to SCON module

8 Open the hydraulic manifold box covers at both sides of the drive chassis.

9 Inspect the following areas for burnt, chafed, corroded pinched and loose wires:

- Hydraulic manifold wiring

10 Inspect for a liberal coating of dielectric grease in the following locations:

- Wire harness connectors to DCON module

11 Start the engine from the ground controls and raise the secondary boom above the turntable covers.

NOTICE Component damage hazard. Be sure the hydraulic supply hoses to the function and drive pumps are not kinked before starting the engine.

12 Inspect the turntable area for burnt, chafed and pinched cables.

13 Lower the secondary boom to the stowed position and turn the engine off.

14 Inspect the following areas for burnt, chafed, corroded pinched and loose wires:

- Cable track on the boom
- Cables on the boom, jib boom and jib boom pivot area
- Jib boom/platform rotate manifold
- Platform control box
- Inside of the platform control box

15 Inspect for a liberal coating of dielectric grease in the following locations:

- All wire harness connectors to platform control box

16 Remove the engine pivot plate retaining fastener from the engine pivot plate anchor hole at the pivot end of the engine pivot plate.

17 Swing the engine pivot plate in towards the machine.

18 Install the bolt that was just removed into the original hole to secure the engine pivot plate.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. Failure to install the bolt into the engine pivot plate to secure it from moving could result in death or serious injury.

Checklist B Procedures

B-3
Test the Main Key Switch

Genie specifications require that this procedure be performed every 250 hours or quarterly, whichever comes first.

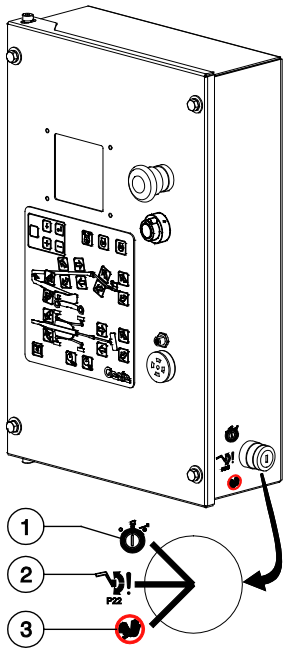
Proper key switch action and response is essential to safe machine operation. Failure of either key switch to function properly could cause a hazardous operating situation.

There are two key switches on the machine - the Main key switch and the Bypass/Recovery key switch.

The Main key switch controls machine operation from the ground or platform controls.

Note: When the axles are retracted, the boom cannot be rotated past either circle-end wheel.

When the Bypass/Recovery key switch is turned and held to the recovery position, the auxiliary power units will turn on and fully retract the secondary boom, then the primary boom and then lower the primary boom. This feature of the machine is especially helpful if the operator in the platform cannot lower the boom, if the platform controls become inoperative or for returning the machine to a safe position when the safety switches have been tripped.



1 Run
2 Bypass
3 Recovery

Checklist B Procedures

Note: Perform this procedure with the machine on a firm, level surface with the booms in the fully stowed position and the axles fully extended.

1 Open the ground controls side turntable side cover.

2 Pull out the red Emergency Stop button to the on position at both the ground and platform controls.

3 At the ground controls, turn the bypass/recovery key switch to the run position.

4 Turn the main key switch to ground control, start the engine and then turn the key switch to platform control.

5 Check any machine function from the ground controls.

⊙ Result: The machine functions should not operate.

6 Turn the main key switch to ground control.

7 Check any machine function from the platform controls.

⊙ Result: The machine functions should not operate.

8 Turn the main key switch to the off position.

⊙ Result: The engine should stop and no functions should operate.

9 Turn the main key switch to ground control and start the engine.

10 Remove the key from the main key switch. Insert the key into the bypass/recovery key switch and turn it to the bypass position.

Note: The main key switch must remain in the ground control position.

11 Raise the primary boom 3 ft / 1 m.

⊙ Result: The primary boom should raise.

12 Remove the key from the bypass/recovery key switch and insert the key into the main key switch.

13 Turn the main key switch to the off position.

14 Remove the key from the main key switch and insert the key into the bypass/recovery key switch.

15 Turn and hold the bypass/recovery key switch to the recovery position. The switch must be held in the recovery position.

⊙ Result: The primary boom lowers to the stowed position.

16 Turn the bypass/recovery key switch to the run position.

17 Remove the key from the bypass/recovery key switch and insert the key into the main key switch.

18 Close the turntable side cover.

Checklist B Procedures

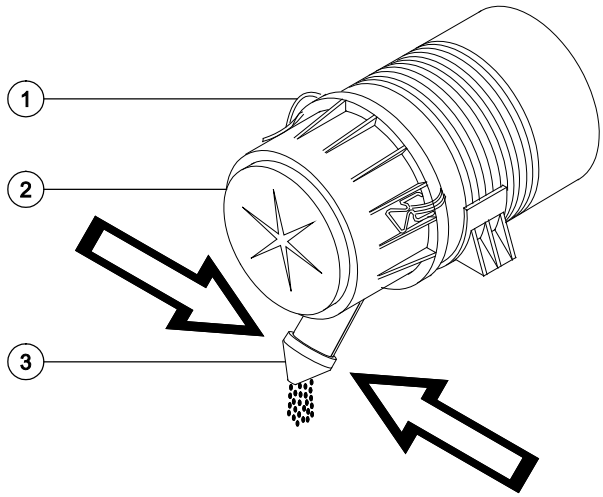
B-4
Inspect the Engine Air Filter

Genie specifications require that this procedure be performed every 250 hours or quarterly, whichever comes first.

Maintaining the engine air filter in good condition is essential to good engine performance and service life. Failure to perform this procedure can lead to poor engine performance and component damage.

Note: Perform this procedure with the engine off.

1 Open the engine side cover. Empty the dust discharge valve by pressing together the sides of the discharge slot. Clean the discharge slot as needed.



1 clamp
2 cannister end cap
3 dust discharge valve

2 Release the latches on the air cleaner cap. Remove the end cap from the air cleaner canister.

3 Remove the filter element.

4 Use a damp cloth to wipe the filter sealing surface and the inside of the outlet tube. Make sure that all contaminant is removed before the filter is inserted.

5 Check new filter element gasket for damage before installing.

6 Install the new filter element.

7 Install the end cap on the canister and secure.

Note: Be sure the discharge slot is pointing down.

B-5
Check the Oil Cooler and Cooling Fins - Deutz Models

Genie requires that this procedure be performed every 250 hours or quarterly, whichever comes first.

Maintaining the oil cooler in good condition is essential for good engine performance. Operating a machine with a damaged oil cooler may result in engine damage. Also, restricting air flow through the oil cooler will affect the performance of the cooling system.

⚠WARNING Bodily injury hazard. Do not inspect while the engine is running. Remove the key to secure from operation.

⚠CAUTION Burn hazard. Beware of hot engine components. Contact with hot engine components may result in severe burns.

1 Open the engine side turntable cover.

Oil cooler:

2 Remove the retaining fasteners from the engine side cover. Remove the cover.

3 Inspect the oil cooler for leaks and physical damage.

4 Clean the oil cooler of debris and foreign material.

Cooling and blower fins:

5 Inspect the fan blower fins for physical damage.

6 Clean the fan blower fins of debris and foreign material.

7 Using a flashlight, inspect the head cooling passages and fins for physical damage or foreign material.

8 If needed, clean the cylinder head cooling passages and fins of debris and foreign material.

9 Install the engine side cover and tighten the retaining fasteners.

Checklist B Procedures

B-6
Check the Exhaust System

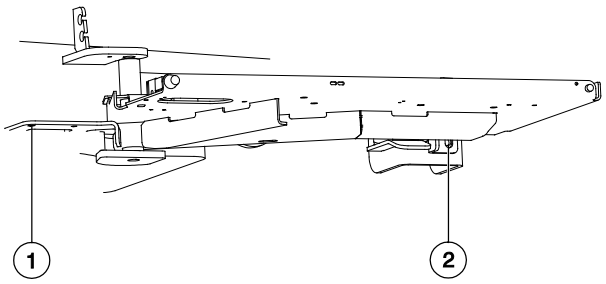
Genie specifications require that this procedure be performed every 250 hours or quarterly, whichever comes first.

Maintaining the exhaust system is essential to good engine performance and service life. Operating the engine with a damaged or leaking exhaust system can cause component damage and unsafe operating conditions.

⚠WARNING Bodily injury hazard. Do not inspect while the engine is running. Remove the key to secure from operation.

⚠CAUTION Bodily injury hazard. Beware of hot engine components. Contact with hot engine components may cause severe burns.

1 Remove the engine pivot plate retaining fastener. Swing the engine pivot plate out away from the machine.



1 engine pivot plate anchor hole
2 engine pivot plate retaining fastener

2 Locate the engine pivot plate anchor hole at the pivot end of the engine pivot plate.

3 Install the bolt that was just removed into the anchor hole to secure the engine pivot plate from moving.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. Failure to install the bolt into the engine pivot plate to secure it from moving could result in death or serious injury.

4 Be sure that all nuts and bolts are tight.

5 Inspect all welds for cracks.

6 Inspect for exhaust leaks; i.e., carbon buildup around seams and joints.

7 Remove the engine pivot plate retaining fastener from the engine pivot plate anchor hole at the pivot end of the engine pivot plate.

8 Swing the engine pivot plate in towards the machine.

9 Install the bolt that was just removed into the original hole to secure the engine pivot plate.

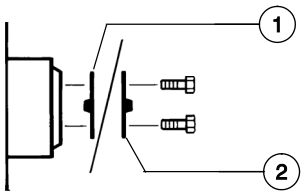
⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. Failure to install the bolt into the engine pivot plate to secure it from moving could result in death or serious injury.

B-7
Confirm the Proper Brake Configuration

Genie specifications require that this procedure be performed every 250 hours or quarterly, whichever comes first.

Proper brake configuration is essential to safe operation and good machine performance. Hydrostatic brakes and hydraulically-released, spring-applied individual wheel brakes can appear to operate normally when they are actually not fully operational.

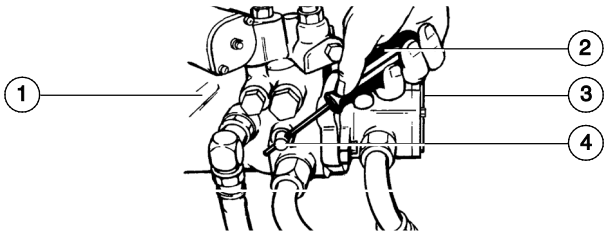
1 Check each drive hub disconnect cap to be sure it is in the engaged position.



1 brake disengaged position
2 brake engaged position

2 Be sure the free-wheel valve on the drive pump is closed (clockwise).

Note: The free-wheel valve should always remain closed.



1 drive pump
2 screwdriver
3 lift pump
4 free-wheel valve

Checklist B Procedures

B-8
Inspect the Tires, Wheels and Lug Nut Torque

Genie specifications require that this procedure be performed every 250 hours or quarterly, whichever comes first.

Maintaining the tires and wheels, including proper wheel fastener torque, is essential to safe operation and good performance. Tire and/or wheel failure could result in a machine tip-over. Component damage may also result if problems are not discovered and repaired in a timely fashion.

Note: The tires on this machine are foam filled and do not need air added to them.

1 Check all tire treads and sidewalls for cuts, cracks, punctures and unusual wear.

2 Check each wheel for damage, bends and cracked welds.

3 Check each lug nut for proper torque. Refer to Specifications, *Machine Specifications.*

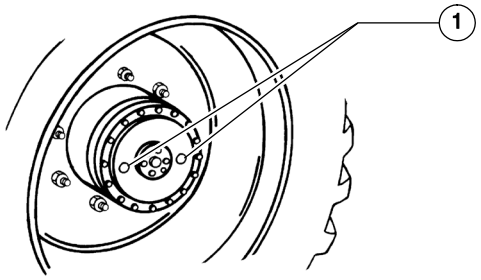
B-9
Check the Drive Hub Oil Level and Fastener Torque

Genie specifications require that this procedure be performed every 250 hours or quarterly, whichever comes first.

Failure to maintain proper drive hub oil levels may cause the machine to perform poorly and continued use may cause component damage.

Drive hubs:

1 Drive the machine to rotate the hub until the plugs are located one at the side and the other at the other side.



1 drive hub plugs

2 Remove both plugs and check the oil level.

⊙ Result: The oil level should be even with the bottom of the plug holes.

3 If necessary, add oil until the oil level is even with the bottom of the plug holes. Refer to Specifications, *Fluid Capacity Specifications*.

4 Install the plug in the drive hub.

5 Check the torque of the drive hub mounting fasteners. Refer to Specifications, *Machine Torque Specifications*.

6 Repeat this procedure for each drive hub.

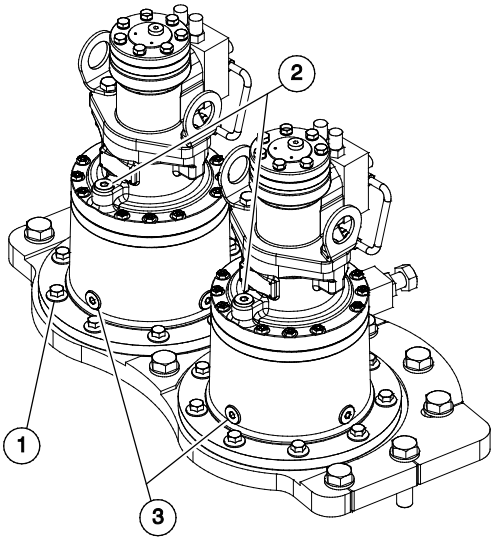
Checklist B Procedures

Turntable rotate drive hubs:

1 Open the cover at the ground controls side of the machine.

2 Remove the plug located on the top of the hub and check the oil level.

⊙ Result: The oil level should be even with the bottom of the plug hole.



1 drive hub mounting bolt
2 drive hub fill plug
3 drive hub drain plug

3 If necessary, add oil until the oil level is even with the bottom of the plug hole. Refer to Specifications, *Fluid Capacity Specifications*.

4 Apply pipe thread sealant to the plug, and install the plug in the drive hub.

5 Repeat steps 2 through 4 for the other turntable rotate drive hub.

B-10
Test the Platform Self-leveling

Genie specifications require that this procedure be performed every 250 hours or quarterly, whichever comes first.

Automatic platform self-leveling throughout the full cycle of primary boom raising and lowering is essential for safe machine operation. The platform is maintained level by the communication between the platform level sensor and the turntable level sensor. If the platform becomes out of level, the computer at the platform controls will open the appropriate solenoid valve(s) at the platform manifold to maintain a level platform.

A platform self-leveling failure creates an unsafe working condition for platform and ground personnel.

1 Start the engine from the ground controls.

2 Press and hold a function enable/speed select button and fully retract the primary boom.

3 Press the **enter** or **previous** button on the LCD screen until PLATFORM ANGLE is displayed

4 Press and hold a function enable/speed select button and adjust the platform to zero degrees using the platform level up/down buttons.

5 Press and hold a function enable/speed select button and fully raise the primary boom while observing the platform angle shown on the LCD display.

⊙ Result: The platform should remain level at all times to within ±2 degrees.

Note: If the platform becomes out of level, the tilt alarm will sound and the Platform Not Level Indicator will flash at the ground controls. The platform level up/down buttons will only work in the direction that will level the platform. Level the platform until the indicator light turns off.

Checklist B Procedures

6 Press and hold a function enable/speed select button and fully lower the primary boom.

⊙ Result: The platform should remain level at all times to within ±2 degrees.

Note: If the platform becomes out of level, the tilt alarm will sound and the Platform Not Level Indicator will flash at the ground controls. The platform level up/down buttons will only work in the direction that will level the platform. Level the platform until the indicator light turns off.

Note: If the platform does not level properly, refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Calibrate the Platform Level Sensor*.

B-11
Test the Engine Idle Select Operation

Genie specifications require that this procedure be performed every 250 hours or quarterly, whichever comes first.

A properly operating engine idle select function is essential to good engine performance and safe machine operation. There are two settings.

Low idle (turtle symbol) allows the operator to control multiple boom and/or drive functions simultaneously, though at reduced speed. This setting maintains a consistent low idle.

Foot switch activated high idle (rabbit symbol) should be used for normal machine operation. This selection activates high idle only when the foot switch is pressed down.

1 Turn the key switch to ground controls.

2 Pull out the red Emergency Stop button to the on position at both the ground and platform controls.

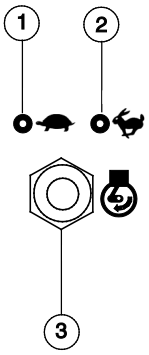
3 Start the engine from the ground controls.

4 Push and release the rpm select button until high rpm is selected (rabbit symbol).

⊙ Result: The engine should change to high idle.

5 Push and release the rpm select button until low rpm is selected (turtle symbol).

⊙ Result: The engine should return to low idle.



1 low idle indicator light
2 foot switch activated high idle indicator light
3 engine rpm select button

6 Turn the key switch to platform controls.

7 Push the engine rpm select switch until low idle (turtle symbol) is selected.

⊙ Result: The engine should remain at low idle.

8 Press down the foot switch.

⊙ Result: The engine should remain at low idle.

9 Push the engine idle select switch until high idle (rabbit symbol) is selected.

⊙ Result: The engine should change to high idle.

B-12
Test the Ground Control Override

Genie specifications require that this procedure be performed every 250 hours or quarterly, whichever comes first.

A properly functioning ground control override is essential to safe machine operation. The ground control override function is intended to allow ground personnel to operate the machine from the ground controls whether or not the Emergency Stop button on the platform controls is in the on or off position. This function is particularly useful if the operator at the platform controls cannot return the boom to the stowed position.

1 Push in the platform red Emergency Stop button to the off position.

2 Turn the key switch to ground controls.

3 Pull out the red Emergency Stop button to the on position at the ground controls.

4 Start the engine and operate each boom function through a partial cycle.

⊙ Result: All boom functions should operate.

5 From the platform, activate the foot switch and operate each boom function.

⊙ Result: No boom functions operate.

6 Pull out the red Emergency stop button to the on position at the platform controls.

7 Activate the foot switch and operate each boom function.

⊙ Result: No boom functions operate.

Checklist B Procedures

B-13
Test the Drive Brakes

Genie specifications require that this procedure be performed every 250 hours or quarterly, whichever comes first.

Proper brake action is essential to safe machine operation. The drive brake function should operate smoothly, free of hesitation, jerking and unusual noise. Hydraulically-released individual wheel brakes can appear to operate normally when they are actually not fully operational.

⚠WARNING Collision hazard. Be sure that the machine is not in free-wheel or partial free-wheel configuration. Refer to maintenance procedure, *Confirm the Proper Brake Configuration*.

Note: Select a test area that is firm, level and free of obstructions.

1 Mark a test line on the ground for reference.

2 Start the engine from the platform controls.

3 Press the engine rpm select button until the foot switch activated high idle (rabbit symbol) is selected, then lower the boom into the stowed position.

4 Choose a point on the machine (i.e., contact patch of a tire) as a visual reference for use when crossing the test line.

5 Bring the machine to top drive speed before reaching the test line. Release the drive joystick when your reference point on the machine crosses the test line.

6 Measure the distance between the test line and your machine reference point. Refer to Specifications, *Performance Specifications*.

B-14
Test the Drive Speed – Stowed Position

Genie specifications require that this procedure be performed every 250 hours or quarterly, whichever comes first.

Proper drive function is essential to safe machine operation. The drive function should respond quickly and smoothly to operator control. Drive performance should also be free of hesitation, jerking and unusual noise over the entire proportionally controlled speed range.Note: Perform this procedure with the machine on a firm, level surface that is free of obstructions.

Note: Perform this procedure with the boom in the stowed position.

1 Create start and finish lines by marking two lines on the ground 40 feet / 12.2 m apart.

2 Start the engine from the platform controls.

3 Press the engine rpm select button until the foot switch activated high idle (rabbit symbol) is selected.

4 Choose a point on the machine (i.e., contact patch of a tire) as a visual reference for use when crossing the start and finish lines.

5 Bring the machine to top drive speed before reaching the start line. Begin timing when your reference point on the machine crosses the start line.

6 Continue at full speed and note the time when the machine reference point crosses the finish line. Refer to Specifications, *Performance Specifications*.

B-15
Test the Drive Speed – Raised or Extended Position

Genie specifications require that this procedure be performed every 250 hours or quarterly, whichever comes first.

Proper drive function is essential to safe machine operation. The drive function should respond quickly and smoothly to operator control. Drive performance should also be free of hesitation, jerking and unusual noise over the entire proportionally controlled speed range.Note: Perform this procedure with the machine on a firm, level surface that is free of obstructions.

1 Create start and finish lines by marking two lines on the ground 40 feet / 12.2 m apart.

2 Start the engine from the platform controls.

3 Press the engine rpm select button until the foot switch activated high idle (rabbit symbol) is selected.

4 Press down the foot switch and raise the boom greater than 10 degrees.

5 Choose a point on the machine (i.e., contact patch of a tire) as a visual reference for use when crossing the start and finish lines.

6 Bring the machine to top drive speed before reaching the start line. Begin timing when your reference point on the machine crosses the start line.

7 Continue at full speed and note the time when the machine reference point crosses the finish line. Refer to Specifications, *Performance Specifications*.

8 Lower the boom to the stowed position.

9 Extend the primary boom 12 inches / 0.3 m.

10 Choose a point on the machine (i.e., contact patch of a tire) as a visual reference for use when crossing the start and finish lines.

11 Bring the machine to top drive speed before reaching the start line. Begin timing when your reference point on the machine crosses the start line.

12 Continue at full speed and note the time when the machine reference point crosses the finish line. Refer to Specifications, *Performance Specifications*.

Checklist B Procedures

B-16
Test the Drive Speed – Raised and Extended Position

Genie specifications require that this procedure be performed every 250 hours or quarterly, whichever comes first.

Proper drive function is essential to safe machine operation. The drive function should respond quickly and smoothly to operator control. Drive performance should also be free of hesitation, jerking and unusual noise over the entire proportionally controlled speed range.Note: Perform this procedure with the machine on a firm, level surface that is free of obstructions.

1 Create start and finish lines by marking two lines on the ground 40 feet / 12.2 m apart.

2 Start the engine from the platform controls.

3 Press the engine rpm select button until the foot switch activated high idle (rabbit and foot switch symbols) is selected.

4 Press down the foot switch and raise the primary boom greater than 10 degrees and the secondary boom greater than 20 degrees.

5 Extend the primary boom 12 inches / 0.3 m and the jib boom 12 inches / 0.3 m.

6 Choose a point on the machine (i.e., contact patch of a tire) as a visual reference for use when crossing the start and finish lines.

7 Bring the machine to top drive speed before reaching the start line. Begin timing when your reference point on the machine crosses the start line.

8 Continue at full speed and note the time when the machine reference point crosses the finish line. Refer to Specifications, *Performance Specifications*.

B-17
Test the Alarm and Flashing Beacon

Genie specifications require that this procedure be performed every 250 hours or quarterly, whichever comes first.

An alarm and/or flashing beacon are installed to alert operators and ground personnel of machine proximity and motion. There are four alarm option modes that can be activated based on user preference or requirement. Refer to Display Module in the Repair Section for information.

1 Turn the key switch to ground controls and pull out the red Emergency Stop button to the on position at both ground and platform controls.

⊙ Result: The alarm should sound twice. The flashing beacon should be on and flashing.

B-18
Perform Hydraulic Oil Analysis

Genie specifications require that this procedure be performed every 250 hours or quarterly, whichever comes first.

Replacement or testing of the hydraulic oil is essential for good machine performance and service life. Dirty oil and a clogged suction strainer may cause the machine to perform poorly and continued use may cause component damage. Extremely dirty conditions may require oil changes to be performed more often. For hydraulic oil specifications, Refer to Specifications, *Hydraulic Specifications*.

Note: Before replacing the hydraulic oil, the oil may be tested by an oil distributor for specific levels of contamination to verify that changing the oil is necessary. If the hydraulic oil is not replaced at the two year inspection, test the oil quarterly. Replace the oil when it fails the test. Refer to Maintenance Procedure, *Test or Replace the Hydraulic Oil*.

B-19
Test the Turntable Level Sensor

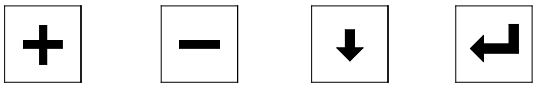
Genie specifications require that this procedure be performed every 250 hours or quarterly, whichever comes first.

A properly functioning level sensor (SCON) is essential to safe machine operation. The ECM at the ground controls (TCON) monitors the position and angle of the machine using the signal from the level sensor. The level sensor signal is used to control the maximum working height of the primary and secondary booms.

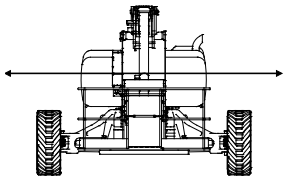
Note: A digital level will be required to perform this procedure.

Note: A kit is available through Genie Product Support (Genie part number 58351). This kit includes a digital level with a magnetic base and cable harnesses.

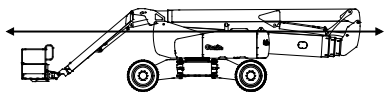
Note: Use the following chart to identify the description of each LCD screen control button used in this procedure.



Plus Minus Previous Enter



X axis



Y axis

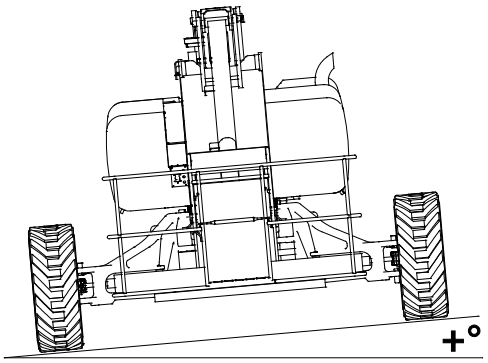
Checklist B Procedures

Note: Perform this procedure with the booms in the fully stowed position and the axles fully extended.

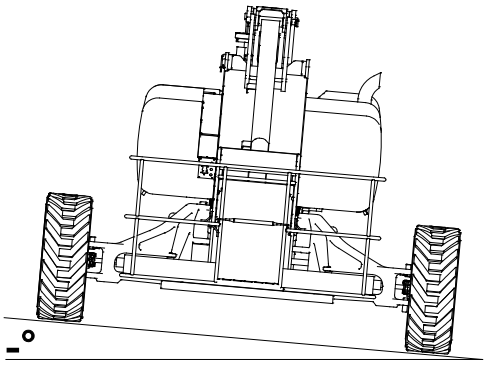
1 Place the machine on a firm surface that has a side slope greater than 2° (6.5 inches / 16.5 cm) but less than 5° (16 inches / 40.6 cm).

2 Place a digital level that has been calibrated to gravity on the X axis of the turntable.

Note: Illustrations are shown from the platform end of the machine.



positive degree side slope



negative degree side slope

3 Turn the key switch to ground control and pull out the red Emergency Stop button to the on position at both ground and platform controls.

4 Press the **enter** or **previous** button on the LCD screen until TURNTABLE LEVEL SENSOR X-DIRECTION is displayed.

⊙ Result: The reading at the display and digital level is within ± 1° of each other.

⊠ Result: The reading at the display and digital level is greater than ± 1° of each other. The level sensor must be calibrated. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Calibrate the Level Sensor*.

⚠ DANGER Tip-over hazard. If the X axis is not within ± 1°, failure to properly calibrate the level sensor could cause the machine to tip over resulting in death or serious injury. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Calibrate the Level Sensor*.

5 Place the machine on a firm surface that has an uphill or downhill slope greater than 2° (6.5 inches / 16.5 cm) but less than 5° (16 inches / 40.6 cm).

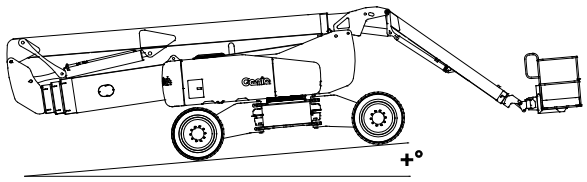
6 Press the **enter** or **previous** button on the LCD screen until TURNTABLE LEVEL SENSOR Y-DIRECTION is displayed.

Checklist B Procedures

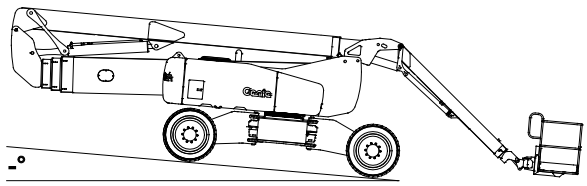
7 Place a digital level that has been calibrated to gravity on the Y axis of the turntable.

⊙ Result: The reading at the display and digital level is within ± 1° of each other.

⊠ Result: The reading at the display and digital level is greater than ± 1° of each other. The level sensor must be calibrated. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Calibrate the Level Sensor*.



positive degree downhill slope



negative degree uphill slope

⚠ DANGER Tip-over hazard. If the Y axis is not within ± 1°, failure to calibrate the level sensor could cause the machine to tip over resulting in death or serious injury. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Calibrate the Level Sensor*.

B-20
Test the Secondary Boom Angle Sensor

Genie specifications require that this procedure be performed every 250 hours or quarterly, whichever comes first.

A properly functioning secondary boom angle sensor is essential to safe machine operation. The ECM at the ground controls (TCON) monitors the position and angle of the secondary boom using the signal from the secondary boom angle sensor. The secondary boom angle sensor signal is used to control the ramping of the secondary boom.

Note:The turntable level sensor must be tested before starting this procedure. Refer to Maintenance Procedure, *Test the Turntable Level Sensor*.

Note: A digital level will be required to perform this procedure.

Note: A kit is available through Genie Product Support (Genie part number 58351). This kit includes a digital level with a magnetic base and cable harnesses.

Note: Use the following chart to identify the description of each LCD screen control button used in this procedure.

Plus Minus Previous Enter

1 Turn the key switch to ground control and pull out the red Emergency Stop button to the on position at both ground and platform controls.

Checklist B Procedures

2 Start the engine from the ground controls.

3 Press the **plus** and **minus** buttons at the same time on the LCD screen to enter the MACHINE STATUS screen. Press the **enter** or **previous** button until SECONDARY BOOM ANGLE is displayed.

4 Fully raise the secondary boom. The boom is fully raised when the cylinder is fully extended and the boom stops moving.

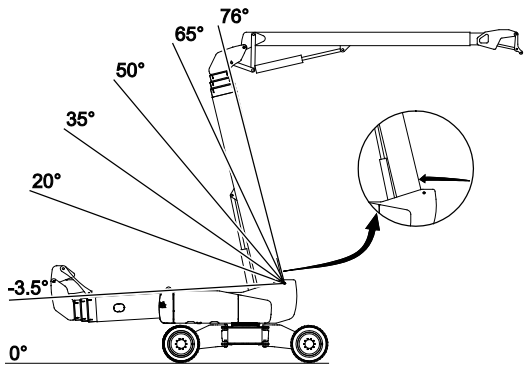
5 Zero a digital level to the Y axis of the turntable. Refer to Maintenance Procedure, *Test the Turntable Level Sensor*.

6 Place the digital level on top of the secondary boom.

⊙ Result: The reading at the display and digital level is within ± 2° of each other and of 76°.

☒ Result: The reading at the display and digital level is greater than ± 2° of each other and of 76°. The secondary boom angle sensor must be calibrated. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Calibrate the Secondary Boom Angle Sensor*.

⚠ DANGER Tip-over hazard. If the boom is not within ± 2° of 76°, immediately lower the secondary boom. Failure to lower the boom could cause the machine to tip over resulting in death or serious injury. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Calibrate the Secondary Boom Angle Sensor*.



7 Lower the secondary boom to 65°.

⊙ Result: The reading at the display and digital level is within ± 2° of each other and of 65°.

☒ Result: The reading at the display and digital level is greater than ± 2° of each other and of 65°. The secondary boom angle sensor must be calibrated. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Calibrate the Secondary Boom Angle Sensor*.

8 Lower the secondary boom to 50°.

⊙ Result: The reading at the display and digital level is within ± 2° of each other and of 50°.

☒ Result: The reading at the display and digital level is greater than ± 2° of each other and of 50°. The secondary boom angle sensor must be calibrated. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Calibrate the Secondary Boom Angle Sensor*.

9 Lower the secondary boom to 35°.

⊙ Result: The reading at the display and digital level is within ± 2° of each other and of 35°.

☒ Result: The reading at the display and digital level is greater than ± 2° of each other and of 35°. The secondary boom angle sensor must be calibrated. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Calibrate the Secondary Boom Angle Sensor*.

10 Lower the secondary boom to 20°.

⊙ Result: The reading at the display and digital level is within ± 2° of each other and of 20°.

☒ Result: The reading at the display and digital level is greater than ± 2° of each other and of 20°. The secondary boom angle sensor must be calibrated. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Calibrate the Secondary Boom Angle Sensor*.

11 Fully lower the secondary boom until it stops at approximately -3.5°.

⊙ Result: The reading at the display and digital level is within ± 2° of each other and of -3.5°.

⊠ Result: The reading at the display and digital level is greater than ± 2° of each other and of -3.5°. The secondary boom angle sensor must be calibrated. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Calibrate the Secondary Boom Angle Sensor*.

B-21
Test the Primary Boom Angle Sensor

Genie specifications require that this procedure be performed every 250 hours or quarterly, whichever comes first.

A properly functioning primary boom angle sensor is essential to safe machine operation. The ECM at the ground controls (TCON) monitors the position and angle of the primary boom using the signal from the primary boom angle sensor. The primary boom angle sensor signal is used to control the ramping of the primary boom, limiting the speed of the primary boom to 2.3 feet / 0.7 meters per second.

Note:The turntable level sensor and secondary boom angle sensor must be tested before starting this procedure. Refer to Maintenance Procedures, *Test the Turntable Level Sensor* and *Test the Secondary Boom Angle Sensor*.

Note: A digital level will be required to perform this procedure.

Note: A kit is available through Genie Product Support (Genie part number 58351). This kit includes a digital level with a magnetic base and cable harnesses.

Note: Use the following chart to identify the description of each LCD screen control button used in this procedure.

Plus Minus Previous Enter

Note: Perform this procedure with the machine on a firm, level surface with the booms in the fully stowed position and the axles fully extended.

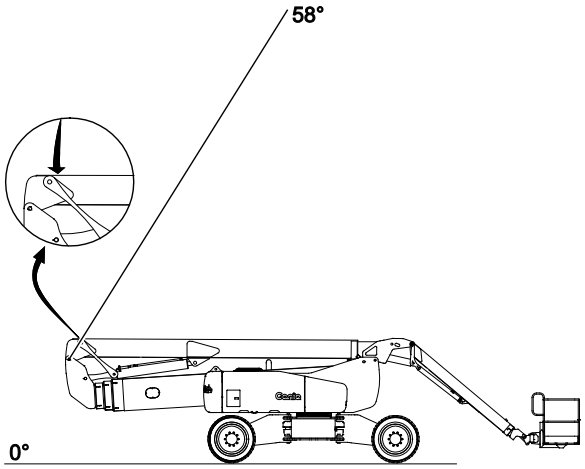
1 Turn the key switch to ground control and pull out the red Emergency Stop button to the on position at both ground and platform controls.

Checklist B Procedures

2 Start the engine from the ground controls.

3 Press the **enter** or **previous** button on the LCD screen until PRIMARY BOOM ANGLE TO GRAVITY DEGREES is displayed.

4 Place a digital level that has been calibrated to gravity on top of the primary boom.



5 Raise the primary boom while watching the display screen.

6 Continue to raise the primary boom until it stops at approximately 58°.

⊙ Result: The reading at the display and digital level is within ± 2° of each other and of 58°.

⊠ Result: The reading at the display and digital level is greater than ± 2° of each other and of 58°. The primary boom angle sensor must be calibrated. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Calibrate the Primary Boom Angle Sensor*.

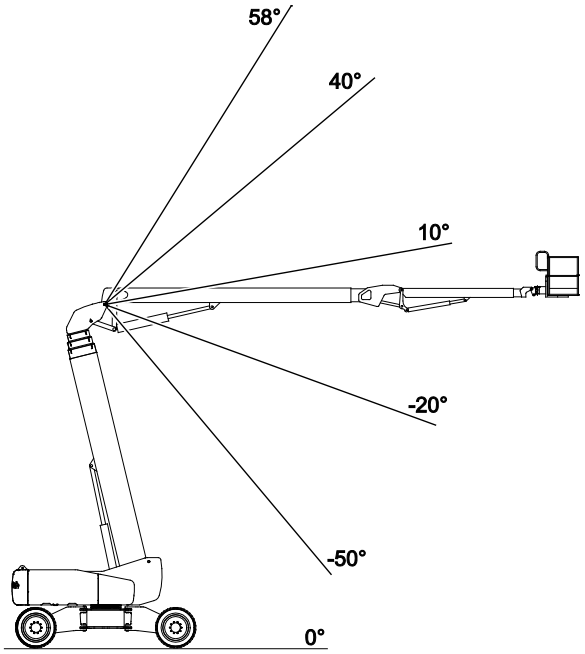
⚠ DANGER Tip-over hazard. If the boom is not within ± 2° of 58°, immediately lower the primary boom. Failure to lower the boom could cause the machine to tip over resulting in death or serious injury. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Calibrate the Primary Boom Angle Sensor*.

7 Fully raise the secondary boom. The boom is fully raised when the cylinder is fully extended and the boom stops moving.

8 Fully lower the primary boom until it stops at approximately -50°.

⊙ Result: The reading at the display and digital level is within ± 2° of each other and of -50°.

⊠ Result: The reading at the display and digital level is greater than ± 2° of each other and of -50°. The primary boom angle sensor must be calibrated. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Calibrate the Primary Boom Angle Sensor*.



9 Raise the primary boom to -20°.

⊙ Result: The reading at the display and digital level is within ± 2° of each other and of -20°.

⊠ Result: The reading at the display and digital level is greater than ± 2° of each other and of -20°. The primary boom angle sensor must be calibrated. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Calibrate the Primary Boom Angle Sensor*.

10 Raise the primary boom to 10°.

⊙ Result: The reading at the display and digital level is within ± 2° of each other and of 10°.

⊠ Result: The reading at the display and digital level is greater than ± 2° of each other and of 10°. The primary boom angle sensor must be calibrated. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Calibrate the Primary Boom Angle Sensor*.

11 Raise the primary boom to 40°.

⊙ Result: The reading at the display and digital level is within ± 2° of each other and of 40°.

⊠ Result: The reading at the display and digital level is greater than ± 2° of each other and of 40°. The primary boom angle sensor must be calibrated. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Calibrate the Primary Boom Angle Sensor*.

12 Fully raise the primary boom until it stops at approximately 58°.

⊙ Result: The reading at the display and digital level is within ± 2° of each other and of 58°.

⊠ Result: The reading at the display and digital level is greater than ± 2° of each other and of 58°. The primary boom angle sensor must be calibrated. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Calibrate the Primary Boom Angle Sensor*.

B-22
Test the Safety Envelope Limit Switches

Genie specifications require that this procedure be performed every 250 hours or quarterly, whichever comes first.

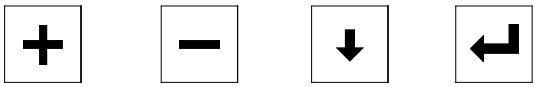
Testing the machine envelope safety limit switches is critical to safe machine operation. If the boom is allowed to operate when a safety switch is not functioning correctly, the machine stability could be compromised and may tip over.

Note: Perform this procedure with the boom in the stowed position.

Note: Perform this procedure with the axles extended.

Note: Two people will be required to perform this procedure.

Note: Use the following chart to identify the description of each LCD screen control button used in this procedure.



Plus Minus Previous Enter

Secondary Boom #1 Retracted Safety Limit Switch, LSS1RS

1 Working at the platform end of the turntable, support and secure the lower turntable riser end cover to a suitable lifting device.

Checklist B Procedures

2 Remove the lower cover retaining fasteners and remove the lower cover from turntable.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. The turntable riser lower cover could become unbalanced and fall when removed from the turntable if not properly supported and secured to the lifting device.

3 Support and secure the upper turntable riser end cover to a suitable lifting device.

4 Remove the upper cover retaining fasteners and remove the upper cover from turntable.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. The turntable riser upper cover could become unbalanced and fall when removed from the turntable if not properly supported and secured to the lifting device.

5 Locate the secondary boom #1 retracted safety limit switch (LSS1RS) inside the secondary boom tube.

Note: The secondary boom #1 retracted safety limit switch (LSS1RS) is attached to the number 1 boom tube and can easily be identified by the blue and red tie wraps attached to the limit switch cable.

6 Start the engine from the ground controls.

7 Fully raise the secondary boom. Do not extend the boom. Turn the machine off.

8 Locate and disconnect the Deutsch connector to LSS1RS.

9 Connect the leads from a multimeter with continuity checking capability to pins 1 and 2 at the Deutsch connector of the limit switch cable.

⊙ Result: The limit switch should not have continuity.

⊠ Result: The limit switch does have continuity. The limit switch is faulty and needs to be replaced.

10 Remove the multimeter leads and connect the Deutsch connector to the limit switch.

11 Start the engine from the ground controls.

12 Extend the secondary boom while visually inspecting the roller arm of the limit switch. Continue to extend the boom until the limit switch arm is released by the limit switch ramp bracket.

⊙ Result: The roller arm of the limit switch remains centered with the limit switch ramp bracket through the entire length of travel.

⊠ Result: The roller arm of the limit switch does not remain centered with the limit switch ramp bracket through the entire length of travel. Adjust or replace the limit switch ramp bracket to ensure the limit switch roller arm remains centered with the limit switch ramp bracket through the entire length of travel.

⊠ Result: The roller arm of the limit switch is damaged. Replace the limit switch roller arm or limit switch.

Note: The limit switch ramp bracket is attached to the number 4 boom tube.

13 Locate and disconnect the Deutsch connector to LSS1RS.

⊙ Result: The alarm should sound.

⊙ Result: The LCD screen should display the message SEC BOOM RETRACTED SAFETY SWITCH DISCONNECTED FAULT.

⊠ Result: The alarm doesn't sound and the LCD screen doesn't display a Fault message. The limit switch is faulty and needs to be replaced.

Note: A P30 Power Fault and a P11 Power Fault will also display as a result of this test.

14 Re-connect the Deutsch connector to LSS1RS.

⊙ Result: The LCD screen displays SEC LSS1RS FAULT.

⊠ Result: The LCD screen doesn't display the Fault message. The limit switch is faulty and needs to be replaced.

15 Turn the engine off.

16 With the key switch off, press and hold the **enter** button and turn the key switch to the on position. Release the **enter** button after five seconds and press the **(minus)(minus)(previous)(previous)** buttons in that order.

17 Press the **previous** button until clear all safety switch faults appears.

18 Select YES, then press the **enter** button.

19 Press the **previous** button until EXIT appears.

20 Select YES, then press the **enter** button.

21 Install the secondary boom end covers.

Turntable Rotate Safety Limit Switch, LST1S

1 Locate the turntable rotate safety limit switch (LST1S) at the center of the turntable.

Note: The turntable rotate safety limit switch (LST1S) is located between the two operational turntable rotate limit switches. It can easily be identified by the orange and red tie wraps attached to the limit switch cable.

2 Locate and disconnect the deutsch connector to LST1S.

3 Connect the leads from a multimeter with continuity checking capability to pins 1 and 2 at the Deutsch connector of the limit switch cable.

⊙ Result: The limit switch should have continuity.

⊠ Result: The limit switch does not have continuity. The limit switch is faulty and needs to be replaced.

4 Remove the multimeter leads and connect the Deutsch connector to the limit switch.

5 Start the engine and rotate the turntable more than 15°. Turn the engine off

6 Locate and disconnect the Deutsch connector to LST1S.

7 Connect the leads from a multimeter with continuity checking capability to pins 1 and 2 at the Deutsch connector of the limit switch cable.

⊙ Result: The limit switch should not have continuity.

⊠ Result: The limit switch does have continuity. The limit switch is faulty and needs to be replaced OR the mounting position of the limit switch needs to be adjusted until it activates when the turntable is rotated more than 15°.

8 Remove the multimeter leads and connect the Deutsch connector to LST1S.

Checklist B Procedures

Axle Extended Safety Limit Switches, LSFA1ES and LSRA1ES

1 Start the engine from the ground controls and lower the boom to the stowed position.

2 Turn the key switch to platform controls.

3 From the platform controls, drive the machine in either direction and fully retract the axles. Turn the machine off.

4 Choose an axle extend safety limit switch to test.

5 Locate and disconnect the deutsch connector to the axle extend limit switch.

6 Connect the leads from a multimeter with continuity checking capability to pins 1 and 2 at the Deutsch connector of the limit switch cable.

⊙ Result: The limit switch should not have continuity.

⊠ Result: The limit switch does have continuity. The limit switch is faulty and needs to be replaced.

7 Remove the multimeter leads and connect the Deutsch connector to the limit switch.

8 Repeat steps 5 through 7 for the other axle extend safety limit switch.

9 Start the engine from the platform controls and fully extend the axles. Turn the machine off.

10 Choose an axle extend safety limit switch to test.

11 Locate and disconnect the Deutsch connector to the axle extend limit switch.

12 Connect the leads from a multimeter with continuity checking capability to pins 1 and 2 at the Deutsch connector of the limit switch cable.

⊙ Result: The limit switch should have continuity.

⊠ Result: The limit switch does not have continuity. The limit switch is faulty and needs to be replaced.

13 Remove the multimeter leads and connect the Deutsch connector to the limit switch.

14 Repeat steps 11 through 13 for the other axle extend safety limit switch.

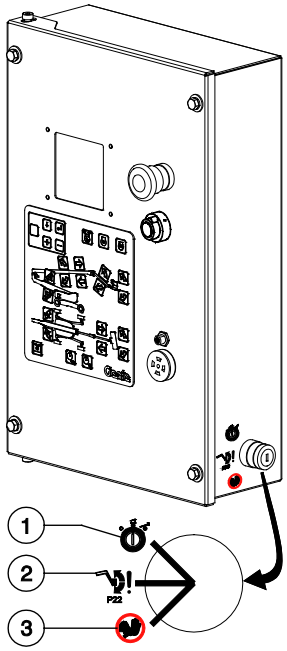
B-23
Test the Recovery System

Genie specifications require that this procedure be performed every 250 hours or quarterly, whichever comes first.

A properly functioning recovery system is essential to safe machine operation. The Recovery mode allows the platform to be lowered in the event the operator in the platform is unable to lower the platform using the platform controls, system failure or emergency situations.

Note: Perform this procedure with the machine on a firm, level surface with the axles extended.

Note: Perform this procedure with all weight, tools, equipment and personnel removed from the platform.



1 Run
2 Bypass
3 Recovery

1 Turn the key switch to the ground control and pull out the red Emergency Stop button to the on position. Start the engine.

2 Fully raise the secondary boom then extend it approximately 4 ft / 1.2 m.

3 Raise the primary boom approximately 15° then extend it approximately 4 ft / 1.2 m.

4 Turn the key switch to the off position to turn off the engine. Turn the key switch back to ground controls.

Note: If this procedure is performed with the main key switch in the off position an active latched safety fault will be set and will have to be cleared.

5 Remove the key from the main key switch and insert the key into the bypass/recovery key switch.

6 Turn and hold the key switch to the recovery position. The key switch must be held in the recovery position.

⊙ Result: The auxiliary power unit will turn on and the boom will begin the following recovery sequence.

- The primary boom will retract.
- The secondary boom will retract.
- The primary boom will lower.

Note: It is not necessary to fully lower the primary boom.

7 Turn the bypass/recovery key switch to the run position.

8 Remove the key from the bypass/recovery key switch and insert the key into the main key switch.

9 Start the engine and return the boom to the stowed position.

Checklist B Procedures

B-24
Inspect the Calibration Decal

Genie specifications require that this procedure be performed every 250 hours or quarterly, whichever comes first.

Maintaining the safety decal in good condition is mandatory for safe machine operation. Decals alert operators and personnel to the many possible hazards associated with using this machine. They also provide users with operation and maintenance information. An illegible decal will fail to alert personnel of a procedure or hazard and could result in unsafe operating conditions.

1 Turn the key switch to the off position and push in the red Emergency Stop button to the off position at the ground controls.

2 Open the turntable cover on the ground controls side of the machine.

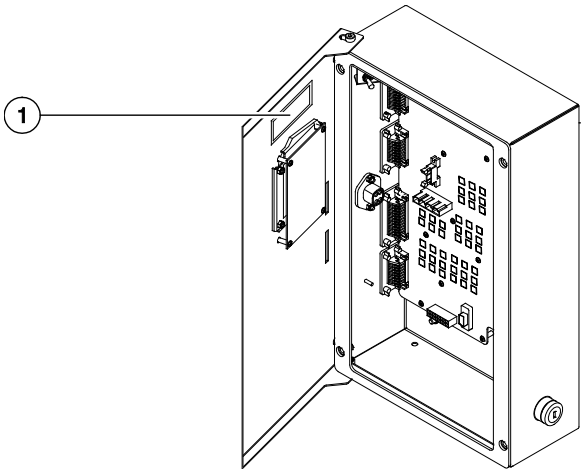
3 Open the ground control box.

4 Verify the ground control panel is equipped with the required calibration decal.

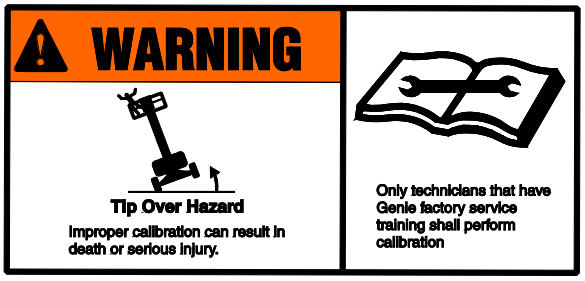
⊙ Result: The control box is equipped with the required decal and is legible and in good condition.

⊠ Result: The control box is not equipped with the required decal, or is illegible or in poor condition. Remove the machine from service until the decal is replaced.

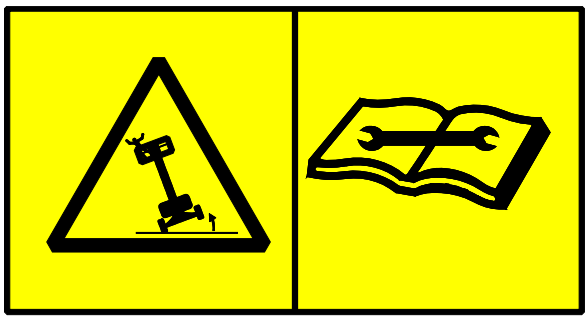
Note: Contact your authorized Genie distributor or Genie if a replacement is required.



1 calibration decal



ANSI and CSA



CE and AUS

B-25
Inspect for Turntable Bearing Wear

Genie requires that this one-time procedure be performed after the first 3 months of usage. After this interval, refer to the maintenance checklist for continued scheduled maintenance.

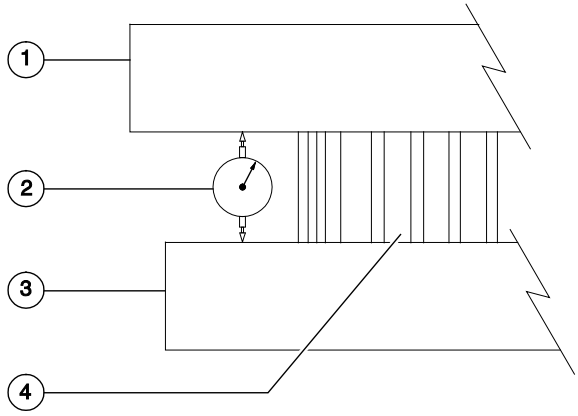
1 Grease the turntable bearing. Refer to Maintenance Procedure, *Grease the Turntable Bearing and Rotate Gear*.

2 Torque the turntable bearing bolts to specification. Refer to Maintenance Procedure, *Check the Turntable Rotation Bearing Bolts*.

3 Start the machine from the ground controls and fully raise, but do not extend, the primary boom and jib. The secondary riser should remain in its stowed position.

4 Place a dial indicator between the drive chassis and the turntable at a point that is directly under, or inline with, the boom and no more than 1 inch / 2.5 cm from the bearing.

Note: To obtain an accurate measurement, place the dial indicator no more than 1 inch / 2.5 cm from the turntable rotation bearing.



1 turntable
2 dial indicator
3 drive chassis
4 turntable rotation bearing

5 Adjust the dial indicator needle to the "zero" position.

6 Raise the secondary riser, but do not extend it. Move the primary boom and jib to horizontal and fully extend.

7 Note the reading on the dial indicator.

⊙ Result: The measurement is less than 0.118 inch / 3.0 mm. The bearing is good.

⊠ Result: The measurement is more than 0.118 inch / 3.0 mm. The bearing is worn and needs to be replaced.

8 Move the boom sections to the positions indicated in step 3. Visually inspect the dial indicator to be sure the needle returns to the “zero” position.

9 Remove the dial indicator and rotate the turntable 90°.

10 Repeat steps 4 through 9 until the rotation bearing has been checked in at least four equally spaced areas 90° apart.

11 Lower the boom to the stowed position and turn the machine off.

Remove the dial indicator from the machine.

Checklist C Procedures

C-1
Perform Engine Maintenance – Deutz Models

Engine specifications require that this procedure be performed every 500 hours.

All Models:

- Engine oil and filter – replace

TD 2.9 Models:

- Primary fuel filter - replace
- V-belts - inspect/adjust/replace
- Air intake pipe - check
- Cooling system - check

TD 2011L04i Models:

- Valve clearance - check at first oil change

Required maintenance procedures and additional engine information is available in the Deutz TD2011 Operation Manual.

Deutz 2011 Series Operation Manual	
Genie part number	139320
Deutz D 2.9 L4 Series Operation Manual	
Genie part number	1251561

C-2
Perform Engine Maintenance – Deutz Models

Engine specifications require that this one–time procedure be performed at 500 hours.

- Engine valve lash – inspect/adjust

Required maintenance procedures and additional engine information is available in the Deutz TD2011 Operation Manual.

Deutz TD2011 Operation Manual	
Genie part number	139320

Checklist C Procedures

C-3
Perform Engine Maintenance – Perkins Models

Engine specifications require that this procedure be performed every 500 hours or annually.

- Engine oil and filter – replace
- Fuel system primary filter (water separator) element – replace
- Fuel system secondary filter – replace
- Crankcase breather (canister) – replace
- Hoses and clamps – inspect/replace
- Radiator – clean
- V-belts - inspect/adjust/replace

Required maintenance procedures and additional engine information is available in the Perkins 1100D Operation and Maintenance Manual.

Perkins 1100D Operation and Maintenance Manual	
Genie part number	123702

C-4
Replace the Engine Air Filter Element

Genie specifications require that this procedure be performed every 500 hours or six months, whichever comes first.

Maintaining the engine air filter in good condition is essential to good engine performance and service life. Failure to perform this procedure can lead to poor engine performance and component damage.

Note: Perform this procedure with the engine off.

1 Release the latches on the air cleaner cap. Remove the end cap from the air cleaner canister.

2 Remove the filter element.

3 Use a damp cloth to wipe the filter sealing surface and the inside of the outlet tube. Make sure that all contaminant is removed before the filter is inserted.

4 Check new filter element gasket for damage before installing.

5 Install the new filter element.

6 Install the end cap on the canister and secure.

Note: Be sure the discharge slot is pointing down.

Checklist C Procedures

C-5
Grease the Platform Overload Mechanism (if equipped)

Genie specifications require that this procedure be performed every 500 hours or six months, whichever comes first.

Perform this procedure more often if dusty conditions exist.

Application of lubrication to the platform overload mechanism is essential to safe machine operation. Continued use of an improperly greased platform overload mechanism could result in the system not sensing an overloaded platform condition and will result in component damage.

1 Locate the grease fittings on each pivot pin of the platform overload assembly.

2 Thoroughly pump grease into each grease fitting.

Grease Specification
Chevron Ultra-duty grease, EP NLGI 1 (lithium based) or equivalent

C-6
Test the Platform Overload System (if equipped)

Genie specifications require that this procedure be performed every 500 hours or six months, whichever comes first OR when the machine fails to lift the maximum rated load.

Testing the platform overload system regularly is essential to safe machine operation. Continued use of an improperly operating platform overload system could result in the system not sensing an overloaded platform condition. Machine stability could be compromised resulting in the machine tipping over.

The platform overload system is designed to detect an overloaded platform and prevent machine operation anytime the machine is turned on. When activated, the system halts all normal boom operation, giving visual and audible warning to the operator.

Models equipped with the platform overload option are provided with additional machine components: an adjustable spring-loaded platform support subassembly, a limit switch, an electronic module which receives the overload signal and interrupts power, and an audio/visual warning indication to alert the operator of the overload.

The platform support subassembly utilizes two load support arms that are opposed in a full parallelogram link. This isolates platform loads into a shear or vertical state, which translates into a compressive load. A spring in the parallelogram link supports this purely compressive load regardless of where the load is placed in the platform.

As weight is added to the platform, the spring will compress until, when the platform is overloaded, the lower arm contacts a limit switch and thereby activating the overload signal. When adjusted correctly, the platform overload system will deactivate normal boom operation at platform capacity.

Note: Perform this procedure with the boom fully retracted and in the stowed position and with the machine on a firm, level surface.

1 Remove all weight, tools, accessories and equipment from the platform.

Note: Failure to remove all weight, tools and accessories from the platform will result in an inaccurate test.

2 Turn the key switch to ground control and pull out the red Emergency Stop button to the on position at both the ground and platform controls. Start the engine from the ground controls and level the platform. Do not turn the engine off.

3 Determine the maximum platform capacity. Refer to the machine serial plate.

Checklist C Procedures

4 Using a suitable lifting device, place a test weight equal to that of the available capacity in one of the locations shown. Refer to Illustration 1.

⊙ Result: The platform overload indicator light should be off at both the ground and platform controls.

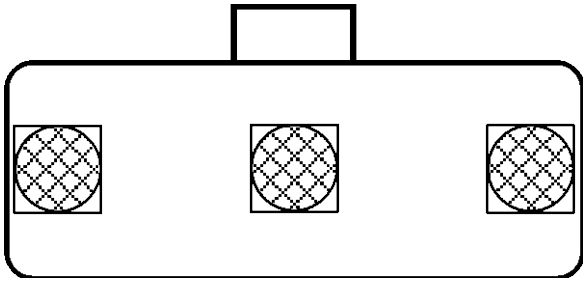


illustration 1

5 Carefully move the test weights to each remaining location on the platform. Refer to Illustration 1.

⊙ Result: The platform overload indicator light should be off at both the ground and platform controls.

6 Add an additional 15 lbs / 6.8 kg test weight to the original test weight to overload the platform.

⊙ Result: The alarm should be sounding. The platform overload indicator light should be flashing at the platform controls and PLATFORM OVERLOAD should be displayed on the LCD screen at the ground controls.

⊠ Result: If the alarm does not sound and the platform overload indicator light does not come on with the test weights in any of the platform locations, the platform overload system needs to be calibrated. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Calibrate the Platform Overload System (if equipped)*.

Note: There may be a 2 second delay before the overload indicator lights flash and the alarm sounds.

7 Carefully move the test weights to each remaining location on the platform. Refer to Illustration 1.

⊙ Result: The alarm should be sounding. The platform overload indicator light should be flashing at the platform controls and PLATFORM OVERLOAD should be displayed on the LCD screen at the ground controls.

⊠ Result: If the alarm does not sound and the platform overload indicator light does not come on with the test weights in any of the platform locations, the platform overload system needs to be calibrated. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Calibrate the Platform Overload System (if equipped)*.

Note: There may be a 2 second delay before the overload indicator lights flash and the alarm sounds.

8 Test all machine functions from the platform controls.

⊙ Result: All platform control functions should operate using the auxiliary pump except for boom lift and extend which are disabled.

9 Turn the key switch to ground controls.

10 Test all machine functions from the ground controls.

⊙ Result: All platform control functions should operate using the auxiliary pump except for boom lift and extend which are disabled.

11 Lift the test weights off the platform floor using a suitable lifting device.

⊙ Result: The platform overload indicator light and alarm should turn off at both the ground and platform controls.

Note: There may be an 2 second delay before the overload indicator lights and alarm turn off.

12 Test all machine functions from the ground controls.

⊙ Result: All ground control functions should operate normally.

13 Turn the key switch to platform controls.

14 Test all machine functions from the platform controls.

⊙ Result: All platform control functions should operate normally.

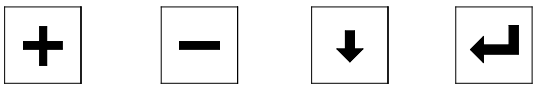
Note: If the platform overload system is not operating properly, Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Calibrate the Platform Overload System (if equipped)*.

C-7
Check and Adjust the Engine RPM

Genie specifications require that this procedure be performed every 500 hours or six months, whichever comes first.

Maintaining the engine rpm at the proper setting for both low and high idle is essential to good engine performance and service life. The machine will not operate properly if the rpm is incorrect and continued use may cause component damage.

Note: Use the following chart to identify the description of each LCD screen control button used in this procedure.



Plus Minus Previous Enter

Deutz models:

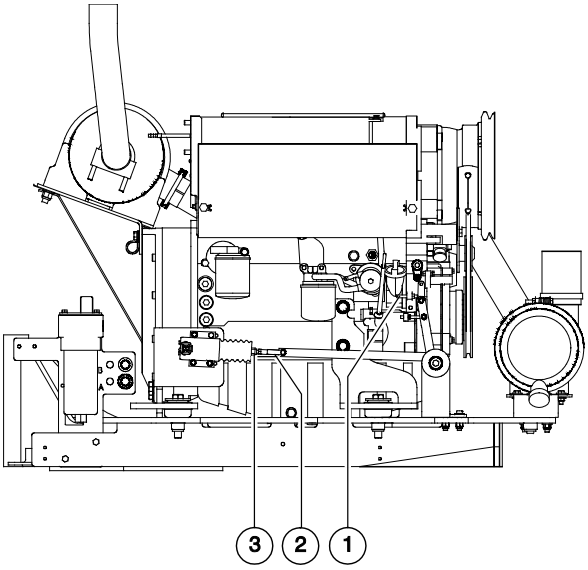
1 Start the engine from the ground controls.

2 Press the **enter** or **previous** button on the LCD screen until engine rpm is displayed.

⊙ Result: Low idle should be 1500 rpm.

Checklist C Procedures

Skip to step 5 if the low idle rpm is correct.



1 low idle adjustment screw
2 yoke
3 high idle adjustment nut

3 Loosen the lock nut on the low idle adjustment screw.

4 Adjust the low idle adjustment screw until low idle is 1500 rpm. Tighten the locknut.

5 Press and hold the function enable/high speed button. Note the engine rpm on the display.

⊙ Result: High idle should be 2350 rpm.

If the high idle is correct, disregard adjustment step 6.

6 Loosen the yoke lock nut. Turn the high idle adjustment nut and solenoid boot counterclockwise to increase the rpm or clockwise to decrease the rpm. Tighten the yoke lock nut and recheck the rpm.

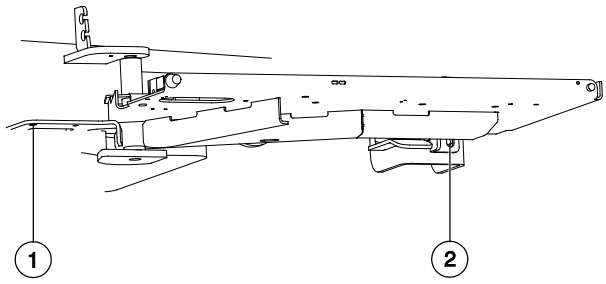
Note: Be sure the solenoid fully retracts when activating high idle.

7 Check for excessive movement in the linkage bar pins.

⊠ Result: If there is excessive wear in the linkage, the linkage bar should be replaced.

Perkins models:

1 Remove the engine pivot plate retaining fastener. Swing the engine pivot plate out away from the machine.



1 engine pivot plate anchor hole
2 engine pivot plate retaining fastener

2 Locate the engine pivot plate anchor hole at the pivot end of the engine pivot plate.

3 Install the bolt that was just removed into the anchor hole to secure the engine pivot plate from moving.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. Failure to install the bolt into the engine pivot plate to secure it from moving could result in death or serious injury.

4 Start the engine from the ground controls.

NOTICE Component damage hazard. Be sure the hydraulic supply hoses to the function and drive pumps are not kinked before starting the engine.

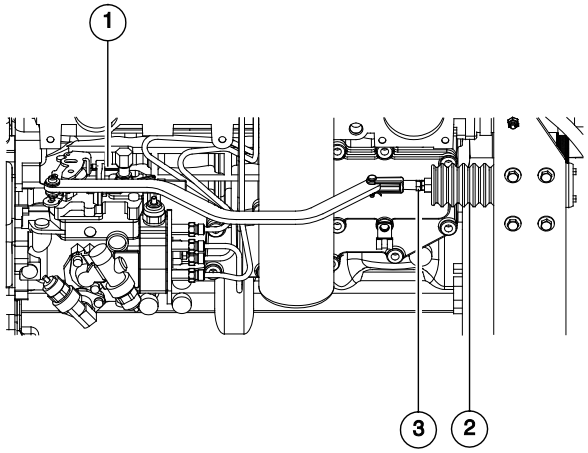
Checklist C Procedures

5 Press the **enter** or **previous** button on the LCD screen until engine rpm is displayed.

⊙ Result: Low idle should be 1300 rpm.

Skip to step 7 if the low idle rpm is correct.

6 Loosen the low idle lock nut. Turn the low idle adjustment screw clockwise to increase the rpm or counterclockwise to decrease the rpm. Tighten the low idle lock nut and confirm the rpm.



1 low idle adjustment screw
2 solenoid boot
3 yoke lock nut

7 Press and hold the function enable/high speed button. Note the engine rpm on the display.

⊙ Result: High idle should be 2350 rpm.

If the high idle is correct, disregard adjustment step 8.

8 Loosen the low idle lock nut. Turn the low idle adjustment screw clockwise to increase the rpm or counterclockwise to decrease the rpm. Tighten the low idle lock nut and confirm the rpm.

Note: Be sure the solenoid fully retracts when activating high idle.

9 Check for excessive movement in the linkage bar pins.

⊠ Result: If there is excessive wear in the linkage, the linkage bar should be replaced.

10 Remove the engine pivot plate retaining fastener from the engine pivot plate anchor hole at the pivot end of the engine pivot plate.

11 Swing the engine pivot plate in towards the machine.

12 Install the bolt that was just removed into the original hole to secure the engine pivot plate.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. Failure to install the bolt into the engine pivot plate to secure it from moving could result in death or serious injury.

Checklist C Procedures

C-8
Inspect for Turntable Bearing Wear

Genie requires that this procedure be performed every 500 hours or six months, whichever comes first.

Periodic inspection of turntable bearing wear is essential to safe machine operation, good machine performance and service life. Continued use of a worn turntable bearing could create an unsafe operating condition, resulting in death or serious injury and component damage.

Note: Perform this procedure with the boom fully retracted and in the stowed position and with the machine on a firm, level surface.

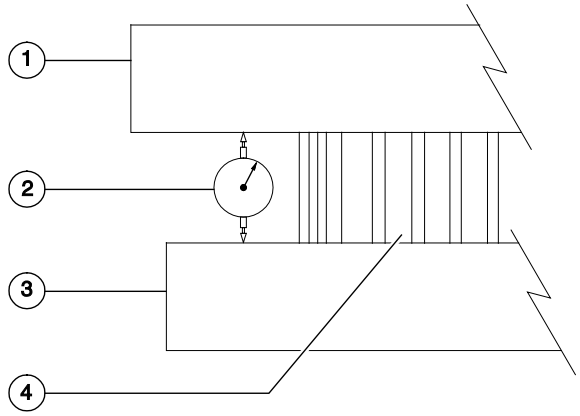
1 Grease the turntable bearing. Refer to Maintenance Procedure, *Grease the Turntable Bearing and Rotate Gear*.

2 Torque the turntable bearing bolts to specification. Refer to Maintenance Procedure, *Check the Turntable Rotation Bearing Bolts*.

3 Start the machine from the ground controls and fully raise, but do not extend, the primary boom and jib. The secondary riser should remain in its stowed position.

4 Place a dial indicator between the drive chassis and the turntable at a point that is directly under, or inline with, the boom and no more than 1 inch / 2.5 cm from the bearing.

Note: To obtain an accurate measurement, place the dial indicator no more than 1 inch / 2.5 cm from the turntable rotation bearing.



1 turntable
2 dial indicator
3 drive chassis
4 turntable rotation bearing

5 Adjust the dial indicator needle to the "zero" position.

6 Raise the secondary riser, but do not extend it. Move the primary boom and jib to horizontal and fully extend.

7 Note the reading on the dial indicator.

⊙ Result: The measurement is less than 0.118 inch / 3.0 mm. The bearing is good.

⊠ Result: The measurement is more than 0.118 inch / 3.0 mm. The bearing is worn and needs to be replaced.

Checklist C Procedures

8 Move the boom sections to the positions indicated in step 3. Visually inspect the dial indicator to be sure the needle returns to the “zero” position.

9 Remove the dial indicator and rotate the turntable 90°.

10 Repeat steps 4 through 9 until the rotation bearing has been checked in at least four equally spaced areas 90° apart.

11 Lower the boom to the stowed position and turn the machine off.

12 Remove the dial indicator from the machine.

Checklist D Procedures

D-1
Check the Boom Wear Pads

Genie specifications require that this procedure be performed every 1000 hours or annually, whichever comes first.

Maintaining the boom wear pads in good condition is essential to safe machine operation. Wear pads are placed on boom tube surfaces to provide a low friction, replaceable wear pad between moving parts. Improperly shimmed wear pads or continued use of extremely worn wear pads may result in component damage and unsafe operating conditions.

1 Measure each wear pad. Replace the wear pad once it reaches the minimum allowable thickness. If the wear pad is still within specification, shim as necessary to obtain minimum clearance with zero binding.

Note: The minimum shim clearance for the secondary boom wear pads is 0.070 inch / 1.8 mm and the maximum allowable shim clearance is 0.25 inch / 6.4 mm.

Note: The minimum shim clearance for the jib boom and primary boom wear pads is 0.070 inch / 1.8 mm and the maximum allowable shim clearance is 0.188 inch / 4.8 mm.

2 Extend and retract the boom through the entire range of motion to check for tight spots that may cause binding or scraping of the boom.

Note: Always maintain squareness between the outer and inner boom tubes.

Primary boom wear pad specifications	**Minimum**
Top, bottom and side wear pads (platform end of boom)	5/8 inch 15.9 mm
Top and bottom wear pads (pivot end of boom)	1/2 inch 12.7 mm
Side wear pads (pivot end of boom)	3/8 inch 9.5 mm
Secondary boom wear pad specifications	**Minimum**
Top wear pads (extension end of boom)	3/8 inch 9.5 mm
Side wear pads (extension end of boom)	1/2 inch 12.7 mm
Bottom wear pads (extension end of boom)	7/8 inch 22 mm
Top and bottom wear pads (pivot end of boom)	5/8 inch 15.9 mm
Side wear pads (pivot end of boom)	1/2 inch 12.7 mm
Jib boom wear pad specifications	**Minimum**
Bottom and side wear pads (platform end of boom)	5/8 inch 15.9 mm
Top wear pads (platform end of boom)	1/2 inch 12.7 mm
Top and side wear pads (pivot end of boom)	3/8 inch 9.5 mm
Bottom wear pads (pivot end of boom)	5/8 inch 15.9 mm

D-2
Check the Free-wheel Configuration

Genie specifications require that this procedure be performed every 1000 hours or annually, whichever comes first.

Proper use of the free-wheel configuration is essential to safe machine operation. The free-wheel configuration is used primarily for towing. A machine configured to free-wheel without operator knowledge may cause death or serious injury and property damage.

⚠WARNING Collision hazard. Select a work site that is firm and level.

NOTICE Component damage hazard. If the machine must be towed, do not exceed 2 mph / 3.2 km/h.

1 Chock both of the wheels at the circle-end of the machine to prevent the machine from rolling.

2 Place a lifting jack of ample capacity (35,000 lbs / 16000 kg) under each of the steer yokes at the square-end of the machine.

3 Lift the wheels off the ground and place blocks under the drive chassis for support.

4 Disengage the drive hubs by turning over the drive hub disconnect caps on each wheel hub at the square-end of the machine.

5 Manually rotate each wheel at the square-end of the machine.

⊙ Result: Each wheel at the square-end of the machine should rotate with minimum effort.

6 Re-engage the drive hubs by turning over the drive hub disconnect caps. Rotate each wheel to check for engagement. Lift the machine and remove the blocks. Lower the machine.

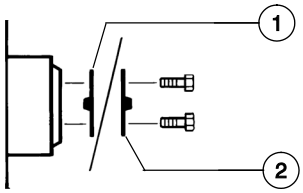
⚠WARNING Collision hazard. Failure to re-engage the drive hubs could result in death or serious injury and property damage.

7 Chock both of the wheels at the square-end of the machine to prevent the machine from rolling.

8 Place a lifting jack of ample capacity (35,000 lbs / 16000 kg) under each of the steer yokes at the circle-end of the machine.

9 Lift the wheels off the ground and place blocks under the drive chassis for support.

10 Disengage the drive hubs by turning over the drive hub disconnect caps on each wheel hub at the circle-end of the machine.



1 brake disengaged position
2 brake engaged position

Checklist D Procedures

11 Manually rotate each wheel at the circle-end of the machine.

⊙ Result: Each wheel at the circle-end of the machine should rotate with minimum effort.

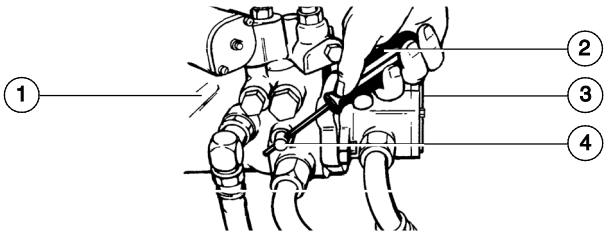
12 Re-engage the drive hubs by turning over the drive hub disconnect caps. Rotate each wheel to check for engagement. Lift the machine and remove the blocks. Lower the machine.

⚠WARNING Collision hazard. Failure to re-engage the drive hubs could result in death or serious injury and property damage.

All models:

13 Be sure the free-wheel valve on the drive pump is closed (clockwise).

Note: The free-wheel valve should always remain closed.



1 drive pump
2 screwdriver
3 lift pump
4 free-wheel valve

D-3
Replace the Drive Hub Oil

Genie specifications require that this procedure be performed every 1000 hours or annually, whichever comes first.

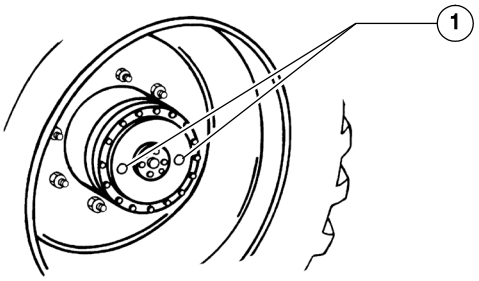
Replacing the drive hub oil is essential for good machine performance and service life. Failure to replace the drive hub oil at yearly intervals may cause the machine to perform poorly and continued use may result in component damage

Drive Hubs:

1 Select the drive hub to be serviced. Drive the machine until one of the two plugs is at the lowest point.

2 Remove the plugs and drain the oil into a suitable container.

3 Drive the machine to rotate the hub until the plugs are located one at the side and the other at the other side.



1 drive hub plugs

4 Fill the hub with oil from upper plug hole until the oil level is even with the bottom of the middle plug hole. Install the plugs. Refer to Specifications, *Fluid Capacity Specifications*.

5 Repeat steps 1 through 4 for all the other drive hubs.

Checklist D Procedures

Turntable Rotate Drive Hub:

1 Secure the turntable from rotating with the turntable rotation lock pin.

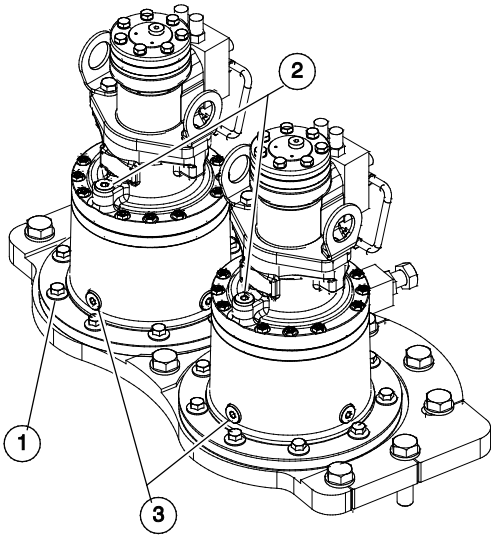
2 Tag, disconnect and plug the hydraulic hoses to the drive hub drive motor and brake for each drive hub assembly.

⚠WARNING Bodily injury hazard. Spraying hydraulic oil can penetrate and burn skin. Loosen hydraulic connections very slowly to allow the oil pressure to dissipate gradually. Do not allow oil to squirt or spray.

3 Attach a suitable lifting device to the lifting eye of one turntable rotate drive hub assembly.

4 Remove the drive hub mounting bolts from one drive hub assembly. Carefully remove the turntable rotate drive hub assembly from the machine. Do not remove both turntable rotate drive hub assemblies at the same time.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. The turntable rotate drive hub assembly could become unbalanced and fall when removed from the machine if not properly supported by the lifting device.



1 drive hub mounting bolts
2 drive hub fill plug
3 drive hub drain plug

5 Remove the plug from the side of the drive hub. Drain the oil from the hub into a suitable container.

6 Install the drive hub assembly onto the machine. Lubricate and torque the drive hub mounting bolts to specification. Refer to Specifications, *Machine Torque Specifications*.

7 Fill the drive hub with oil from the top hole until the oil level is even with the bottom of the threads. Apply pipe thread sealant to the plug. Install the plug. Refer to Specifications, *Fluid Capacity Specifications*.

8 Repeat steps 3 through 7 for the other turntable rotate drive hub assembly.

9 Adjust turntable rotation gear backlash. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Adjust the Turntable Rotation Gear Backlash*.

Checklist D Procedures

D-4
Adjust the Turntable Rotation Gear Backlash

Genie specifications require that this procedure be performed every 1000 hours or annually, whichever comes first.

Properly adjusted turntable rotation gear backlash is essential for good machine performance and service life. Improperly adjusted turntable rotation gear backlash will cause the machine to perform poorly and continued use will cause component damage. The turntable rotation drive hubs are mounted on an adjustable plate on the swing chassis behind the fixed side cover at the ground controls side of the machine.

Note: Perform this procedure with the machine fully stowed and the counterweight at the square end of the machine.

Note: Perform this procedure with the machine on a firm, level surface that is free of obstructions.

1 Secure the turntable from rotating with the turntable rotation lock pin.

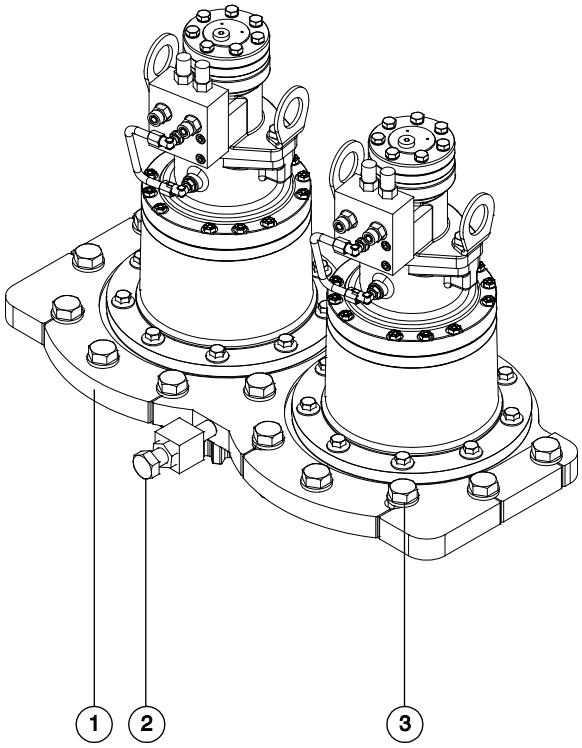
2 Remove the fixed turntable cover at the ground controls side of the machine.

3 Loosen the backlash pivot plate mounting bolts.

4 Push the backlash pivot plate towards the turntable as far as possible (this will push the rotation pinion gears into the turntable bearing ring gear).

5 Loosen the lock nut on the adjustment bolt.

6 Turn the adjustment bolt clockwise until it contacts the backlash pivot plate.



1 backlash pivot plate
2 adjustment bolt with lock nut
3 backlash pivot plate mounting bolts

7 Turn the adjustment bolt 1/2 to 3/4 turn counterclockwise. Tighten the lock nut on the adjustment bolt.

8 Pull the backlash pivot plate away from the turntable until it contacts the adjustment bolt. Then lubricate the mounting fasteners on the backlash pivot plate and torque to specification. Refer to Specifications, *Machine Torque Specifications*.

9 Rotate the turntable through an entire rotation. Check for tight spots that could cause binding. Readjust if necessary.

D-5
Replace the Hydraulic Filter Elements

Genie specifications require that this procedure be performed every 1000 hours or annually, whichever comes first.

Perform this procedure more often if dusty conditions exist.

Replacement of the hydraulic filters is essential for good machine performance and service life. A dirty or clogged filter may cause the machine to perform poorly and continued use may cause component damage. Extremely dirty conditions may require that the filter be replaced more often.

⚠ CAUTION Bodily injury hazard. Beware of hot oil. Contact with hot oil may cause severe burns.

Note: Perform this procedure with the engine off.

Hydraulic return filter:

1 Open the ground controls side turntable cover and locate the hydraulic return filter mounted on the hydraulic tank.

2 Place a suitable container under the filter(s).

3 Remove the filter with an oil filter wrench.

4 Apply a thin layer of fresh oil to the gasket of the new oil filter.

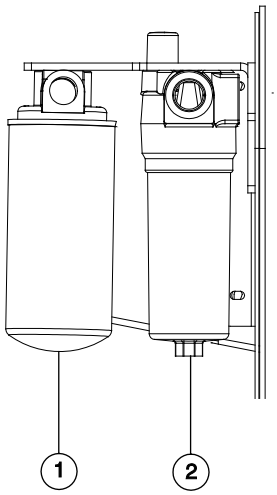
5 Install the new hydraulic return filter element and tighten it securely by hand.

6 Clean up any oil that may have spilled during the installation procedure.

7 Use a permanent ink marker to write the date and number of hours from the hour meter on the oil filter.

Hi pressure filter and drive motor case drain filter:

Note: The high pressure filter is for all machine functions except the drive functions. The drive motor case drain filter is used to filter oil returning to the hydraulic tank from the drive motors.



1 drive motor case drain filter
2 high pressure filter

8 Locate the high pressure filter and the drive motor case drain filter near the auxillary power units.

9 Place a suitable container under the filter(s).

10 Use a filter wrench to remove the drive motor case drain filter element.

11 Install the new drive motor case drain filter element onto the filter head and tighten it securely.

12 Remove the high pressure filter housing by using a wrench on the nut provided on the bottom of the housing.

13 Remove the filter element from the housing.

14 Inspect the housing seal and replace it if necessary.

Checklist D Procedures

15 Install the new high pressure filter element into the housing. Install the filter housing onto the filter head and tighten it securely.

16 Clean up any oil that may have spilled during the installation procedure.

17 Use a permanent ink marker to write the date and number of hours from the hour meter on the oil filter.

Medium pressure filter:

Note: The medium pressure filter is for the charge pump.

18 Open the engine side turntable cover and locate the medium pressure filter mounted to the engine tray near the hydraulic pumps.

19 Place a suitable container under the filter(s).

20 Remove the medium pressure filter housing by using a wrench on the nut provided on the bottom of the housing.

21 Remove the filter element from the housing.

22 Inspect the housing seal and replace it if necessary.

23 Install the new medium pressure filter element into the housing. Install the filter housing onto the filter head and tighten it securely.

24 Clean up any oil that may have spilled during the installation procedure.

25 Use a permanent ink marker to write the date and number of hours from the hour meter on the oil filter.

Tank breather filter:

26 Locate the breather filter on top of the hydraulic tank.

27 Remove the filter and install the new hydraulic tank breather filter. Tighten securely by hand.

28 Start the engine from the ground controls.

29 Inspect the all of the filter housings and related components to be sure that there are no leaks.

D-6
Perform Engine Maintenance – Deutz Models

Engine specifications require that this procedure be performed every 1000 hours or annually, whichever comes first.

- Fuel system primary filter (water separator) element – replace
- Engine valve lash – inspect/adjust
- Hoses and clamps – inspect/replace
- Glow plugs - check
- V-belts - re-tension/renew

Required maintenance procedures and additional engine information is available in the Deutz TD2011 Operation Manual.

Deutz TD2011 Operation Manual	
Genie part number	139320

Checklist D Procedures

D-7
Perform Engine Maintenance – Perkins Models

Engine specifications require that this procedure be performed every 1000 hours.

- Engine valve lash – inspect/adjust

Required maintenance procedures and additional engine information is available in the Perkins 1100D Operation and Maintenance Manual.

Perkins 1100D Operation and Maintenance Manual	
Genie part number	123702

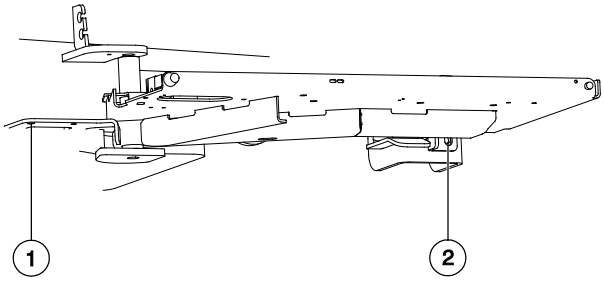
D-8
Check the Turntable Rotation Bearing Bolts

Genie specifications require that this procedure be performed every 1000 hours or annually, whichever comes first.

Maintaining proper torque on the turntable bearing bolts is essential to safe machine operation. Improper bolt torque could result in an unsafe operating condition and component damage.

1 Raise the secondary boom to the point where it begins to extend. Turn the machine off.

2 Remove the engine pivot plate retaining fastener. Swing the engine pivot plate out away from the machine.



1 engine pivot plate anchor hole
2 engine pivot plate retaining fastener

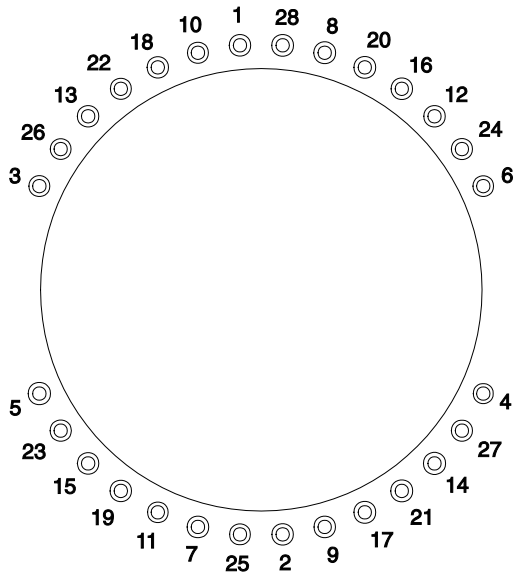
3 Locate the engine pivot plate anchor hole at the pivot end of the engine pivot plate.

4 Install the bolt that was just removed into the anchor hole to secure the engine pivot plate from moving.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. Failure to install the bolt into the engine pivot plate to secure it from moving could result in death or serious injury.

Checklist D Procedures

5 Confirm that each turntable mounting bolt is torqued in sequence to specification. Refer to Specifications, *Machine Torque Specifications.*



Bolt torque sequence (from above turntable)

6 Lower the secondary boom to the stowed position.

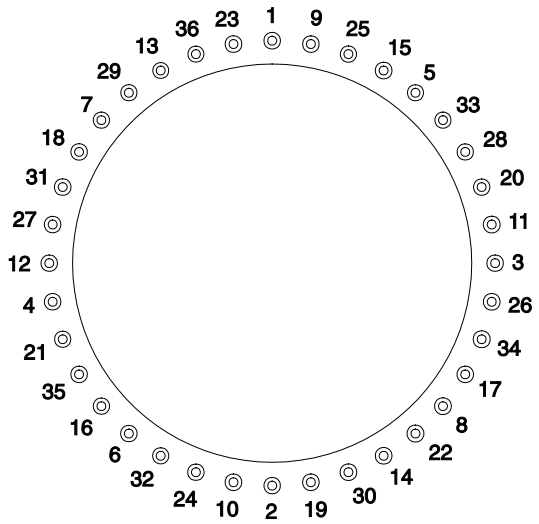
7 Remove the engine pivot plate retaining fastener from the engine pivot plate anchor hole at the pivot end of the engine pivot plate.

8 Swing the engine pivot plate in towards the machine.

9 Install the bolt that was just removed into the original hole to secure the engine pivot plate.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. Failure to install the bolt into the engine pivot plate to secure it from moving could result in death or serious injury.

Confirm that each bearing mounting bolt under the drive chassis is torqued in sequence to specification. Refer to Specifications, *Machine Torque Specifications*.



Bolt torque sequence (from below turntable)

E-1
Test or Replace the Hydraulic Oil

Genie specifications require that this procedure be performed every 2000 hours or every two years, whichever comes first.

Perform this procedure more often if dusty conditions exist.

Replacement or testing of the hydraulic oil is essential for good machine performance and service life. Dirty oil and a clogged suction strainer or hydraulic filters may cause the machine to perform poorly and continued use may cause component damage. Extremely dirty conditions may require oil changes to be performed more frequently.

Note: Before replacing the hydraulic oil, the oil may be tested by an oil distributor for specific levels of contamination to verify that changing the oil is necessary. If the hydraulic oil is not replaced at the two year inspection, test the oil quarterly. Replace the oil when it fails the test.

Note: When removing a hose assembly or fitting, the O-ring (if equipped) on the fitting and/or hose end must be replaced. All connections must be torqued to specification during installation. Refer to Specifications, *Hydraulic Hose and Fitting Torque Specifications.*

Note: Perform this procedure with the boom in the stowed position.

1 Close the two hydraulic tank shut-off valves at the hydraulic tank.

NOTICE Component damage hazard. The engine must not be started with the hydraulic tank shut-off valves in the closed position or component damage will occur. If the tank valves are closed, remove the key from the key switch and tag the machine to inform personnel of the condition.

2 Remove the drain plug from the hydraulic tank and completely drain the tank into a container of suitable capacity. Refer to Specifications, *Machine Specifications*.

3 Tag, disconnect and plug the two suction hoses from the hydraulic tank.

4 Tag, disconnect and plug the two supply hoses for the auxiliary power units. Cap the fittings on the hydraulic tank.

5 Tag, disconnect and plug the hydraulic hose from the drive motor case drain filter at the hydraulic tank. Cap the fitting on the hydraulic tank.

6 Tag, disconnect and plug the hydraulic hose at the return filter. Cap the fitting on the return filter housing.

7 Remove the turntable cover using a suitable lifting device.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. The turntable cover may become unbalanced and fall if not properly supported and secured to a suitable lifting device.

8 Remove the ground control box mounting fasteners. Move the ground control box out of the way.

Checklist E Procedures

9 Remove the cover from the auxiliary power unit batteries.

10 Tag and disconnect the cables from the auxiliary power unit batteries.

⚠WARNING Electrocution/burn hazard. Contact with electrically charged circuits could result in death or serious injury. Remove all rings, watches and other jewelry.

11 Tag and disconnect the cables from the engine starting battery located on the engine side of the machine.

⚠WARNING Electrocution/burn hazard. Contact with electrically charged circuits could result in death or serious injury. Remove all rings, watches and other jewelry.

12 Attach an overhead crane or similar lifting device to the battery box for the auxiliary power unit batteries.

13 Remove the battery box retaining fasteners and carefully remove the battery box from the machine.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. The battery box could become unbalanced and fall when removed from the machine if not properly supported.

⚠WARNING Bodily injury hazard. Batteries contain acid. Avoid spilling or contacting battery acid. Neutralize battery acid spills with baking soda and water.

14 Remove the hydraulic tank retaining fasteners.

15 Support the hydraulic tank with 2 lifting straps. Place one lifting strap at each end of the tank and attach the lifting straps to an appropriate lifting device.

16 Remove the hydraulic tank from the machine.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. The hydraulic tank could become unbalanced and fall if not properly supported when removed from the machine.

17 Remove the suction strainers from the tank and clean them using a mild solvent.

18 Rinse out the inside of the tank using a mild solvent.

19 Install the suction strainers using pipe thread sealant on the threads.

20 Install the drain plug using pipe thread sealant on the threads.

21 Install the hydraulic tank onto the machine.

22 Install the ground control box and mounting fasteners.

23 Install the two suction hoses, return filter hose, drive motor case drain filter hose and the supply hoses for the auxiliary power units.

24 Install the turntable cover.

25 Fill the tank with hydraulic oil until the level is within the top 2 inches / 5 cm of the sight gauge. Do not overfill. Refer to Specifications, *Machine Specifications*.

26 Open the two hydraulic tank shut-off valves at the hydraulic tank.

27 Clean up any oil that may have spilled during the installation procedure.

28 Start the engine and check for leaks.

Checklist E Procedures

E-2
Perform Engine Maintenance – Perkins Models

Engine specifications require that this procedure be performed every 2000 hours.

- Aftercooler core - inspect
- Alternator - inspect
- Engine mounts - inspect
- Starting Motor - inspect
- Turbocharger - inspect
- Water pump - inspect

Required maintenance procedures and additional engine information is available in the Perkins 1100D Operation and Maintenance Manual.

Perkins 1100D Operation and Maintenance Manual	
Genie part number	123702

E-3
Perform Engine Maintenance – Deutz Models

Engine specifications require that this procedure be performed every two years.

- Alternator belt - replace
- Glow plugs - replace

Required maintenance procedures and additional engine information is available in the Deutz TD2011 Operation Manual.

Deutz TD2011 Operation Manual	
Genie part number	139320

Checklist E Procedures

E-4
Perform Engine Maintenance – Perkins Models

Engine specifications require that this procedure be performed every 3000 hours.

- Alternator belt - inspect/adjust/replace
- Fuel Injector - test/change

Required maintenance procedures and additional engine information is available in the Perkins 1100D Operation and Maintenance Manual.

Perkins 1100D Operation and Maintenance Manual	
Genie part number	123702

E-5
Perform Engine Maintenance – Perkins Models

Engine specifications require that this procedure be performed every 3000 hours.

- Cooling system coolant (Heavy Duty) - change

Required maintenance procedures and additional engine information is available in the Perkins 1100D Operation and Maintenance Manual.

Perkins 1100D Operation and Maintenance Manual	
Genie part number	123702

E-5
Perform Engine Maintenance – Deutz Models

Engine specifications require that this procedure be performed every 3000 hours.

TD 2011L04i Models:

- Injection valve- replace
- Aftercooler core - clean/test
- Charge air cooler entry- drain lube oil/condensate
- Turbocharger compressor outlet- clean

TD 2.9 Models:

- V-belt and tensioning pulley - replace

Required maintenance procedures and additional engine information are available in the Deutz 2011 Series Operation Manual OR the Deutz D 2.9 L4 Series Operation Manual.

Deutz 2011 Series Operation Manual	
Genie part number	139320
Deutz D 2.9 L4 Series Operation Manual	
Genie part number	1251561

E-6
Perform Engine Maintenance – Perkins Models

Engine specifications require that this procedure be performed every 4000 hours.

All Models:

- Aftercooler core - clean/test

Required maintenance procedures and additional engine information is available in the Perkins 1100D Operation and Maintenance Manual OR the Perkins 854F Operation and Maintenance Manual.

Perkins 1100D Operation and Maintenance Manual	
Genie part number	123702
Perkins 854F Operation and Maintenance Manual	
Genie part number	1263971

Checklist E Procedures

E-7
Perform Engine Maintenance – Deutz Models

Engine specifications require that this procedure be performed every 6,000 hours.

TD 2011L04i Models:

- Toothed belt - replace

Required maintenance procedures and additional engine information are available in the Deutz 2011 Series Operation Manual OR the Deutz D 2.9 L4 Series Operation Manual.

Deutz 2011 Series Operation Manual	
Genie part number	139320
Deutz D 2.9 L4 Series Operation Manual	
Genie part number	1251561

Repair Procedures

Observe and Obey:

☑ Repair procedures shall be completed by a person trained and qualified on the repair of this machine.

☑ Immediately tag and remove from service a damaged or malfunctioning machine.

☑ Repair any machine damage or malfunction before operating the machine.

Before Repairs Start:

☑ Read, understand and obey the safety rules and operating instructions in the appropriate operator's manual on your machine.

☑ Be sure that all necessary tools and parts are available and ready for use.

☑ Use only Genie approved replacement parts.

☑ Read each procedure completely and adhere to the instructions. Attempting shortcuts may produce hazardous conditions.

Machine Configuration:

☑ Unless otherwise specified, perform each repair procedure with the machine in the following configuration:

- Machine parked on a firm, level surface
- Key switch in the off position with the key removed
- The red Emergency Stop button in the off position at both ground and platform controls
- Wheels chocked
- All external AC power supply disconnected from the machine
- Boom in the stowed position
- Turntable secured with the turntable rotation lock

Repair Procedures

About This Section

Most of the procedures in this section should only be performed by trained service professional in a suitably equipped workshop. Select the appropriate repair procedure after troubleshooting the problem.

Perform disassembly procedures to the point where repairs can be completed. Then to re-assemble, perform the disassembly steps in reverse order.

Symbols Legend

Safety alert symbol—used to alert personnel to potential personal injury hazards. Obey all safety messages that follow this symbol to avoid possible injury or death.

⚠ DANGER Indicates a imminently hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.

⚠ WARNING Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.

⚠ CAUTION Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may cause minor or moderate injury.

NOTICE Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in property damage.

⊙ Indicates that a specific result is expected after performing a series of steps.

☒ Indicates that an incorrect result has occurred after performing a series of steps.

Platform Controls

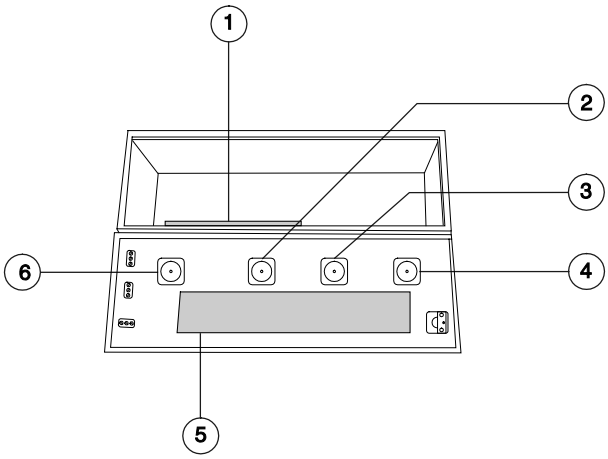
The platform controls contains two printed circuit boards:

The LED circuit board is mounted to the underside of the control box lid which contains the LEDs. The LED circuit board sends the input from the operator to the platform controls circuit board (PCON). The circuit board (PCON) sends the data to the turntable control box (TCON) for processing.

The platform controls ECM circuit board communicates with the turntable controls. The joystick controllers at the platform controls utilize Hall Effect technology and require no adjustment. The operating parameters of the joysticks are stored in memory at the turntable controls. If a joystick controller error occurs or if a joystick is replaced, it will need to be calibrated before that particular machine function will operate. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Calibrate a Joystick Controller*.

Each joystick controller should operate smoothly and provide proportional speed control over its entire range of motion.

For further information or assistance, consult Genie Product Support.



1 platform controls ALC-1000 circuit board
2 jib boom up/down, jib boom extend/retract and platform rotate left right joystick
3 secondary boom up/extend and down/retract joystick
4 drive/steer joystick controller
5 LED circuit board
6 primary boom up/down, primary boom extend/retract and turntable rotate left/right joystick

Platform Controls

1-1
Platform Circuit Board

⚠WARNING Electrocution/burn hazard. Contact with electrically charged circuits could result in death or serious injury. Remove all rings, watches and other jewelry.

Note: When the platform circuit board is replaced, the joystick controllers will need to be calibrated. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Calibrate a Joystick.*

How to Remove the Circuit Board

1 Push in the red Emergency Stop button to the off position at both the ground and platform controls.

2 Locate the cables that connect to the bottom of the control box. Number each cable and its location at the control box.

3 Disconnect the cables from the bottom of the platform control box.

4 Remove the control cable receptacle retaining fasteners from the bottom of the platform control box.

5 Remove the platform control box lid retaining fasteners. Open the control box lid.

6 Locate the circuit board mounted to the inside of the platform control box.

7 Attach a grounded wrist strap to the ground screw inside the control box.

⚠WARNING Electrocution/burn hazard. Contact with electrically charged circuits could result in death or serious injury. Remove all rings, watches and other jewelry.

NOTICE Component damage hazard. Electrostatic discharge (ESD) can damage printed circuit board components. Maintain firm contact with a metal part of the machine that is grounded at all times when handling printed circuit boards OR use a grounded wrist strap.

8 Tag and carefully disconnect the wire connectors from the circuit board.

9 Tag and disconnect the ribbon cable from the LED circuit board.

10 Remove the circuit board mounting fasteners.

11 Carefully remove the circuit board from the control box.

How to Remove the LED Circuit Board

1 Push in the red Emergency Stop button to the off position at both the ground and platform controls.

2 Remove the platform control box lid retaining fasteners. Open the control box lid.

3 Locate the circuit board mounted to the inside of the platform control box.

⚠WARNING Electrocution/burn hazard. Contact with electrically charged circuits could result in death or serious injury. Remove all rings, watches and other jewelry.

NOTICE Component damage hazard. Electrostatic discharge (ESD) can damage printed circuit board components. Maintain firm contact with a metal part of the machine that is grounded at all times when handling printed circuit boards OR use a grounded wrist strap.

4 Tag and carefully disconnect the ribbon cables from the membrane circuit board.

5 Remove the circuit board mounting fasteners.

6 Carefully remove the LED circuit board from the platform control box lid. Do not lose the plastic spacers.

Note: When installing the LED circuit board, be sure the plastic spacers are installed between the circuit board and the control box lid.

1-2 Joysticks

How to Calibrate a Joystick

The joystick controllers on this machine utilize digital Hall Effect technology for proportional control. If a joystick controller is disconnected or replaced, it must be calibrated before that particular machine function will operate.

Note: The joystick must be calibrated before the threshold, max-out or ramping can be set.

Note: After each joystick is calibrated, check the display at the ground control box. There should be no calibration faults shown on the display. If calibration faults exist, repeat procedure for that joystick controlled function.

Note: Perform this procedure with the engine off.

Note: Use the following chart to identify the description of each LCD screen control button used in this procedure.

Plus Minus Previous Enter

Platform Controls

Drive functions:

1 Turn the key switch to the off position.

2 Press and hold the **enter** button on the ground control panel while turning the key switch to platform controls. Hold the **enter** button for approximately 5 seconds.

3 Press the **minus** button twice, then press the **enter** button twice.

4 Use the scroll button to scroll through the menu until DELETE DRIVE JOYSTICK DEFAULTS is displayed.

5 Press the **plus** button to select YES, then press the **enter** button.

6 Do not start the engine.

7 Locate the drive/steer joystick.

8 Move the drive/steer joystick full stroke in the forward direction and hold for 5 seconds, then return to the center or neutral position.

9 Move the drive/steer joystick full stroke in the reverse direction and hold for 5 seconds, then return to the center or neutral position.

⊙ Result: The alarm at the ground controls should sound for a successful calibration.

Steer functions:

1 Turn the key switch to the off position.

2 Press and hold the **enter** button on the ground control panel while turning the key switch to platform controls. Hold the **enter** button for approximately 5 seconds.

3 Press the **minus** button twice, then press the **enter** button twice.

4 Use the scroll button to scroll through the menu until DELETE STEER JOYSTICK DEFAULTS is displayed.

5 Press the **plus** button to select YES, then press the **enter** button.

6 Do not start the engine.

7 Locate the drive/steer joystick.

8 Move the drive/steer joystick or thumb rocker switch (if equipped) full stroke in the left direction and hold for 5 seconds, then return to the center or neutral position.

9 Move the drive/steer joystick or thumb rocker switch (if equipped) full stroke in the right direction and hold for 5 seconds, then return to the center or neutral position.

⊙ Result: The alarm at the ground controls should sound for a successful calibration.

Secondary boom up/down and extend/retract functions:

1 Turn the key switch to the off position.

2 Press and hold the **enter** button on the ground control panel while turning the key switch to platform controls. Hold the **enter** button for approximately 5 seconds.

3 Press the **minus** button twice, then press the **enter** button twice.

4 Use the scroll button to scroll through the menu until DELETE SECONDARY BOOM JOYSTICK DEFAULTS is displayed.

5 Press the **plus** button to select YES, then press the **enter** button.

6 Do not start the engine.

7 Locate the secondary boom up/down and extend/retract joystick.

8 Move the secondary boom up/down and extend/retract joystick full stroke in the up/extend direction and hold for 5 seconds, then return to the center or neutral position.

9 Move the secondary boom up/down and extend/retract joystick full stroke in the down/retract direction and hold for 5 seconds, then return to the center or neutral position.

⊙ Result: The alarm at the ground controls should sound for a successful calibration.

Primary boom extend/retract functions:

1 Turn the key switch to the off position.

2 Press and hold the **enter** button on the ground control panel while turning the key switch to platform controls. Hold the **enter** button for approximately 5 seconds.

3 Press the **minus** button twice, then press the **enter** button twice.

4 Use the scroll button to scroll through the menu until DELETE PRIMARY BOOM EXTEND/RETRACT JOYSTICK DEFAULTS is displayed.

5 Press the **plus** button to select YES, then press the **enter** button.

6 Do not start the engine.

7 Locate the thumb rocker switch on top of the primary boom/turntable rotate joystick.

8 Move the primary boom extend/retract thumb rocker switch full stroke in the extend direction and hold for 5 seconds, then return to thecenter or neutral position.

9 Move the primary boom extend/retract thumb rocker switch full stroke in the retract direction and hold for 5 seconds, then return to the center or neutral position.

⊙ Result: The alarm at the ground controls should sound for a successful calibration.

Platform Controls

Primary boom up/down functions:

1 Turn the key switch to the off position.

2 Press and hold the **enter** button on the ground control panel while turning the key switch to platform controls. Hold the **enter** button for approximately 5 seconds.

3 Press the **minus** button twice, then press the **enter** button twice.

4 Use the scroll button to scroll through the menu until DELETE PRIMARY BOOM UP/DOWN JOYSTICK DEFAULTS is displayed.

5 Press the **plus** button to select YES, then press the **enter** button.

6 Do not start the engine.

7 Locate the primary boom/turntable rotate joystick.

8 Move the boom/turntable rotate joystick full stroke in the up direction and hold for 5 seconds, then return to the center or neutral position.

9 Move the boom/turntable rotate joystick full stroke in the down direction and hold for 5 seconds, then return to the center or neutral position.

⊙ Result: The alarm at the ground controls should sound for a successful calibration.

Jib boom up/down functions:

1 Turn the key switch to the off position.

2 Press and hold the **enter** button on the ground control panel while turning the key switch to platform controls. Hold the **enter** button for approximately 5 seconds.

3 Press the **minus** button twice, then press the **enter** button twice.

4 Use the scroll button to scroll through the menu until RESET JIB BOOM UP/DOWN JOYSTICK DEFAULTS is displayed.

5 Press the **plus** button to select YES, then press the **enter** button.

6 Do not start the engine.

7 Locate the jib boom joystick.

8 Move the jib boom joystick full stroke in the up direction and hold for 5 seconds, then return to the center or neutral position.

9 Move the jib boom joystick full stroke in the down direction and hold for 5 seconds, then return to the center or neutral position.

⊙ Result: The alarm at the ground controls should sound for a successful calibration.

Turntable rotate functions:

1 Turn the key switch to the off position.

2 Press and hold the **enter** button on the ground control panel while turning the key switch to platform controls. Hold the **enter** button for approximately 5 seconds.

3 Press the **minus** button twice, then press the **enter** button twice.

4 Use the scroll button to scroll through the menu until DELETE TURNTABLE ROTATE JOYSTICK DEFAULTS is displayed.

5 Press the **plus** button to select YES, then press the **enter** button.

6 Do not start the engine.

7 Locate the primary boom/turntable rotate joystick.

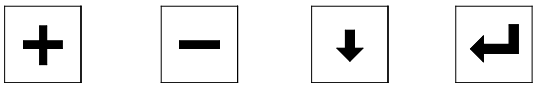
8 Move the boom/turntable joystick full stroke in the left direction and hold for 5 seconds, then return to the center or neutral position.

9 Move the boom/turntable joystick full stroke in the right direction and hold for 5 seconds, then return to the center or neutral position.

⊙ Result: The alarm at the ground controls should sound for a successful calibration.

How to Reset a Proportional Valve Coil Default

Note: Use the following chart to identify the description of each LCD screen control button used in this procedure.



Plus Minus Previous Enter

Note: This procedure only needs to be performed if a proportional valve has been replaced.

Note: After the valve coil defaults have been set, each machine function threshold and default function speed must be set. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Set the Function Thresholds and Default Function Speeds*.

1 Turn the key switch to the off position.

2 Press and hold the **enter** button on the ground control panel while turning the key switch to platform controls. Hold the **enter** button for approximately 5 seconds.

3 Press the **minus** button twice, then press the **enter** button twice.

4 Use the **previous** button to scroll through the menu until the function valve that needs to be reset is displayed. Press the **plus** button to select yes, then press the **enter** button to save the setting.

5 Press the **enter** or **previous** button on the LCD screen until EXIT is displayed.

6 Press the **plus** button or **minus** button to select YES and then press the **enter** button.

Platform Controls

How to Set the Function Thresholds and Default Functions Speeds

Note: Before the threshold and default function speeds can be set, the boom function proportional valve coil defaults must be set first. Refer to Repair Procedure*, How to Reset a Proportional Valve Coil Default.*

Note: If a boom function proportional valve coil has not been replaced and just want to reset the function speed to original factory settings, proceed to Function speeds procedure.

1 Start the engine from the platform controls.

2 Press down the foot switch.

Note: Be sure the engine rpm is set to foot switch activated high idle.

Function threshold:

3 Select a joystick controlled function that needs to have the threshold set.

4 Slowly move the joystick off center in either direction just until the machine function starts to move, then move the joystick very slowly towards the neutral or center position just before the machine function stops. Do not let go of the joystick.

5 While holding the joystick in position, press the engine start button at the platform controls to set the joystick controller threshold.

6 Slowly move the joystick off center in the opposite direction just until the machine function starts to move, then move the joystick very slowly towards the neutral or center position just before the machine function stops. Do not let go of the joystick.

7 While holding the joystick in position, press the engine start button at the platform controls to set the joystick controller threshold.

8 Repeat steps for each joystick controlled machine function:

- Primary boom up/down
- Turntable rotate left/right
- Primary boom extend/retract
- Secondary up/down and extend/retract
- Drive forward/reverse

9 Once the threshold has been set, press and hold the engine start button until the engine shuts off. Do not press the red Emergency Stop button.

Note: Approximately 3 seconds after the engine shuts off, the alarm at the ground controls will sound to indicate the settings are being saved in memory.

10 At the ground controls, turn the key switch to the off position, wait a moment and then turn the key switch to platform controls.

11 Check the display at the ground controls to be sure there are no calibration faults.

Note: There should be no calibration faults shown on the display. If calibration faults exist, repeat this procedure.

Function speeds:

Note: Be sure the machine is in the stowed position and the boom is rotated between the circle end tires.

Note: Perform this procedure with the machine on a firm, level surface that is free of obstructions.

Note: Unless the LCD screen displays NOT CALIBRATED, it will be necessary to enter the valve calibration menu.

12 Start the engine from the platform controls.

13 Select a function that needs the function speed set.

14 **Primary boom up/down and extend/retract functions:** Move the joystick full stroke in the up or extend direction. When the alarm sounds, move the joystick in the opposite direction full stroke until the alarm sounds again. Return the joystick to center.

Secondary boom up and down functions: Starting from the stowed position, move the joystick full stroke in the up direction. When the alarm sounds, move the joystick in the down direction full stroke until the alarm sounds again. Return the joystick to center.

Turntable rotate function, fully retracted: Move the rotate joystick full stroke in either the left or right direction until the alarm sounds. Return the joystick to center.

Turntable rotate function, primary boom extended: Extend the primary boom approximately 4 ft / 1.2 m. Move the rotate joystick full stroke in either the left or right direction until the alarm sounds. Return the joystick to center.

Turntable rotate function, primary and jib booms extended: With the primary boom extended approximately 4 ft / 1.2 m, extend the jib boom approximately 1 ft / 0.3 m. Move the rotate joystick full stroke in either the left or right direction until the alarm sounds. Return the joystick to center.

15 Once the function speeds have been set, press and hold the engine start button until the engine shuts off. Do not press the red Emergency Stop button.

Note: Approximately 3 seconds after the engine shuts off, the alarm at the ground controls will sound to indicate the settings are being saved in memory.

16 At the ground controls, turn the key switch to the off position, wait a moment and then turn the key switch to platform controls.

17 Check the display at the ground controls to be sure there are no calibration faults.

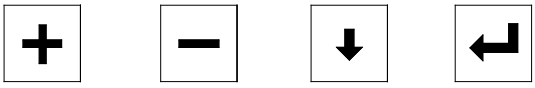
Note: There should be no calibration faults shown on the display. If calibration faults exist, repeat this procedure.

Platform Controls

How to Adjust the Function Speeds

Note: Perform this procedure with the boom in the stowed position.

Note: Use the following chart to identify the description of each LCD screen control button used in this procedure.



Plus Minus Previous Enter

1 Pull out the red Emergency Stop button to the on position at both the ground and platform controls.

2 Press and hold the **enter** button on the ground control panel while turning the key switch to platform controls. Hold the **enter** button for approximately 5 seconds.

3 Press the **plus** button twice, then press the **minus** button twice.

4 Press the **previous** button until the function to be adjusted is displayed.

5 Press the **plus** button to increase the speed or press the **minus** button to decrease the speed.

6 Press the **enter** button to save the setting in memory.

7 Press the **enter** or **previous** button on the LCD screen until EXIT is displayed.

8 Press the **plus** button or **minus** button to select YES and then press the **enter** button.

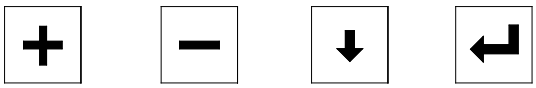
9 Continue to perform this procedure until the machine function speed meets specification. Refer to Specifications, *Performance Specifications*.

How to Adjust the Function Ramp Rate Setting

The ramp rate setting of a joystick controls the time at which it takes for the joystick to reach maximum output, when moved out of the neutral position. The ramp rate settings of a joystick can be changed to compensate for hydraulic pump wear to maintain peak performance from the machine.

Note: Perform this procedure with the boom in the stowed position.

Note: Use the following chart to identify the description of each LCD screen control button used in this procedure.



Plus Minus Previous Enter

1 Pull out the red Emergency Stop button to the on position at both the ground and platform controls.

2 Press and hold the **enter** button on the ground control panel while turning the key switch to platform controls. Hold the **enter** button for approximately 5 seconds.

3 Press the **plus** button twice, then press the **previous** button twice.

4 Press the **previous** button until the function to be adjusted is displayed.

5 Press the **plus** button to increase the ramp rate or press the **minus** button to decrease the ramp rate.

6 Press the **enter** button to save the setting in memory.

7 Press the **enter** or **previous** button on the LCD screen until EXIT is displayed.

8 Press the **plus** button or **minus** button to select YES and then press the **enter** button.

2-1 Platform

How to Remove the Platform

1 Separate the foot switch quick disconnect plug.

2 Support the platform with an appropriate lifting device.

3 Locate the cables that connect to the bottom of the control box. Number each cable and its location at the platform control box.

4 Disconnect the cables from the bottom of the platform control box.

5 Remove the platform control box mounting fasteners. Remove the platform control box and set it aside.

6 Remove the air line to platform bracket retaining fasteners (if equipped).

7 Remove the power to platform cover plate from the electrical outlet box. Do not disconnect the wiring.

⚠WARNING Electrocution/burn hazard. Contact with electrically charged circuits could result in death or serious injury. Remove all rings, watches and other jewelry.

8 Remove the power to platform electrical outlet box from the platform and lay it to the side.

9 Remove the weld cable from the platform (if equipped).

⚠WARNING Electrocution/burn hazard. Contact with electrically charged circuits could result in death or serious injury. Remove all rings, watches and other jewelry.

10 Support the platform, but do not apply any lifting pressure.

11 Remove the four mounting bolts and two U-bolts securing the platform to the platform mounting weldment.

12 Remove the platform from the platform mounting weldment.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. The platform mounting weldment may become unbalanced and fall if it is not properly supported.

Platform Components

2-2 Platform Leveling Cylinder

The platform leveling cylinder keeps the platform level through the entire range of boom motion. The platform is maintained level to the turntable. To accomplish this, the ECM at the ground controls compares the difference in readings between the platform angle sensor and the turntable level sensor, which then sends a signal to the platform controls to open or close the appropriate platform level proportional valve on the platform manifold to maintain a level platform. The platform leveling cylinder is equipped with counterbalance valves to prevent movement in the event of a hydraulic line failure.

How to Remove the Platform Leveling Cylinder

Note: When removing a hose assembly or fitting, the O-ring (if equipped) on the fitting and/or hose end must be replaced. All connections must be torqued to specification during installation. Refer to Specifications, *Hydraulic Hose and Fitting Torque Specifications.*

1 Extend the jib boom until the platform leveling cylinder barrel-end pivot pin is accessible.

2 Raise the jib boom slightly and place blocks under the platform.

3 Lower the jib boom until the platform is resting on the blocks just enough to support the platform.

Note: Do not rest the entire weight of the boom on the blocks.

4 Place a block under the platform leveling cylinder for support.

5 Remove the external snap rings from the barrel-end pivot pin. Use a soft metal drift to remove the barrel-end pivot pin.

6 Support the rod end of the platform level cylinder.

7 Remove the pin retaining fasteners from the platform leveling cylinder rod-end pivot pin. Use a soft metal drift to remove the barrel-end pivot pin.

8 Carefully pull the platform leveling cylinder out of the boom to access the hydraulic hoses.

9 Tag, disconnect and plug the hydraulic hoses from the platform leveling cylinder. Cap the fittings on the cylinder.

⚠WARNING Bodily injury hazard. Spraying hydraulic oil can penetrate and burn skin. Loosen hydraulic connections very slowly to allow the oil pressure to dissipate gradually. Do not allow oil to squirt or spray.

10 Remove the platform leveling cylinder from the machine.

⚠CAUTION Crushing hazard. The platform leveling cylinder may fall if not properly supported when removed from the machine.

2-3 Platform Rotator

The platform rotator is a hydraulically activated helical gear assembly used to rotate the platform 160 degrees.

How to Remove the Platform Rotator

NOTICE Component damage hazard. Mark the platform mounting weldment and the rotator flange before removing the platform mounting weldment. The platform mounting weldment must be replaced in the exact same position on the rotator flange as it was before removal. If a new rotator is installed or the rotator is disassembled, proper alignment can be achieved by rotating the rotator all the way to the left and then installing the platform mounting weldment all the way in the left position.

Note: When removing a hose assembly or fitting, the O-ring (if equipped) on the fitting and/or hose end must be replaced. All connections must be torqued to specification during installation. Refer to Specifications, *Hydraulic Hose and Fitting Torque Specifications.*

1 Remove the platform. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Remove the Platform.*

2 Tag and disconnect the electrical connector from the platform angle sensor.

3 Remove the platform angle sensor retaining fasteners. Remove the platform angle sensor from the platform rotator.

NOTICE Component damage hazard. The platform angle sensor is a very sensitive instrument. It can be damaged internally if is dropped or sustains any physical shock, even if the damage is not visible.

4 Tag, disconnect and plug the hydraulic hoses from the platform rotator manifold. Cap the fittings on the manifold.

⚠WARNING Bodily injury hazard. Spraying hydraulic oil can penetrate and burn skin. Loosen hydraulic connections very slowly to allow the oil pressure to dissipate gradually. Do not allow oil to squirt or spray.

5 Tag, disconnect and plug the hydraulic hoses from the platform manifold. Cap the fittings on the manifold.

⚠WARNING Bodily injury hazard. Spraying hydraulic oil can penetrate and burn skin. Loosen hydraulic connections very slowly to allow the oil pressure to dissipate gradually. Do not allow oil to squirt or spray.

6 Remove the power to platform electrical outlet box bracket mounting fasteners. Do not disconnect the wiring.

7 Remove the hose and cable guide retaining fasteners and remove the guide from the platform support.

Platform Components

8 Remove the weld cable from the platform (if equipped).

⚠WARNING Electrocution/burn hazard. Contact with electrically charged circuits could result in death or serious injury. Remove all rings, watches and other jewelry.

9 Support the platform mounting weldment, but do not apply any lifting pressure.

10 Remove the eight mounting bolts from the platform mounting weldment.

11 Remove the center bolt and slide the platform mounting weldment off of the platform rotator.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. The platform mounting weldment may become unbalanced and fall if it is not properly supported.

12 Support the platform rotator with a suitable lifting device. Do not apply any lifting pressure.

13 Place a block under the platform leveling cylinder for support.

14 Remove the pin retaining fasteners from the platform leveling cylinder rod-end pivot pin. Do not remove the pin.

15 Remove the pin retaining fasteners from the jib boom to platform rotator pivot pin. Do not remove the pin.

16 Use a soft metal drift to remove both pins and remove the platform rotator from the machine.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. The platform rotator could fall when removed from the machine if not properly supported.

How to Bleed the Platform Rotator

Note: Do not start the engine. Use auxiliary power for all machine functions in this procedure.

1 Rotate the platform full right, then full left until air is completely out of the rotator. Bleeding the valve is not necessary.

2-4
Platform Level Sensor

The platform level sensor is mounted to the side of the platform rotator. The platform level sensor is monitored by the control system to maintain a level platform through boom range of motion. If a platform level sensor is replaced, it must be calibrated prior to machine operation.

How to Calibrate the Platform Level Sensor

Note: Perform this procedure with the machine on a firm, level surface.

Note: Perform this procedure with the boom in the stowed position.

Note: Use the following chart to identify the description of each LCD screen control button used in this procedure.

Plus Minus Previous Enter

1 Secure a digital level to one of the side railings of the platform.

2 Start the machine and level the platform to gravity. Turn the machine off.

3 Open the ground control box.

4 Locate the calibration toggle switch at the top of the ground control box. Activate calibration mode by moving the toggle switch in the left direction.

5 Temporarily install a control box door retaining fastener between the door and the box to prevent the control box door from moving the toggle switch while calibrating the machine.

6 Insert the key into the bypass/recovery key switch and turn it to the bypass position.

Note: The angle sensor calibration values will not be saved correctly unless the key switch is in the bypass position and the calibration toggle switch is activated.

7 Press and hold the **enter** button on the ground control panel while turning the key switch to ground controls. Hold the **enter** button for approximately 5 seconds.

8 Enter sensor calibration mode by pressing the buttons at the ground controls in the following sequence: **(plus)(enter)(enter)(plus)**.

9 Press the **enter** or **previous** button on the LCD screen until SET PLATFORM LEVEL SENSOR TO GRAVITY is displayed.

10 Press the **plus** button to select YES, then press the **enter** button to accept.

11 Press the **enter** or **previous** button on the LCD screen until EXIT is displayed.

12 Press the **plus** button to select YES, then press the **enter** button to accept.

13 Remove the fastener that was temporarily installed. Close the control box door and install the door retaining fasteners.

Note: When the control box door is closed, the calibration toggle switch is automatically activated to exit out of calibration mode.

Platform Components

2-5 Platform Overload System (if equipped)

Proper calibration of the platform overload system is essential to safe machine operation. Continued use of an improperly calibrated platform overload system could result in the system failing to sense an overloaded platform. The stability of the machine is compromised and it could tip over.

How to Calibrate the Platform Overload System (if equipped)

Note: Perform this procedure with the machine on a firm, level surface.

1 Level the platform.

2 Determine the maximum platform capacity. Refer to the machine serial plate.

3 Using a suitable lifting device, place an appropriate test weight equal to that of the maximum platform capacity at the center of the platform floor.

Determine the limit switch trigger point:

4 Gently move the platform up and down by hand, so it bounces approximately 1 to 2 inches / 2.5 to 5 cm. Allow the platform to settle.

⊙ Result: **The overload indicator light and the alarm is on**. Slowly tighten the load spring adjustment nut by turning it clockwise just until the overload indicator light and alarm turns off.

Note: The platform will need to be moved up and down and allowed to settle in between adjustments.

Note: There may be a 2 second delay before the overload indicator lights flash and the alarm sounds.

⊙ Result: **The overload indicator light and alarm is off.** Slowly loosen the load spring adjustment nut by turning it counterclockwise just until the overload indicator light and alarm turn on.

Note: There may be a 2 second delay before the overload indicator lights flash and the alarm sounds.

Note: The platform will need to be moved up and down and allowed to settle in between adjustments.

Confirm the setting:

5 Start the engine from the platform controls.

6 Lift the test weight off the platform floor using a suitable lifting device.

7 Place the test weight back onto the center of the platform floor using a suitable lifting device.

⊙ Result: The alarm should be off. The platform overload indicator light should be off at the platform controls and there should be no error message on the LCD display at the ground controls.

Note: There may be an 2 second delay before the overload indicator lights and alarm turn off.

8 Add an additional 15 lbs / 6.8 kg test weight to the original test weight to overload the platform.

⊙ Result: The alarm should be sounding. The platform overload indicator light should be flashing at the platform controls and platform overload should be displayed on the LCD screen at the ground controls.

Note: There may be a 2 second delay before the overload indicator lights flash and the alarm sounds.

9 Test all machine functions from the platform controls.

⊙ Result: All platform control functions should not operate.

10 Turn the key switch to ground controls.

11 Test all machine functions from the ground controls.

⊙ Result: All ground control functions should not operate.

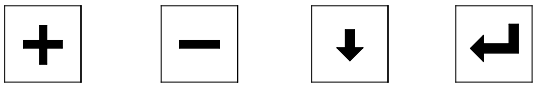
2-6 Platform Overload Recovery Message (software V3.07 and later)

If the ground controls LCD screen displays OVERLOAD RECOVERY, the emergency lowering system has been used while the platform was overloaded.

How to Clear the Platform Overload Recovery Message

Note: This message shall be cleared by a person trained and qualified on the troubleshooting and repair of this machine.

Note: Use the following chart to identify the description of each LCD screen control button used in this procedure.



Plus Minus Previous Enter

1 Turn the key switch to the off position.

2 Press and hold the **enter** button on the ground control panel while turning the key switch to ground controls. Hold the **enter** button for approximately 5 seconds.

Platform Components

3 Press the buttons on the ground controls in the following sequence: **(plus)(minus)(minus)(plus)**.

4 Press the **enter** or **previous** button on the LCD screen until CLEAR OVERLOAD RECOVERY is displayed.

5 Press the **plus** button or the **minus** button to select YES. Then press the buttons in the following sequence: **(plus)(plus)(plus)(minus)**. and press the **enter** button to accept.

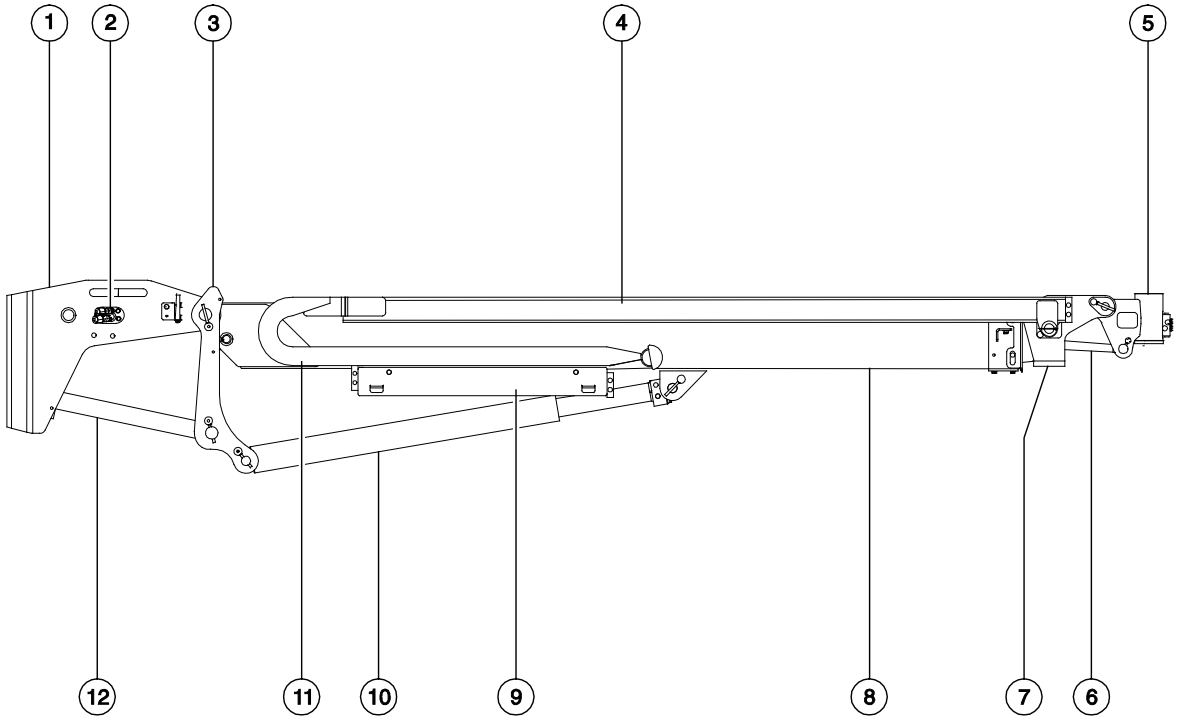
Note: The passcode buttons **(plus)(plus)(plus)(minus)** must be entered in the proper sequence before the **enter** button is pressed.

6 Press the **enter** or **previous** button on the LCD screen until EXIT is displayed.

7 Press the **plus** button or **minus** button to select YES and then press the **enter** button.

8 Turn the key switch to the off position.

Jib Boom Components



1 primary extension boom
2 jib boom manifold
3 bellcrank
4 cable track tube
5 platform rotator
6 platform leveling cylinder
7 jib boom
8 jib extension boom
9 hose and cable junction box
10 jib boom lift cylinder
11 jib boom cable track
12 jib boom leveling cylinder

Jib Boom Components

3-1
Jib Boom Cable Track

The jib boom cable track guides the cables and hoses running up the jib boom. It can be repaired link by link without removing the cables and hoses that run through it. Removing the entire jib boom cable track is only necessary when performing major repairs that involve removing the jib boom.

How to Remove the Jib Boom Cable Track

Note: When removing a hose assembly or fitting, the O-ring (if equipped) on the fitting and/or hose end must be replaced. All connections must be torqued to specification during installation. Refer to Specifications, *Hydraulic Hose and Fitting Torque Specifications.*

1 Raise the jib boom to a horizontal position. Turn the machine off.

2 Remove the cover from the hose and cable junction box under the jib boom cable track.

3 Tag and disconnect the electrical connectors inside the cable track junction box.

4 Tag, disconnect and plug the two hydraulic hoses from the jib boom manifold that lead to the platform manifold. Cap the fittings on the manifold.

⚠WARNING Bodily injury hazard. Spraying hydraulic oil can penetrate and burn skin. Loosen hydraulic connections very slowly to allow the oil pressure to dissipate gradually. Do not allow oil to squirt or spray.

Note: The jib boom manifold is located at the platform end of the primary extension boom.

5 Pull the hoses out of the plastic hose guide located on the primary extension boom near the jib boom manifold.

6 Tag, disconnect and plug the jib boom lift cylinder hydraulic hoses. Cap the fittings on the cylinder.

⚠WARNING Bodily injury hazard. Spraying hydraulic oil can penetrate and burn skin. Loosen hydraulic connections very slowly to allow the oil pressure to dissipate gradually. Do not allow oil to squirt or spray.

7 Remove the hose and cable clamp retaining fasteners from the jib boom cable track junction box. Remove the clamps.

8 Pull the jib boom lift cylinder hydraulic hoses out of the jib boom cable track junction box.

9 Remove the hose and cable clamp retaining fasteners at the platform end of the jib boom cable track tube. Remove the clamps.

10 Tag and disconnect the electrical connectors from the platform manifold.

11 Tag and disconnect the electrical connectors from the platform box.

12 Tag and disconnect the electrical connector from the foot switch.

13 Tag and disconnect the electrical connector from the platform angle sensor.

14 Tag, disconnect and plug the hydraulic hoses from the "P" and "T" ports on the platform manifold.

15 Pull the two hydraulic hoses just removed and all of the cables through the hose and cable guide at the platform support.

NOTICE Component damage hazard. Cables and hoses can be damaged if they are kinked or pinched.

16 Remove the cotter pin from the upper cable track tube at the platform end of the jib boom. Do not discard the washer.

Note: Always replace the cotter pin with a new one.

17 Remove the fasteners from the cable track tube guide at the platform end of the jib boom. Remove the cable track tube guide from the jib boom.

18 Place blocks between the upper and lower cable tracks and secure the upper and lower tracks together.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. If the upper and lower cable tracks are not properly secured together, the cable track could become unbalanced and fall when removed from the machine.

19 Attach a lifting strap from an overhead crane to the cable track.

20 Remove the mounting fasteners that attach the lower cable track to the jib boom.

21 Carefully remove the cable track from the machine and lay it on a structure capable of supporting it.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. The cable track could become unbalanced and fall if not properly attached to the overhead crane.

NOTICE Component damage hazard. Cables and hoses can be damaged if they are kinked or pinched.

How to Repair the Cable Track

NOTICE Component damage hazard. The boom cable track can be damaged if it is twisted.

Note: A cable track repair kit is available through the Genie Service Parts Department.

1 Visually inspect the cable track and determine which 4-link section needs to be replaced.

2 Carefully remove the snap rings and pins from each end of the damaged section of cable track.

3 Remove the retaining fasteners from the upper black rollers from the 4-link section of cable track to be replaced. Remove the rollers.

4 Lift up the hoses and cables and carefully remove the damaged 4-link section of cable track.

NOTICE Component damage hazard. Cables and hoses can be damaged if they are kinked or pinched.

5 Remove the upper rollers from the replacement section of cable track.

6 Lift up the hoses and cables and carefully insert the new 4-link section of cable track.

NOTICE Component damage hazard. Cables and hoses can be damaged if they are kinked or pinched.

7 Connect the ends of the replacement cable track section to the existing cable track using the pins and snap rings.

8 Install the rollers onto the new section of cable track.

9 Operate the jib boom extend/retract function through a full cycle to ensure smooth operation of the new section of cable track.

Jib Boom Components

3-2
Jib Boom

How to Remove the Jib Boom

⚠WARNING Bodily injury hazard. This procedure requires specific repair skills, lifting equipment and a suitable workshop. Attempting this procedure without these skills and tools could result in death or serious injury and significant component damage. Dealer service is strongly recommended.

Note: Perform this procedure with the boom in the stowed position.

Note: When removing a hose assembly or fitting, the O-ring (if equipped) on the fitting and/or hose end must be replaced. All connections must be torqued to specification during installation. Refer to Specifications, *Hydraulic Hose and Fitting Torque Specifications.*

1 Remove the platform. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Remove the Platform.*

2 Remove the platform mounting weldment and the platform rotator. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Remove the Platform Rotator*.

3 Tag, disconnect and plug the two hydraulic hoses from the jib boom manifold that lead to the platform manifold. Cap the fittings on the manifold.

⚠WARNING Bodily injury hazard. Spraying hydraulic oil can penetrate and burn skin. Loosen hydraulic connections very slowly to allow the oil pressure to dissipate gradually. Do not allow oil to squirt or spray.

4 Tag, disconnect and plug the jib boom lift cylinder hydraulic hoses from the jib boom manifold. Cap the fittings on the manifold.

⚠WARNING Bodily injury hazard. Spraying hydraulic oil can penetrate and burn skin. Loosen hydraulic connections very slowly to allow the oil pressure to dissipate gradually. Do not allow oil to squirt or spray.

5 Remove the cotter pin from the upper cable track tube at the platform end of the jib boom.

Note: Always replace the cotter pin with a new one.

6 Remove the cable track guide fasteners from the cable track guide at the platform end of the jib boom and remove the cable track guide from the jib boom.

7 Place blocks between the upper and lower cable tracks and secure the upper and lower tracks together.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. If the upper and lower cable tracks are not properly secured together, the cable track could become unbalanced and fall when removed from the machine.

8 Attach a lifting strap from an overhead crane to the cable track.

9 Remove the mounting fasteners that attach the lower cable track to the jib boom.

10 Remove the cable track from the machine and lay to the side.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. The cable track could become unbalanced and fall if not properly attached to the overhead crane.

NOTICE Component damage hazard. Cables and hoses can be damaged if they are kinked or pinched.

Jib Boom Components

11 Disconnect the electrical connector from the jib boom angle sensor located at the jib boom pivot pin on the engine side of the machine.

12 Remove the cover retaining fasteners from the jib boom angle sensor. Remove the cover.

13 Remove the jib boom angle sensor mounting bracket fasteners from the side of the primary extension boom.

14 Carefully remove the bracket and sensor assembly. Note the location of the springs. Do not lose the springs.

Note: There is one spring inside the jib boom pivot pin and one inside the angle sensor.

Note: When the jib boom is installed, the jib boom angle sensor will need to be calibrated. Refer to repair procedure, *Jib Boom Bellcrank Angle Sensor* for the calibration procedure.

15 Attach a lifting strap from an overhead crane to the platform end of the jib boom.

16 Support the barrel end of the jib boom lift cylinder with another suitable lifting device.

17 Remove the pin retaining fasteners from the jib boom lift cylinder barrel-end pivot pin.

18 Use a soft metal drift to remove the jib boom lift cylinder barrel-end pivot pin.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. The jib boom could fall when the barrel-end pivot pin is removed if not properly supported by the overhead crane.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. The jib boom lift cylinder may become unbalanced and fall when it is removed from the machine if it is not properly supported by the overhead crane.

19 Secure the jib boom lift cylinder to the jib boom with a strap or other suitable device.

20 Raise the jib boom to a horizontal position using the overhead crane.

21 Attach a second lifting strap from the overhead crane to the pivot end of the jib boom.

22 Remove the pin retaining fastener from the jib boom pivot pin. Do not remove the pin.

23 Place a block under the jib boom level cylinder for support. Protect the cylinder rod from damage.

24 Use a soft metal drift to tap the pin halfway out in one direction and lower one side of the jib boom bellcrank. Tap the pin in the other direction and lower the other side of the jib boom bellcrank.

25 Use a soft metal drift to remove the jib boom pivot pin. Remove the jib boom from the machine and place it on a structure capable of supporting it.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. The jib boom may become unbalanced and fall when it is removed from the machine if it is not properly supported by the overhead crane.

Jib Boom Components

3-3
Jib Boom Lift Cylinder

How to Remove the Jib Boom Lift Cylinder

Note: Perform this procedure with the boom in the stowed position.

Note: When removing a hose assembly or fitting, the O-ring (if equipped) on the fitting and/or hose end must be replaced. All connections must be torqued to specification during installation. Refer to Specifications, *Hydraulic Hose and Fitting Torque Specifications.*

1 Raise the jib boom slightly and place blocks under the platform mounting weldment. Lower the jib boom until the platform is resting on the blocks just enough to support the platform.

Note: Do not rest the entire weight of the boom on the blocks.

2 Tag, disconnect and plug the jib boom lift cylinder hydraulic hoses. Cap the fittings on the cylinder.

⚠WARNING Bodily injury hazard. Spraying hydraulic oil can penetrate and burn skin. Loosen hydraulic connections very slowly to allow the oil pressure to dissipate gradually. Do not allow oil to squirt or spray.

3 Support the rod end of the jib boom lift cylinder with a suitable lifting device.

4 Remove the pin retaining fasteners from the jib boom lift cylinder rod-end pivot pin. Use a soft metal drift to remove the pin and let the cylinder hang down.

5 Attach a lifting strap from an overhead crane to the barrel end of jib boom lift cylinder.

6 Remove the pin retaining fasteners from the jib boom lift cylinder barrel-end pivot pin. Use a soft metal drift to remove the pin.

7 Remove the jib boom lift cylinder from the machine.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. The jib boom lift cylinder may become unbalanced and fall when it is removed from the machine if it is not properly supported by the overhead crane.

3-4
Jib Boom Level Cylinder

How to Remove the Jib Boom Level Cylinder

Note: Perform this procedure with the boom in the stowed position.

Note: When removing a hose assembly or fitting, the O-ring (if equipped) on the fitting and/or hose end must be replaced. All connections must be torqued to specification during installation. Refer to Specifications, *Hydraulic Hose and Fitting Torque Specifications.*

1 Extend the primary boom until the jib boom level cylinder barrel-end pivot pin is accessible.

2 Raise the jib boom above horizontal.

3 Attach an overhead crane to the jib boom assembly for support.

4 Place a block under the jib boom level cylinder for support. Protect the cylinder rod from damage.

5 Remove the pin retaining fasteners from the jib boom level cylinder rod-end pivot pin. Use a soft metal drift to remove the pin.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. The jib boom could fall if not properly supported when the jib boom level cylinder rod-end pivot pin is removed.

6 Remove the external snap rings from the jib boom level cylinder barrel-end pivot pin. Use a soft metal drift to remove the pin.

7 Tag, disconnect and plug the jib boom level cylinder hydraulic hoses from the jib boom manifold. Cap the fittings on the manifold.

⚠WARNING Bodily injury hazard. Spraying hydraulic oil can penetrate and burn skin. Loosen hydraulic connections very slowly to allow the oil pressure to dissipate gradually. Do not allow oil to squirt or spray.

8 Attach an overhead crane or other suitable device to the jib boom level cylinder for support.

9 Carefully remove the jib boom level cylinder from the machine.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. The jib boom level cylinder could become unbalanced and fall when removed from the machine if not properly supported.

Jib Boom Components

3-5
Jib Boom Extension Cylinder

How to Remove the Jib Boom Extension Cylinder

⚠WARNING Bodily injury hazard. This procedure requires specific repair skills, lifting equipment and a suitable workshop. Attempting this procedure without these skills and tools could result in death or serious injury and significant component damage. Dealer service is strongly recommended.

Note: Perform this procedure with the boom in the stowed position.

Note: When removing a hose assembly or fitting, the O-ring (if equipped) on the fitting and/or hose end must be replaced. All connections must be torqued to specification during installation. Refer to Specifications, *Hydraulic Hose and Fitting Torque Specifications.*

1 Remove the platform. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Remove the Platform.*

2 Remove the jib boom lift cylinder. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Remove the Jib Boom Lift Cylinder*.

3 Attach a lifting strap from an overhead crane to the platform end of the jib boom for support. Raise the jib boom to a horizontal position using the overhead crane.

4 Extend the jib boom until the jib boom extension cylinder rod-end pivot pin is accessible.

5 Tag, disconnect and plug the two hydraulic hoses from the jib boom manifold that lead to the platform manifold. Cap the fittings on the manifold.

⚠WARNING Bodily injury hazard. Spraying hydraulic oil can penetrate and burn skin. Loosen hydraulic connections very slowly to allow the oil pressure to dissipate gradually. Do not allow oil to squirt or spray.

6 Tag, disconnect and plug the jib boom lift cylinder and jib boom extension cylinder hydraulic hoses from the jib boom manifold. Cap the fittings on the manifold.

⚠WARNING Bodily injury hazard. Spraying hydraulic oil can penetrate and burn skin. Loosen hydraulic connections very slowly to allow the oil pressure to dissipate gradually. Do not allow oil to squirt or spray.

7 Remove the cover from the lower jib boom cable track.

8 Tag and disconnect the electrical connectors inside the lower cable track.

9 Remove the hose and cable clamp retaining fasteners from lower cable track at the pivot end of the jib boom. Remove the clamps.

10 Pull the electrical cables out of the lower cable track that lead to the primary boom.

11 Attach a lifting strap from a second overhead crane to the pivot end of the jib boom for support. Do not apply any lifting pressure.

12 Place a block under the jib boom level cylinder for support. Protect the cylinder rod from damage.

13 Remove the pin retaining fastener from the jib boom pivot pin. Do not remove the pin.

14 Use a soft metal drift to tap the pin halfway out in one direction and lower one side of the jib boom bellcrank. Tap the pin in the other direction and lower the other side of the jib boom bellcrank.

15 Use a soft metal drift to remove the jib boom pivot pin. Remove the jib boom from the machine and place it on a structure capable of supporting it.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. The jib boom may become unbalanced and fall when it is removed from the machine if it is not properly supported by the overhead crane.

16 Remove the pin retaining fasteners from the jib boom extension cylinder rod-end pivot pin. Use a soft metal drift to remove the pin.

17 Attach a lifting strap from an overhead crane to the barrel end of the jib boom extension cylinder.

18 Remove the pin retaining fasteners from the jib boom extension cylinder barrel-end pivot pin. Use a soft metal drift to remove the pin.

19 Carefully slide the jib boom extension cylinder out of the jib boom and place it on a structure capable of supporting it.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. The jib boom extension cylinder could become unbalanced and fall when removed from the jib boom if not properly supported.

Note: During removal, the overhead crane strap will need to be adjusted for proper balancing.

3-6 Jib Boom Bellcrank Angle Sensor

The jib boom bellcrank angle sensor is monitored by the control system to keep the jib boom bellcrank vertical and to help maintain a level platform through boom range of motion. If a jib boom bellcrank angle sensor is replaced, it must be calibrated prior to machine operation. The jib boom bellcrank angle sensor is mounted to the bellcrank pivot pin on the engine side of the machine.

How to Calibrate the Jib Boom Bellcrank Angle Sensor

Note: If the primary boom or secondary boom angle sensors have been removed or replaced, or the turntable level sensor has been replaced, they must be calibrated before the jib boom bellcrank angle sensor. Refer to Repair Procedures, *How to Calibrate the Primary Boom Angle Sensor* or *How to Calibrate the Secondary Boom Angle Sensor* or *How to Calibrate the Turntable Level Sensor*.

Note: For software versions 4.01 and higher, use the 2 Point Calibration procedure. For software versions before 4.01, use the 6 Point Calibration procedure. The software version is displayed on the LCD screen when the red Emergency Stop button is pulled out to the on position.

Note: Perform this procedure with the machine on a firm, level surface.

Note: A digital level will only be required to perform the 6 Point Calibration procedure.

Note: A kit is available through Genie Product Support (Genie part number 58351). This kit includes a digital level with a magnetic base and cable harnesses.

Jib Boom Components

Note: Use the following chart to identify the description of each LCD screen control button used in this procedure.

Plus Minus Previous Enter

Digital levels with alternate zero function:

Note: Prepare the digital level by placing it vertically on a known surface that is perpendicular to gravity. Zero out the level with the alternate zero function.

Note: When the level is calibrated correctly, it should read 0° on a vertical surface.

Digital levels without alternate zero function:

Note: If your digital level does not have an alternate zero function, it will read 90° on a vertical surface. During calibration, the measured value will need to be subtracted from 90 degrees to get the correct number to enter into the system.

6 Point Calibration procedure

Note: Use this procedure for software versions before 4.01.

Note: For the 2 Point Calibration procedure, proceed to step 33.

1 Fully extend the axles with the booms in the stowed positions.

2 Raise the jib boom to a slightly less than horizontal position.

3 Push in the ground controls red Emergency Stop button to the off position. Do not turn the key switch to the off position.

4 Open the ground control box.

5 Locate the calibration toggle switch at the top of the ground control box. Activate calibration mode by moving the toggle switch in the left direction.

6 Temporarily install a control box door retaining fastener between the door and the box to prevent the control box door from moving the toggle switch while calibrating the machine.

7 Remove the key from the main key switch. Insert the key into the bypass/recovery key switch and turn it to the bypass position.

Note: The angle sensor calibration values will not be saved correctly unless the key switch is in the bypass position and the calibration toggle switch is activated.

8 Press and hold the **enter** button on the ground control panel while pulling out the ground controls red Emergency Stop button to the on position. Hold the **enter** button for approximately 5 seconds and then release it.

9 Enter sensor calibration mode by pressing the buttons at the ground controls in the following sequence: **(plus)(enter)(enter)(plus)**.

10 Press the **enter** or **previous** button on the LCD screen until DELETE JIB LEVEL ANGLE SENSOR CALIBRATION is displayed.

11 Press the **plus** button to select YES, then press the **enter** button to accept.

12 At the jib level calibration deg 60.0deg screen, start the engine.

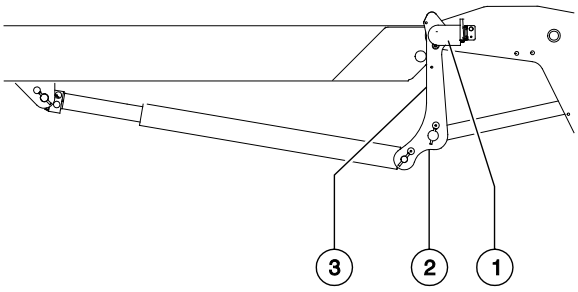
Note: If the system exits out of calibration mode when the engine is started, repeat step 8 and continue to step 12.

13 Press and hold a function enable/speed select button and the platform level up button. Fully extend the jib boom level cylinder.

Note: When in bypass mode, the platform level buttons are used to adjust the jib boom level cylinder.

Note: With the jib boom level cylinder is fully extended, the jib boom bellcrank angle should be at approximately 60 ± 2 degrees.

14 Attach the digital level to the surface of the jib boom bellcrank as shown.



1 jib boom angle sensor
2 jib boom bellcrank
3 place level on this surface

15 At the ground controls, press the **plus** button or **minus** button to adjust the display to the exact value shown on the digital level and press the **enter** button.

Note: If the measured angle already matches the angle shown on the display at the ground controls, press the **plus** button or **minus** button to change the angle and then change back to the measured value. The system must detect a change in displayed value to record the calibrated value.

16 Press and hold a function enable/speed select button and the platform level down button until the digital level displays approximately 34 ± 2 degrees.

17 At the ground controls, press the **plus** button or **minus** button to adjust the display to the exact value shown on the digital level and press the **enter** button.

Note: If the measured angle already matches the angle shown on the display at the ground controls, press the **plus** button or **minus** button to change the angle and then change back to the measured value. The system must detect a change in displayed value to record the calibrated value.

18 Press and hold a function enable/speed select button and the platform level down button until the digital level displays approximately 8 ± 2 degrees.

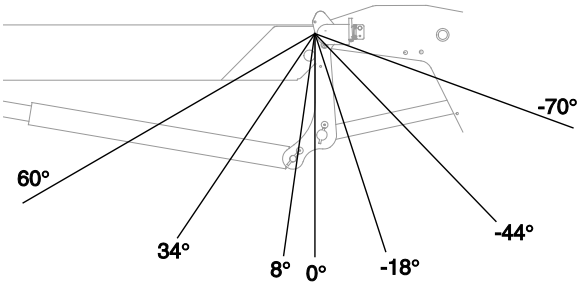
19 At the ground controls, press the **plus** button or **minus** button to adjust the display to the exact value shown on the digital level and press the **enter** button.

Note: If the measured angle already matches the angle shown on the display at the ground controls, press the **plus** button or **minus** button to change the angle and then change back to the measured value. The system must detect a change in displayed value to record the calibrated value.

20 Press and hold a function enable/speed select button and raise the jib boom above horizontal to provide additional ground clearance for the remaining calibration points.

Jib Boom Components

21 Press and hold a function enable/speed select button and the platform level down button until the digital level displays approximately 18 ± 2 degrees.



Calibration angles

22 At the ground controls, press the **plus** button or **minus** button to adjust the display to the exact value shown on the digital level and press the **enter** button.

Note: Be sure the number entered at the ground controls is a negative number.

Note: If the measured angle already matches the angle shown on the display at the ground controls, press the **plus** button or **minus** button to change the angle and then change back to the measured value. The system must detect a change in displayed value to record the calibrated value.

23 Press and hold a function enable/speed select button and the platform level down button until the digital level displays approximately 44 ± 2 degrees.

24 At the ground controls, press the **plus** button or **minus** button to adjust the display to the exact value shown on the digital level and press the **enter** button.

Note: Be sure the number entered at the ground controls is a negative number.

Note: If the measured angle already matches the angle shown on the display at the ground controls, press the **plus** button or **minus** button to change the angle and then change back to the measured value. The system must detect a change in displayed value to record the calibrated value.

25 Press and hold a function enable/speed select button and the platform level down button until the digital level displays approximately 70 ± 2 degrees. The jib boom level cylinder should be fully retracted at this point.

26 At the ground controls, press the **plus** button or **minus** button to adjust the display to the exact value shown on the digital level and press the **enter** button.

Note: Be sure the number entered at the ground controls is a negative number.

Note: If the measured angle already matches the angle shown on the display at the ground controls, press the **plus** button or **minus** button to change the angle and then change back to the measured value. The system must detect a change in displayed value to record the calibrated value.

Note: With the jib boom level cylinder fully retracted, the jib boom bellcrank angle should be at approximately 70 degrees.

27 Press and hold the engine start button for approximately 5 seconds to shut off the engine and to save the calibration settings.

Note: Do not turn the engine off with the key switch or red Emergency Stop button or all calibration points or values will not be saved.

28 Press the **enter** or **previous** button on the LCD screen until EXIT is displayed.Press the **plus** button to select YES, then press the **enter** button to accept.

29 Turn the key back to the run position and remove the key from the bypass/recovery key switch. Insert the key into the main key switch and turn it to ground controls.

Note: Be sure that the bypass/recovery key switch is in the run position before attempting to operate the machine.

30 Wait approximately 20 seconds and turn the machine off by pressing the red Emergency Stop button in.

31 Remove the fastener that was temporarily installed. Close the control box door and install the door retaining fasteners.

Note: When the control box door is closed, the calibration toggle switch is automatically activated to exit out of calibration mode.

32 Pull out the red Emergency Stop button. Start the engine and lower the boom to the stowed position. Be sure there are no calibration faults shown on the display.

2 Point Calibration procedure

Note: Use this procedure for software versions 4.01 and higher.

33 Fully extend the axles with the booms in the stowed positions.

34 Raise the jib boom to a slightly less than horizontal position.

35 Push in the ground controls red Emergency Stop button to the off position. Do not turn the key switch to the off position.

36 Open the ground control box.

37 Locate the calibration toggle switch at the top of the ground control box. Activate calibration mode by moving the toggle switch in the left direction.

38 Temporarily install a control box door retaining fastener between the door and the box to prevent the control box door from moving the toggle switch while calibrating the machine.

39 Remove the key from the main key switch. Insert the key into the bypass/recovery key switch and turn it to the bypass position.

Note: The angle sensor calibration values will not be saved correctly unless the key switch is in the bypass position and the calibration toggle switch is activated.

40 Press and hold the **enter** button on the ground control panel while pulling out the ground controls red Emergency Stop button to the on position. Hold the **enter** button for approximately 5 seconds and then release it.

Jib Boom Components

41 Enter sensor calibration mode by pressing the buttons at the ground controls in the following sequence: **(plus)(enter)(enter)(plus)**.

42 Press the **enter** or **previous** button on the LCD screen until DELETE JIB LEVEL ANGLE SENSOR CALIBRATION is displayed.

43 Press the **plus** button to select YES, then press the **enter** button to accept.

44 Press and hold the platform level up button to fully extend the jib level cylinder until it stops at the end of the cylinder stroke.

45 Press the **enter** or **previous** button on the LCD screen until JIB LEVEL CYLINDER FULLY EXTENDED is displayed.

46 Press the **plus** button to select YES, then press the **enter** button to accept.

47 Press and hold the platform level down button to fully retract the jib level cylinder until it stops at the end of the cylinder stroke.

Note: The jib will need to be raised to prevent the platform from hitting the ground while fully retracting the jib level cylinder.

48 Press the **enter** or **previous** button on the LCD screen until JIB LEVEL CYLINDER FULLY RETRACTED is displayed.

49 Press the **plus** button to select YES, then press the **enter** button to accept.

50 Press and hold the engine start button for approximately 5 seconds to shut off the engine and to save the calibration settings.

Note: Do not turn the engine off with the key switch or red Emergency Stop button or all calibration points or values will not be saved.

51 Press the **enter** or **previous** button on the LCD screen until EXIT is displayed. Press the **plus** button to select YES, then press the **enter** button to accept.

52 Turn the key back to the run position and remove the key from the bypass/recovery key switch. Insert the key into the main key switch and turn it to ground controls.

Note: Be sure that the bypass/recovery key switch is in the run position before attempting to operate the machine.

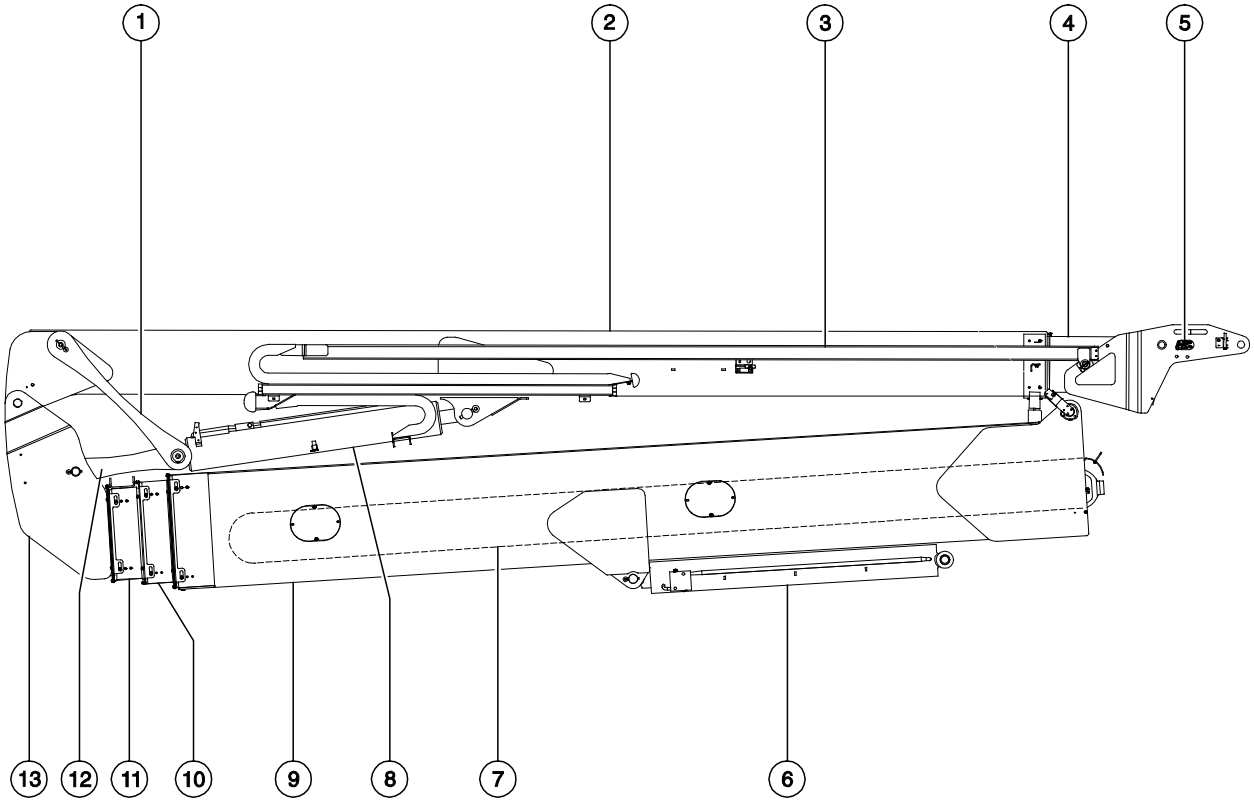
53 Wait approximately 20 seconds and turn the machine off by pressing the red Emergency Stop button in.

54 Remove the fastener that was temporarily installed. Close the control box door and install the door retaining fasteners.

55 Note: When the control box door is closed, the calibration toggle switch is automatically activated to exit out of calibration mode.

56 Pull out the red Emergency Stop button. Start the engine and lower the boom to the stowed position. Be sure there are no calibration faults shown on the display.

Boom Components



1 upper primary boom lift cylinder linkage arm
2 primary boom
3 cable track
4 primary extension boom
5 jib boom manifold
6 secondary boom lift cylinder
7 secondary boom cable track (inside of secondary boom)
8 primary boom lift cylinder
9 number 1 secondary boom tube
10 number 2 secondary boom tube
11 number 3 secondary boom tube
12 lower primary boom lift cylinder linkage arm
13 number 4 secondary boom tube

Boom Components

4-1
Primary Boom Cable Track

The primary boom cable track guides the cables and hoses running up the boom. It can be repaired link by link without removing the cables and hoses that run through it. Removing the entire primary boom cable track is only necessary when performing major repairs that involve removing the primary boom.

How to Remove the Primary Boom Cable Track

Note: When removing a hose assembly or fitting, the O-ring (if equipped) on the fitting and/or hose end must be replaced. All connections must be torqued to specification during installation. Refer to Specifications, *Hydraulic Hose and Fitting Torque Specifications.*

Note: Perform this procedure with the machine on a firm, level surface.

Note: Perform this procedure with the boom in the stowed position.

1 Remove the cover from the lower jib boom cable track.

2 Tag and disconnect the electrical connectors inside the lower cable track.

3 Remove the hose and cable clamp retaining fasteners from lower cable track at the pivot end of the jib boom. Remove the clamps.

4 Pull the electrical cables out of the lower cable track that lead to the primary boom.

NOTICE Component damage hazard. Cables can be damaged if they are kinked or pinched.

5 Tag and disconnect the electrical connectors from the jib boom manifold located at the platform end of the primary extension boom.

6 Tag, disconnect and plug the two hydraulic hoses from the jib boom manifold that lead to the platform manifold. Cap the fittings on the manifold.

⚠WARNING Bodily injury hazard. Spraying hydraulic oil can penetrate and burn skin. Loosen hydraulic connections very slowly to allow the oil pressure to dissipate gradually. Do not allow oil to squirt or spray.

7 Remove the retaining fasteners from the hose and cable guide at the platform end of the primary boom. Remove the hose and cable guide.

8 Tag and disconnect the electrical connector from the limit switch on the side of the primary boom. Do not remove the limit switch.

9 Remove the cotter pin from the upper cable track tube at the platform end of the primary extension boom.

Note: Always replace the cotter pin with a new one.

10 Remove the retaining fasteners from the cable track guide at the platform end of the boom. Remove the cable track guide from the machine.

11 Place blocks between the upper and lower cable tracks and secure the upper and lower tracks together.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. If the upper and lower cable tracks are not properly secured together, the cable track could become unbalanced and fall when removed from the machine.

Boom Components

12 Remove the hose and cable clamps from the primary boom lift cylinder.

13 At the counterweight end of the secondary boom, support and secure the secondary boom lower end cover to a suitable lifting device.

14 Remove the cover retaining fasteners and remove the cover from the end of the secondary boom.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. The secondary boom lower end cover could become unbalanced and fall when removed from the secondary boom if not properly supported and secured to the lifting device.

15 Locate the two hydraulic hoses inside the end of the secondary boom that lead to the primary boom cable track.

16 Tag, disconnect and plug the hydraulic hoses from the unions. Cap the fittings on the unions.

⚠WARNING Bodily injury hazard. Spraying hydraulic oil can penetrate and burn skin. Loosen hydraulic connections very slowly to allow the oil pressure to dissipate gradually. Do not allow oil to squirt or spray.

17 Disconnect the electrical connectors for the electrical cables that lead to the cable track at the end of the secondary boom.

18 Pull all hydraulic hoses and electrical cables that lead to the cable track out of the secondary boom riser.

NOTICE Component damage hazard. Cables and hoses can be damaged if they are kinked or pinched.

19 Attach a lifting strap to each end of the cable track from an overhead crane for support. Do not apply any lifting pressure.

20 Remove the mounting fasteners that attach the lower cable track to the primary boom lift cylinder.

21 Remove the mounting fasteners that attach the cable track to the primary boom.

22 Carefully remove the cable track from the machine and lay it on a structure capable of supporting it.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. The primary boom cable track could become unbalanced and fall when removed from the primary boom if not properly supported by the overhead crane.

NOTICE Component damage hazard. The boom cable track can be damaged if it is twisted.

NOTICE Component damage hazard. Cables and hoses can be damaged if they are kinked or pinched.

Boom Components

How to Repair the Primary Boom Cable Track

NOTICE Component damage hazard. The boom cable track can be damaged if it is twisted.

Note: A cable track repair kit is available through the Genie Service Parts Department.

1 Visually inspect the cable track and determine which 4-link section needs to be replaced.

2 Support the cable track assembly above the section to be replaced.

3 Carefully remove the snap rings and pins from each end of the damaged section of cable track.

4 Remove the retaining fasteners from the upper black rollers from the 4-link section of cable track to be replaced. Remove the rollers.

5 Lift up the hoses and cables and carefully remove the damaged 4-link section of cable track.

NOTICE Component damage hazard. Cables and hoses can be damaged if they are kinked or pinched.

6 Remove the upper rollers from the replacement section of cable track.

7 Lift up the hoses and cables and carefully insert the new 4-link section of cable track.

NOTICE Component damage hazard. Cables and hoses can be damaged if they are kinked or pinched.

8 Connect the ends of the replacement cable track section to the existing cable track using the pins and snap rings.

9 Install the rollers onto the new section of cable track.

10 Operate the primary boom extend/retract function through a full cycle to ensure smooth operation of the new section of cable track.

4-2 Secondary Boom Cable Track

The secondary boom cable track guides the cables and hoses running up through the inside of the secondary boom. It can be repaired link by link without removing the cables and hoses that run through it. Removal of the secondary boom cable track is required to repair it.

How to Remove the Secondary Boom Cable Track

Note: When removing a hose assembly or fitting, the O-ring (if equipped) on the fitting and/or hose end must be replaced. All connections must be torqued to specification during installation. Refer to Specifications, *Hydraulic Hose and Fitting Torque Specifications.*

1 Working at the counterweight end of the secondary boom, support and secure the secondary boom end cover to a suitable lifting device.

2 Remove the cover retaining fasteners and remove the cover from the secondary boom.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. The secondary boom end cover could become unbalanced and fall when removed from the secondary boom if not properly supported and secured to the lifting device.

3 Working at the platform end of the secondary boom, support and secure the secondary boom end cover to a suitable lifting device.

4 Remove the cover retaining fasteners and remove the cover from the secondary boom.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. The secondary boom end cover could become unbalanced and fall when removed from the secondary boom if not properly supported and secured to the lifting device.

5 Working at the platform end of the secondary boom, remove the hose and cable U-bolt fasteners near the upper cable track tube.

6 Working at the platform end of the secondary boom, remove the upper cable track tube retaining fasteners. Remove the curved hose guide.

7 Working at the platform end of the secondary boom, remove the lower cable track retaining fasteners.

8 Working at the counterweight end of the secondary boom, remove the lower cable track retaining fasteners.

9 Tag, disconnect and plug the hydraulic hoses from the following ports of the function manifold: PE, PR, P2, T1, PU and PD. Cap the fittings on the manifold.

⚠WARNING Bodily injury hazard. Spraying hydraulic oil can penetrate and burn skin. Loosen hydraulic connections very slowly to allow the oil pressure to dissipate gradually. Do not allow oil to squirt or spray.

10 Pull the hydraulic hoses just removed through the turntable bulkhead.

NOTICE Component damage hazard. Hoses can be damaged if they are kinked or pinched.

11 Working at the counterweight end of the secondary boom, tag, disconnect and plug the hydraulic hoses from the unions that lead to the cable track.

12 Working at the counterweight end of the secondary boom, tag and disconnect the electrical connectors to all of the cables that lead to the secondary boom cable track.

13 Tag, disconnect and plug the primary boom lift cylinder hydraulic hoses. Cap the fittings on the cylinder.

14 Tag, disconnect and plug the primary boom extension cylinder hydraulic hoses at the unions located above the primary boom lift cylinder. Cap the fittings on the unions.

15 Pull the hydraulic hoses for the primary boom lift cylinder and extension cylinder out through the hole in the number 4 secondary boom tube.

NOTICE Component damage hazard. Hoses can be damaged if they are kinked or pinched.

16 Working at the platform end of the secondary boom, place blocks between the upper and lower cable tracks for support.

Boom Components

17 Working at the counterweight end of the secondary boom, attach a lifting strap from an overhead crane to the secondary boom cable track.

18 Carefully pull the secondary boom cable track out of the counterweight end of the boom.

19 Remove the secondary boom cable track from the machine and place it on a structure capable of supporting it.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. The secondary boom cable track could become unbalanced and fall if not properly supported when removed from the machine.

NOTICE Component damage hazard. Cables and hoses can be damaged if they are kinked or pinched.

NOTICE Component damage hazard. The secondary boom cable track can be damaged if it is twisted.

Note: During removal, the overhead crane strap will need to be adjusted for proper balancing.

How to Repair the Secondary Boom Cable Track

NOTICE Component damage hazard. The boom cable track can be damaged if it is twisted.

Note: A cable track repair kit is available through the Genie Service Parts Department.

1 Remove the secondary boom cable track. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Remove the Secondary Boom Cable Track*.

2 Visually inspect the cable track and determine which 4-link section needs to be replaced.

3 Carefully remove the snap rings and pins from each end of the damaged section of cable track.

4 Remove the retaining fasteners from the upper black rollers from the 4-link section of cable track to be replaced. Remove the rollers.

5 Lift up the hoses and cables and carefully remove the damaged 4-link section of cable track.

NOTICE Component damage hazard. Cables and hoses can be damaged if they are kinked or pinched.

Note: If the section of cable track being replaced has clamps or wear pads, those items will need to be transferred to the replacement section of cable track.

6 Remove the upper rollers from the replacement section of cable track.

7 Lift up the hoses and cables and carefully insert the new 4-link section of cable track.

NOTICE Component damage hazard. Cables and hoses can be damaged if they are kinked or pinched.

8 Connect the ends of the replacement cable track section to the existing cable track using the pins and snap rings.

9 Install the rollers onto the new section of cable track.

10 Install the secondary boom cable track into the secondary boom.

11 Operate the secondary boom up/extend and down/retract functions through a full cycle to ensure smooth operation of the new section of cable track.

4-3 Primary Boom

How to Remove the Primary Boom

⚠WARNING Bodily injury hazard. This procedure requires specific repair skills, lifting equipment and a suitable workshop. Attempting this procedure without these skills and tools could result in death or serious injury and significant component damage. Dealer service is strongly recommended.

Note: When removing a hose assembly or fitting, the O-ring (if equipped) on the fitting and/or hose end must be replaced. All connections must be torqued to specification during installation. Refer to Specifications, *Hydraulic Hose and Fitting Torque Specifications*.

Note: Perform this procedure with the boom in the stowed position.

1 Remove the platform. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Remove the Platform.*

2 Remove the platform mounting weldment and the platform rotator. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Remove the Platform Rotator*.

3 Remove the jib boom. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Remove the Jib Boom.*

Note: When the jib boom is installed, the jib boom angle sensor will need to be calibrated. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Calibrate the Jib Boom Bellcrank Angle Sensor*.

Boom Components

4 Remove the primary boom cable track. Refer to repair procedure, How to Remove the Cable Track.

5 Remove the end cover from the pivot end of the primary boom.

6 Remove the limit switch mounting fasteners from the limit switch on the ground controls side of the primary boom. Do not disconnect the wiring. Remove the limit switch.

7 Disconnect the electrical connector from the primary boom angle sensor.

Note: The primary boom angle sensor is located inside the primary boom at the pivot end.

8 Remove the primary boom angle sensor bracket mounting fasteners and remove the primary boom angle sensor from the primary boom. Do not remove the angle sensor from the bracket. Note the location of the springs. Do not lose the springs.

Note: There is one spring inside the primary boom pivot pin and one inside the angle sensor.

Note: When the primary boom is installed, the primary boom angle sensor will need to be calibrated. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Calibrate the Primary Boom Angle Sensor*.

9 Remove the hose and cable guide fasteners at the primary boom pivot pin. Remove the hose and cable guide.

10 Tag, disconnect and plug the primary boom extension cylinder hydraulic hoses. Cap the fittings on the cylinder.

⚠WARNING Bodily injury hazard. Spraying hydraulic oil can penetrate and burn skin. Loosen hydraulic connections very slowly to allow the oil pressure to dissipate gradually. Do not allow oil to squirt or spray.

11 Place blocks under both ends of the primary boom lift cylinder for support.

12 Attach a lifting strap from an overhead crane to the rod end of the primary boom lift cylinder.

13 Remove the pin retaining fasteners from the primary boom lift cylinder rod-end pivot pin.

14 Use a soft metal drift to remove the rod-end pivot pin. Rest the rod end of the primary boom lift cylinder on the blocks.

15 Support both upper primary boom lift cylinder linkage arms with a suitable lifting device. Do not apply any lifting pressure.

16 Remove the pin retaining fasteners from the upper primary boom lift cylinder linkage arm pivot pin where it connects to the primary boom.

17 Use a soft metal drift to tap the pin halfway out and lower one of the linkage arms down. Tap the pin in the other direction and lower the other linkage arm down.

⚠CAUTION Crushing hazard. The upper primary boom lift cylinder linkage arms could fall if not properly supported when the pivot pins are removed.

18 Attach a 5 ton / 5000 kg overhead crane to both ends of the primary boom. Do not apply any lifting pressure.

19 Remove the pin retaining fasteners from the primary boom pivot pins.

20 Use a soft metal drift to remove the primary boom pivot pins.

21 Carefully remove the primary boom from the machine and place it on a structure capable of supporting it.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. The primary boom could become unbalanced and fall when removed from the machine if not properly attached to the overhead crane.

4-4
Primary Boom Lift Cylinder

The primary boom lift cylinder raises and lowers the primary boom. The primary boom lift cylinder is equipped with a counterbalance valve to prevent movement in the event of a hydraulic line failure.

How to Remove the Primary Boom Lift Cylinder

⚠WARNING Bodily injury hazard. This procedure requires specific repair skills, lifting equipment and a suitable workshop. Attempting this procedure without these skills and tools could result in death or serious injury and significant component damage. Dealer service is strongly recommended.

Note: When removing a hose assembly or fitting, the O-ring (if equipped) on the fitting and/or hose end must be replaced. All connections must be torqued to specification during installation. Refer to Specifications, *Hydraulic Hose and Fitting Torque Specifications.*

Note: Perform this procedure with the boom in the stowed position.

1 Remove the hose and cable clamps from the primary boom lift cylinder.

2 Remove the cable track retaining fasteners at the primary boom lift cylinder.

3 Place blocks under both ends of the primary boom lift cylinder. Place another block under the cylinder linkage arms under the primary boom lift cylinder barrel-end pivot pin.

4 Tag, disconnect and plug the primary boom lift cylinder hydraulic hoses. Cap the fittings on the cylinder.

⚠WARNING Bodily injury hazard. Spraying hydraulic oil can penetrate and burn skin. Loosen hydraulic connections very slowly to allow the oil pressure to dissipate gradually. Do not allow oil to squirt or spray.

5 Attach a lifting strap from an overhead crane to the rod end of the primary boom lift cylinder. Do not apply any lifting pressure.

6 Remove the pin retaining fasteners from the primary boom lift cylinder rod-end pivot pin. Use a soft metal drift to remove the pin and rest the cylinder on the block.

7 Attach a lifting strap from a second overhead crane to the barrel end of the primary boom lift cylinder. Do not apply any lifting pressure.

8 Remove the primary boom lift cylinder barrel-end pivot pin retaining fasteners.

9 Use a soft metal drift to remove the barrel-end pivot pin. Carefully remove the primary boom lift cylinder from the machine.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. The boom lift cylinder may become unbalanced and fall if it is not properly supported when it is removed from the machine.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. The primary boom lift cylinder linkage arms may fall if not properly supported when the barrel-end pivot pin is removed.

Boom Components

4-5
Secondary Boom Lift Cylinder

How to Remove the Secondary Boom Lift Cylinder

⚠WARNING Bodily injury hazard. This procedure requires specific repair skills, lifting equipment and a suitable workshop. Attempting this procedure without these skills and tools could result in death or serious injury and significant component damage. Dealer service is strongly recommended.

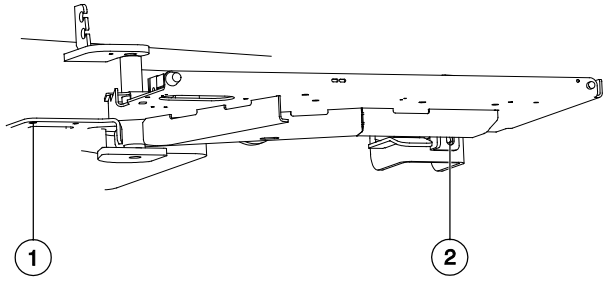
Note: When removing a hose assembly or fitting, the O-ring (if equipped) on the fitting and/or hose end must be replaced. All connections must be torqued to specification during installation. Refer to Specifications, *Hydraulic Hose and Fitting Torque Specifications.*

Note: Perform this procedure with the machine on a firm, level surface and in the stowed position with the axles extended.

1 Tag, disconnect and plug the hydraulic hoses from the secondary boom lift cylinder. The hoses can be accessed from under the turntable.

⚠WARNING Bodily injury hazard. Spraying hydraulic oil can penetrate and burn skin. Loosen hydraulic connections very slowly to allow the oil pressure to dissipate gradually. Do not allow oil to squirt or spray.

2 Remove the engine pivot plate retaining fastener. Swing the engine pivot plate out away from the machine.



1 engine pivot plate anchor hole
2 engine pivot plate retaining fastener

3 Locate the engine pivot plate anchor hole at the pivot end of the engine pivot plate.

4 Install the bolt that was just removed into the anchor hole to secure the engine pivot plate from moving.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. Failure to install the bolt into the engine pivot plate to secure it from moving could result in death or serious injury.

5 Remove the retaining fasteners from the fixed turntable cover at the ground controls side of the machine. Remove the fixed turntable cover from the machine.

6 Tag, disconnect and plug the fuel hoses from the fuel tank. Clean up any fuel that may have spilled.

7 Close the two hydraulic tank shut-off valves at the hydraulic tank.

NOTICE Component damage hazard. The engine must not be started with the hydraulic tank shut-off valves in the closed position or component damage will occur. If the tank valves are closed, remove the key from the key switch and tag the machine to inform personnel of the condition.

8 Remove the drain plug from the hydraulic tank and completely drain the tank into a container of suitable capacity. Refer to Specifications, *Fluid Capacity Specifications*.

9 Tag, disconnect and plug the two suction hoses from the hydraulic tank.

10 Tag, disconnect and plug the two supply hoses for the auxiliary power units. Cap the fittings on the hydraulic tank.

11 Tag, disconnect and plug the hydraulic hose from the drive motor case drain filter at the hydraulic tank. Cap the fitting on the hydraulic tank.

12 Tag, disconnect and plug the hydraulic hose at the return filter. Cap the fitting on the return filter housing.

13 Remove the turntable cover using a suitable lifting device.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. The turntable cover may become unbalanced and fall if not properly supported and secured to a suitable lifting device.

14 Remove the ground control box mounting fasteners. Move the ground control box out of the way.

15 Remove the hydraulic tank retaining fasteners.

16 Remove the cover from the auxiliary power unit batteries.

17 Tag and disconnect the cables from the auxiliary power unit batteries.

⚠WARNING Electrocution/burn hazard. Contact with electrically charged circuits could result in death or serious injury. Remove all rings, watches and other jewelry.

18 Tag and disconnect the cables from the engine starting/controls battery located on the engine side of the machine.

⚠WARNING Electrocution/burn hazard. Contact with electrically charged circuits could result in death or serious injury. Remove all rings, watches and other jewelry.

19 Attach an overhead crane or similar lifting device to the battery box for the auxiliary power unit batteries.

20 Remove the battery box retaining fasteners and carefully remove the battery box from the machine.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. The battery box could become unbalanced and fall when removed from the machine if not properly supported.

⚠WARNING Bodily injury hazard. Batteries contain acid. Avoid spilling or contacting battery acid. Neutralize battery acid spills with baking soda and water.

21 Support the hydraulic tank with 2 lifting straps. Place one lifting strap at each end of the tank and attach the lifting straps to an appropriate lifting device.

Boom Components

22 Remove the hydraulic tank from the machine.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. The hydraulic tank could become unbalanced and fall if not properly supported when removed from the machine.

23 Place a block under the secondary boom lift cylinder for support.

24 Remove the secondary boom lift cylinder rod-end pivot pin retaining fasteners. Use a soft metal drift to remove the pin through the access holes in the turntable bulkheads.

25 Attach an overhead crane with a minimum capacity of 7 tons / 7000 kg to the counterweight end of the secondary boom.

26 Raise the boom assembly with the overhead crane approximately 20 feet / 6 m.

⚠DANGER Crushing hazard. The boom assembly can fall if not properly supported by the overhead crane.

27 Remove the secondary boom lift cylinder barrel-end pivot pin retaining fasteners. Do not remove the pin.

28 Attach a lifting strap from a second overhead crane to each end of the secondary boom lift cylinder.

Note: Protect the hoses and cables underneath the cylinder from damage.

29 Use a slide hammer to remove the barrel-end pivot pin.

NOTICE Component damage hazard. Hoses and cables can become damaged if the barrel end of the secondary boom lift cylinder is allowed to fall when the barrel-end pivot pin is removed.

30 Carefully remove the secondary boom lift cylinder from the machine.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. The secondary boom lift cylinder could become unbalanced and fall when removed from the machine if not properly attached to the overhead crane.

NOTICE Component damage hazard. Hoses and cables can be damaged if the secondary boom lift cylinder is pulled across them.

4-6 Primary Boom Extension Cylinder

The primary boom extension cylinder extends and retracts the primary boom extension tube.The primary boom extension cylinder is equipped with counterbalance valves to prevent movement in the event of a hydraulic line failure.

How to Remove the Primary Boom Extension Cylinder

⚠WARNING Bodily injury hazard. This procedure requires specific repair skills, lifting equipment and a suitable workshop. Attempting this procedure without these skills and tools could result in death or serious injury and significant component damage. Dealer service is strongly recommended.

Note: When removing a hose assembly or fitting, the O-ring (if equipped) on the fitting and/or hose end must be replaced. All connections must be torqued to specification during installation. Refer to Specifications, *Hydraulic Hose and Fitting Torque Specifications.*

Note: Perform this procedure with the machine on a firm, level surface and in the stowed position with the axles extended.

1 Extend the primary boom until the primary boom extension cylinder rod-end pivot pin is accessible in the primary boom extension tube.

2 Remove the access cover from the pivot end of the primary boom.

3 Tag, disconnect and plug the primary boom extension cylinder hydraulic hoses. Cap the fittings on the cylinder.

⚠WARNING Bodily injury hazard. Spraying hydraulic oil can penetrate and burn skin. Loosen hydraulic connections very slowly to allow the oil pressure to dissipate gradually. Do not allow oil to squirt or spray.

4 At the platform end, remove the external snap rings from the extension cylinder rod-end pivot pin. Use a soft metal drift to remove the pin.

5 Remove the extension cylinder retainers from the saddle blocks.

6 Attach a lifting strap from an overhead crane to the barrel end of the primary boom extension cylinder.

7 Using the overhead crane, lift the extension cylinder to clear the saddle blocks.

8 Support and slide the primary boom extension cylinder out of the primary boom and place it on a structure capable of supporting it.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. The extension cylinder could become unbalanced and fall when removed from primary boom extension tube if not properly supported.

Note: During removal, the overhead crane strap will need to be adjusted for proper balancing.

Note: Note the length of the cylinder after removal. The cylinder must be at the same length for installation.

Boom Components

4-7 Secondary Boom Extension Cylinders

The secondary boom extension cylinders extend and retract the secondary boom. The secondary boom extension system consists of 3 hydraulic cylinders and each are equipped with counterbalance valves to prevent movement in the event of a hydraulic line failure.

How to Remove the Secondary Boom Extension Cylinders

⚠WARNING Bodily injury hazard. This procedure requires specific repair skills, lifting equipment and a suitable workshop. Attempting this procedure without these skills and tools could result in death or serious injury and significant component damage. Dealer service is strongly recommended.

Note: When removing a hose assembly or fitting, the O-ring (if equipped) on the fitting and/or hose end must be replaced. All connections must be torqued to specification during installation. Refer to Specifications, *Hydraulic Hose and Fitting Torque Specifications.*

Note: Perform this procedure with the machine on a firm, level surface and in the stowed position with the axles extended.

1 Raise the primary boom approximately 10 feet / 3 m. Turn the machine off.

2 Working at the platform end of the secondary boom, support and secure the secondary boom end cover to a suitable lifting device.

3 Remove the cover retaining fasteners and remove the cover from the secondary boom.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. The secondary boom end cover could become unbalanced and fall when removed from the secondary boom if not properly supported and secured to the lifting device.

4 Remove the retaining fasteners from both secondary boom extend limit switches and remove the limit switches. Do not disconnect the wiring.

Note: Label the location of each limit switch as they are not the same and their mounting locations cannot be exchanged.

5 Tag, disconnect and plug all hydraulic hoses for the 3 secondary boom extension cylinders. Cap the fittings on the cylinder.

⚠WARNING Bodily injury hazard. Spraying hydraulic oil can penetrate and burn skin. Loosen hydraulic connections very slowly to allow the oil pressure to dissipate gradually. Do not allow oil to squirt or spray.

6 Remove the upper extension cylinder retainers from the saddle blocks.

7 Attach a lifting strap from an overhead crane to the rod end of the upper extension cylinder.

8 Using the overhead crane, lift the extension cylinder to clear the saddle blocks.

9 Support and slide the upper extension cylinder out of the secondary boom and place it on a structure capable of supporting it.

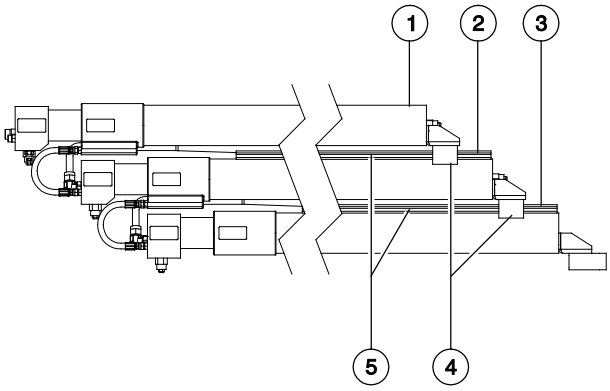
⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. The extension cylinder could fall when removed from the secondary boom if not properly supported.

Note: During removal, the overhead crane strap will need to be adjusted for proper balancing.

10 Repeat steps 6 through 9 for the remaining secondary boom extension cylinders.

Note: The secondary boom extension cylinders must be installed in the same order they were removed.

Note: When installing the middle and upper secondary boom extension cylinders, be sure the grooved wear pads are correctly aligned with the channels on the top of the cylinders.

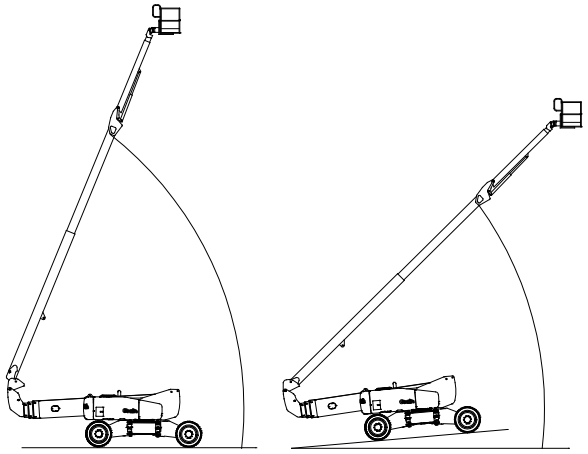


1 upper extension cylinder (#1)
2 middle extension cylinder (#2)
3 bottom extension cylinder (#3)
4 cylinder grooved wear pads
5 channels

4-8 Primary Boom Angle Sensor

The primary boom angle sensor is used to limit the angle of the primary boom relative to the angle of the secondary boom and gravity.

The primary boom maximum angle is gradually reduced as the downhill slope (positive degree Y axis) is increased. A flat level surface of 0° allows the primary boom maximum operational angle to reach 68°. On a 5° downhill slope the primary boom maximum operational angle is reduced to 43°.



0° slope, 68° boom angle 5° slope, 43° boom angle

Boom Components

How to Calibrate the Primary Boom Angle Sensor

Note: If the axle sensor or secondary boom angle sensor have been removed or replaced, or the turntable level sensor has been replaced, they must be calibrated first. Refer to Repair Procedures, *How to Calibrate the Axle Angle Sensors* or *How to Calibrate the Secondary Boom Angle Sensor* or *How to Calibrate the Turntable Level Sensor*.

⚠WARNING Tip-over hazard. Failure to properly calibrate the machine could cause the machine to tip over resulting in death or serious injury.

Note: For software versions 4.01 and higher, use the 2 Point Calibration procedure. For software versions before 4.01, use the 6 Point Calibration procedure. The software version is displayed on the LCD screen when the red Emergency Stop button is pulled out to the on position.

Note: Perform this procedure with the machine on a firm, level surface.

Note: A digital level will only be required to perform the 6 Point Calibration procedure.

Note: A kit is available through Genie Product Support (Genie part number 58351). This kit includes a digital level with a magnetic base and cable harnesses.

Note: Use the following chart to identify the description of each LCD screen control button used in this procedure.

Plus Minus Previous Enter

6 Point Calibration procedure

Note: Use this procedure for software versions before 4.01.

Note: For the 2 Point Calibration procedure, proceed to step 33.

1 Push in the ground controls red Emergency Stop button to the off position. Do not turn the key switch to the off position.

2 Turn the key switch to ground controls.

3 Open the ground control box.

4 Locate the calibration toggle switch at the top of the ground control box. Activate calibration mode by moving the toggle switch in the left direction.

5 Temporarily install a control box door retaining fastener between the door and the box to prevent the control box door from moving the toggle switch while calibrating the machine.

6 Remove the key from the main key switch. Insert the key into the bypass/recovery key switch and turn it to the bypass position.

Note: The angle sensor calibration values will not be saved correctly unless the key switch is in the bypass position and the calibration toggle switch is activated.

7 Press and hold the **enter** button on the ground control panel while pulling out the ground controls red Emergency Stop button to the on position. Hold the **enter** button for approximately 5 seconds and then release it.

8 Enter sensor calibration mode by pressing the buttons at the ground controls in the following sequence: **(plus)(enter)(enter)(plus)**.

9 Press the **enter** or **previous** button on the LCD screen until DELETE PRIMARY BOOM ANGLE SENSOR CALIBRATION is displayed.

10 Press the **plus** button to select YES, then press the **enter** button to accept.

11 Place a digital level that has been calibrated to gravity on top of the primary boom and note the angle displayed on the digital level.

12 At the PRIMARY BOOM ANGLE TO GRAVITY 0.0 DEG screen, press the **plus** button or **minus** button to adjust the display to the exact value shown on the digital level, then press the **enter** button.

Note: If the measured angle already matches the angle shown on the display at the ground controls, press the **plus** button or **minus** button to change the angle and then change back to the measured value. The system must detect a change in displayed value to record the calibrated value.

13 Start the engine from the ground controls.

Note: If the system exits out of calibration mode when the engine is started, repeat step 8 and then continue with step 14.

14 Fully raise the secondary boom. The boom is fully raised when the cylinder is fully extended and the boom stops moving.

15 Press and hold a function enable/speed select button and the primary boom down button and lower the primary boom down until the digital level displays -50 degrees.

16 At the ground controls, press the **plus** button or **minus** button to adjust the display to the exact value shown on the digital level and press the **enter** button.

Note: Be sure the number entered at the ground controls is a negative number.

Note: If the measured angle already matches the angle shown on the display at the ground controls, press the **plus** button or **minus** button to change the angle and then change back to the measured value. The system must detect a change in displayed value to record the calibrated value.

17 Press and hold a function enable/speed select button and the primary boom up button until the digital level displays -20 degrees.

18 At the ground controls, press the **plus** button or **minus** button to adjust the display to the exact value shown on the digital level and press the **enter** button.

Note: Be sure the number entered at the ground controls is a negative number.

Note: If the measured angle already matches the angle shown on the display at the ground controls, press the **plus** button or **minus** button to change the angle and then change back to the measured value. The system must detect a change in displayed value to record the calibrated value.

19 Press and hold a function enable/speed select button and the primary boom up button until the digital level displays 10 degrees.

Boom Components

20 At the ground controls, press the **plus** button or **minus** button to adjust the display to the exact value shown on the digital level and press the **enter** button.

Note: If the measured angle already matches the angle shown on the display at the ground controls, press the **plus** button or **minus** button to change the angle and then change back to the measured value. The system must detect a change in displayed value to record the calibrated value.

21 Press and hold a function enable/speed select button and the primary boom up button until the digital level displays 40 degrees.

22 At the ground controls, press the **plus** button or **minus** button to adjust the display to the exact value shown on the digital level and press the **enter** button.

Note: If the measured angle already matches the angle shown on the display at the ground controls, press the **plus** button or **minus** button to change the angle and then change back to the measured value. The system must detect a change in displayed value to record the calibrated value.

23 Press and hold a function enable/speed select button and the primary boom up button until the primary boom is fully raised. The boom is fully raised when the cylinder is fully extended and the boom stops moving. The angle will be 70 degrees.

24 At the ground controls, press the **plus** button or **minus** button to adjust the display to the exact value shown on the digital level and press the **enter** button.

Note: If the measured angle already matches the angle shown on the display at the ground controls, press the **plus** button or **minus** button to change the angle and then change back to the measured value. The system must detect a change in displayed value to record the calibrated value.

25 Press and hold the engine start button for approximately 5 seconds to shut off the engine and to save the calibration settings.

Note: Do not turn the engine off with the key switch or red Emergency Stop button or all calibration points or values will not be saved.

26 Press the **enter** or **previous** button on the LCD screen until EXIT is displayed.

27 Press the **plus** button to select YES, then press the **enter** button to accept.

28 Turn the key back to the run position and remove the key from the bypass/recovery key switch. Insert the key into the main key switch and turn it to ground controls.

Note: Be sure that the bypass/recovery key switch is in the run position before attempting to operate the machine.

29 Wait approximately 20 seconds and turn the machine off by pressing the red Emergency Stop button in.

30 Remove the fastener that was temporarily installed. Close the control box door and install the door retaining fasteners.

Note: When the control box door is closed, the calibration toggle switch is automatically activated to exit out of calibration mode.

31 Pull out the red Emergency Stop button. Start the engine and lower the boom to the stowed position. Be sure there are no calibration faults shown on the display.

32 Perform a primary boom angle test. Refer to Maintenance Procedure in the appropriate Service or Maintenance Manual, *Test the Primary Boom Angle Sensor*.

2 Point Calibration procedure

Note: Use this procedure for software versions 4.01 and higher.

33 Push in the ground controls red Emergency Stop button to the off position. Do not turn the key switch to the off position.

34 Turn the key switch to ground controls.

35 Open the ground control box.

36 Locate the calibration toggle switch at the top of the ground control box. Activate calibration mode by moving the toggle switch in the left direction.

37 Temporarily install a control box door retaining fastener between the door and the box to prevent the control box door from moving the toggle switch while calibrating the machine.

38 Remove the key from the main key switch. Insert the key into the bypass/recovery key switch and turn it to the bypass position.

39 Note: The angle sensor calibration values will not be saved correctly unless the key switch is in the bypass position and the calibration toggle switch is activated.

40 Press and hold the **enter** button on the ground control panel while pulling out the ground controls red Emergency Stop button to the on position. Hold the **enter** button for approximately 5 seconds and then release it.

41 Enter sensor calibration mode by pressing the buttons at the ground controls in the following sequence: **(plus)(enter)(enter)(plus)**.

42 Press the **enter** or **previous** button on the LCD screen until DELETE PRIMARY BOOM ANGLE SENSOR CALIBRATION is displayed.

43 Press the **plus** button to select YES, then press the **enter** button to accept.

44 Lower the primary boom to the stowed position.

45 Press the **enter** or **previous** button on the LCD SCREEN UNTIL PRIMARY BOOM FULLY LOWERED is displayed.

46 Press the **plus** button to select YES, then press the **enter** button to accept.

47 Fully raise the secondary boom until it stops at the end of the cylinder stroke.

48 Fully raise the primary boom until it stops at the end of the cylinder stroke.

49 Press the **enter** or **previous** button on the LCD screen until PRIMARY BOOM FULLY RAISED is displayed.

50 Press the **plus** button to select YES, then press the **enter** button to accept.

51 Press and hold the engine start button for approximately 5 seconds to shut off the engine and to save the calibration settings.

Note: Do not turn the engine off with the key switch or red Emergency Stop button or all calibration points or values will not be saved.

52 Press the **enter** or **previous** button on the LCD screen until EXIT is displayed.

53 Press the **plus** button to select YES, then press the **enter** button to accept.

Boom Components

54 Turn the key back to the run position and remove the key from the bypass/recovery key switch. Insert the key into the main key switch and turn it to ground controls.

Note: Be sure that the bypass/recovery key switch is in the run position before attempting to operate the machine.

55 Wait approximately 20 seconds and turn the machine off by pressing the red Emergency Stop button in.

56 Remove the fastener that was temporarily installed. Close the control box door and install the door retaining fasteners.

Note: When the control box door is closed, the calibration toggle switch is automatically activated to exit out of calibration mode.

57 Pull out the red Emergency Stop button. Start the engine and lower the boom to the stowed position. Be sure there are no calibration faults shown on the display.

58 Perform a primary boom angle test. Refer to Maintenance Procedure in the appropriate Service or Maintenance Manual, *Test the Primary Boom Angle Sensor*.

4-9
Secondary Boom Angle Sensor

The secondary boom angle sensor is used to limit the angle of the primary boom relative to the angle of the secondary boom and gravity.

How to Calibrate the Secondary Boom Angle Sensor

Note: If the axle sensor has been removed or replaced, or the turntable level sensor has been replaced, they must be calibrated first. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Calibrate the Axle Angle Senors* or *How to Calibrate the Turntable Level Sensor*.

⚠WARNING Tip-over hazard. Failure to properly calibrate the machine could cause the machine to tip over resulting in death or serious injury.

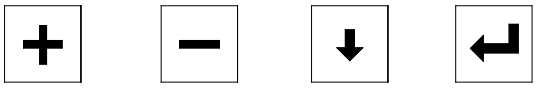
Note: For software versions 4.01 and higher, use the 2 Point Calibration procedure. For software versions before 4.01, use the 6 Point Calibration procedure. The software version is displayed on the LCD screen when the red Emergency Stop button is pulled out to the on position.

Note: Perform this procedure with the machine on a firm, level surface.

Note: A digital level will only be required to perform the 6 Point Calibration procedure.

Note: A kit is available through Genie Product Support (Genie part number 58351). This kit includes a digital level with a magnetic base and cable harnesses.

Note: Use the following chart to identify the description of each LCD screen control button used in this procedure.



Plus Minus Previous Enter

6 Point Calibration procedure

Note: Use this procedure for software versions before 4.01.

Note: For the 2 Point Calibration procedure, proceed to step 32.

1 Push in the ground controls red Emergency Stop button to the off position. Do not turn the key switch to the off position.

2 Turn the key switch to ground controls.

3 Open the ground control box.

4 Locate the calibration toggle switch at the top of the ground control box. Activate calibration mode by moving the toggle switch in the left direction.

5 Temporarily install a control box door retaining fastener between the door and the box to prevent the control box door from moving the toggle switch while calibrating the machine.

6 Remove the key from the main key switch. Insert the key into the bypass/recovery key switch and turn it to the bypass position.

Note: The angle sensor calibration values will not be saved correctly unless the key switch is in the bypass position and the calibration toggle switch is activated.

7 Press and hold the **enter** button on the ground control panel while pulling out the ground controls red Emergency Stop button to the on position. Hold the **enter** button for approximately 5 seconds and then release it.

8 Enter sensor calibration mode by pressing the buttons at the ground controls in the following sequence: **(plus)(enter)(enter)(plus)**.

9 Press the **enter** or **previous** button on the LCD screen until DELETE SECONDARY BOOM ANGLE SENSOR CALIBRATION is displayed.

10 Press the **plus** button to select YES, then press the **enter** button to accept.

11 Place a digital level that has been calibrated to the Y axis of the turntable on top of the secondary boom and note the angle displayed on the digital level.

12 At the SECONDARY BOOM ANGLE TO GRAVITY -3.5DEG screen, press the **plus** button or **minus** button to adjust the display to the exact value shown on the digital level and press the enter button.

Note: Be sure the number entered at the ground controls is a negative number.

Note: If the measured angle already matches the angle shown on the display at the ground controls, press the **plus** button or **minus** button to change the angle and then change back to the measured value. The system must detect a change in displayed value to record the calibrated value.

13 Start the engine from the ground controls.

Note: If the system exits out of calibration mode when the engine is started, repeat step 8 and then continue with step 14.

14 Press and hold a function enable/speed select button and the secondary boom up button until the digital level displays 20 degrees.

Boom Components

15 At the ground controls, press the **plus** button or **minus** button to adjust the display to the exact value shown on the digital level and press the **enter** button.

Note: If the measured angle already matches the angle shown on the display at the ground controls, press the **plus** button or **minus** button to change the angle and then change back to the measured value. The system must detect a change in displayed value to record the calibrated value.

16 Press and hold a function enable/speed select button and the secondary boom up button until the digital level displays 35 degrees.

17 At the ground controls, press the **plus** button or **minus** button to adjust the display to the exact value shown on the digital level and press the **enter** button.

Note: If the measured angle already matches the angle shown on the display at the ground controls, press the **plus** button or **minus** button to change the angle and then change back to the measured value. The system must detect a change in displayed value to record the calibrated value.

18 Press and hold a function enable/speed select button and the secondary boom up button until the digital level displays 50 degrees.

19 At the ground controls, press the **plus** button or **minus** button to adjust the display to the exact value shown on the digital level and press the **enter** button.

Note: If the measured angle already matches the angle shown on the display at the ground controls, press the **plus** button or **minus** button to change the angle and then change back to the measured value. The system must detect a change in displayed value to record the calibrated value.

20 Press and hold a function enable/speed select button and the secondary boom up button until the digital level displays 65 degrees.

21 At the ground controls, press the **plus** button or **minus** button to adjust the display to the exact value shown on the digital level and press the **enter** button.

Note: If the measured angle already matches the angle shown on the display at the ground controls, press the **plus** button or **minus** button to change the angle and then change back to the measured value. The system must detect a change in displayed value to record the calibrated value.

22 Press and hold a function enable/speed select button and the secondary boom up button. Fully raise the secondary boom. The boom is fully raised when the cylinder is fully extended and the boom stops moving.The angle will be 76 degrees.

23 At the ground controls, press the **plus** button or **minus** button to adjust the display to the exact value shown on the digital level and press the **enter** button.

Note: If the measured angle already matches the angle shown on the display at the ground controls, press the **plus** button or **minus** button to change the angle and then change back to the measured value. The system must detect a change in displayed value to record the calibrated value.

24 Press and hold the engine start button for approximately 5 seconds to shut off the engine and to save the calibration settings.

Note: Do not turn the engine off with the key switch or red Emergency Stop button or all calibration points or values will not be saved.

25 Press the **enter** or **previous** button on the LCD screen until EXIT is displayed.

26 Press the **plus** button to select YES, then press the **enter** button to accept.

27 Turn the key back to the run position and remove the key from the bypass/recovery key switch. Insert the key into the main key switch and turn it to ground controls.

Note: Be sure that the bypass/recovery key switch is in the run position before attempting to operate the machine.

28 Wait approximately 20 seconds and turn the machine off by pressing the red Emergency Stop button in.

29 Remove the fastener that was temporarily installed. Close the control box door and install the door retaining fasteners.

Note: When the control box door is closed, the calibration toggle switch is automatically activated to exit out of calibration mode.

30 Pull out the red Emergency Stop button. Start the engine and lower the boom to the stowed position. Be sure there are no calibration faults shown on the display.

31 Perform secondary boom angle test. Refer to Maintenance Procedure in the appropriate Service or Maintenance Manual, *Test the Secondary Boom Angle Sensor*.

2 Point Calibration procedure

Note: Use this procedure for software versions 4.01 and higher.

32 Push in the ground controls red Emergency Stop button to the off position. Do not turn the key switch to the off position.

33 Turn the key switch to ground controls.

34 Open the ground control box.

35 Locate the calibration toggle switch at the top of the ground control box. Activate calibration mode by moving the toggle switch in the left direction.

36 Temporarily install a control box door retaining fastener between the door and the box to prevent the control box door from moving the toggle switch while calibrating the machine.

37 Remove the key from the main key switch. Insert the key into the bypass/recovery key switch and turn it to the bypass position.

Note: The angle sensor calibration values will not be saved correctly unless the key switch is in the bypass position and the calibration toggle switch is activated.

38 Press and hold the **enter** button on the ground control panel while pulling out the ground controls red Emergency Stop button to the on position. Hold the **enter** button for approximately 5 seconds and then release it.Enter sensor calibration mode by pressing the buttons at the ground controls in the following sequence: **(plus)(enter)(enter)(plus)**.

39 Press the **enter** or **previous** button on the LCD screen until DELETE SECONDARY BOOM ANGLE SENSOR CALIBRATION is displayed.

40 Lower the secondary boom to the stowed position.

41 Press the **enter** or **previous** button on the LCD SCREEN UNTIL SECONDARY BOOM FULLY LOWERED is displayed.

42 Press the **plus** button to select YES, then press the **enter** button to accept.

43 Fully raise the secondary boom until it stops at the end of the cylinder stroke.

Boom Components

44 Press the **enter** or **previous** button on the LCD SCREEN UNTIL SECONDARY BOOM FULLY RAISED is displayed.

45 Press the **plus** button to select YES, then press the **enter** button to accept.

46 Press and hold the engine start button for approximately 5 seconds to shut off the engine and to save the calibration settings.

Note: Do not turn the engine off with the key switch or red Emergency Stop button or all calibration points or values will not be saved.

47 Press the **enter** or **previous** button on the LCD screen until EXIT is displayed.

48 Press the **plus** button to select YES, then press the **enter** button to accept.

49 Turn the key back to the run position and remove the key from the bypass/recovery key switch. Insert the key into the main key switch and turn it to ground controls.

Note: Be sure that the bypass/recovery key switch is in the run position before attempting to operate the machine.

50 Wait approximately 20 seconds and turn the machine off by pressing the red Emergency Stop button in.

51 Remove the fastener that was temporarily installed. Close the control box door and install the door retaining fasteners.

Note: When the control box door is closed, the calibration toggle switch is automatically activated to exit out of calibration mode.

52 Pull out the red Emergency Stop button. Start the engine and lower the boom to the stowed position. Be sure there are no calibration faults shown on the display.

53 Perform secondary boom angle test. Refer to Maintenance Procedure in the appropriate Service or Maintenance Manual, *Test the Secondary Boom Angle Sensor*.

5-1
RPM Adjustment

Refer to Maintenance Procedure in the appropriate Service or Maintenance Manual for your machine, *Check and Adjust the Engine RPM*.

5-2
Flex Plate

The flex plate acts as a coupler between the engine and the pump. It is bolted to the engine flywheel and has a splined center to drive the pump.

How to Remove the Flex Plate

1 Disconnect the wiring plug at the electronic displacement controller (EDC), located on the drive pump.

2 Support the drive pump with an appropriate lifting device. Then remove all of the pump mounting plate to engine bell housing bolts.

3 Carefully pull the pump away from the engine and secure it from moving.

4 Remove the flex plate mounting fasteners, then remove the flex plate from the engine flywheel.

Engines

How to Install a Flex Plate

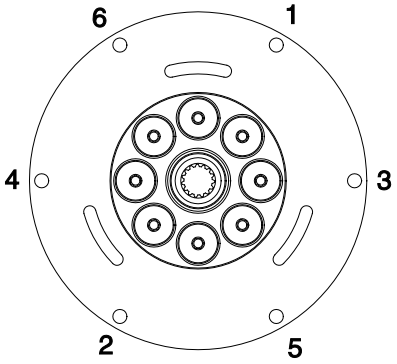
1 Install the flex plate onto the engine flywheel with the rubber vibration isolators towards the pump.

2 Use blue thread locking compound and torque the flex plate mounting bolts in sequence to 28 ft-lbs / 38 Nm. Then torque the flex plate mounting bolts in sequence to 40 ft-lbs / 54 Nm.

3 Apply a high viscosity coupling grease (Genie part number 128025) to the splines of the pump shaft and flex plate.

4 Install the pump plate and pump assembly onto the engine.

Grease Specification
Shell Alvania® Grease CG, NLGI 0/1 or equivalent.



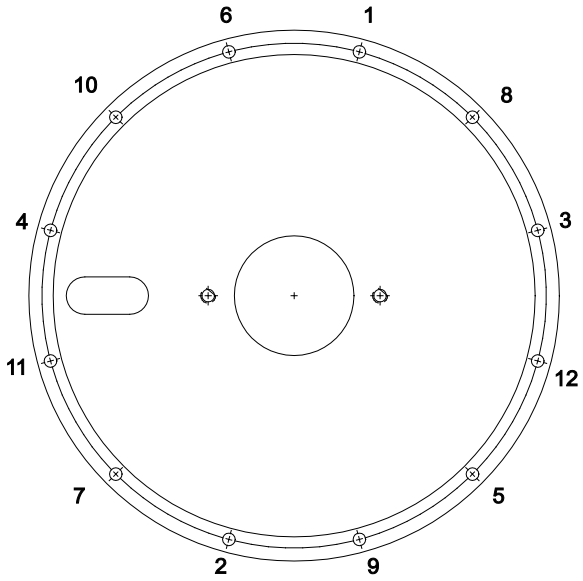
Deutz and Perkins models

How to Install the Pump Plate

1 Using a suitable lifting device, install the pump plate and pump assembly onto the engine.

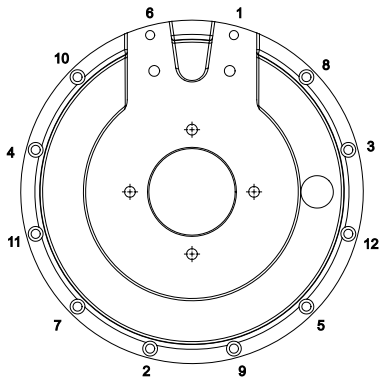
2 **Deutz engines**: Torque the pump plate mounting bolts in sequence to 23 ft-lbs / 31 Nm. Then torque the pump plate mounting bolts in sequence to 47 ft-lbs / 63 Nm.

3 **Perkins engines**: Torque the pump plate mounting bolts in sequence to 23 ft-lbs / 31 Nm. Then torque the pump plate mounting bolts in sequence to 47 ft-lbs / 63 Nm.



Perkins 1104D pump plate

Perkins 854F pump plate



Deutz TD2011L04i pump plate

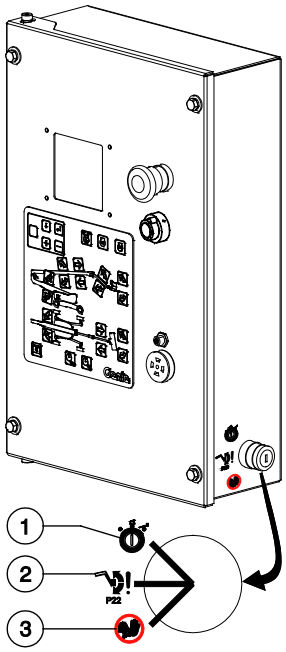
Deutz TD2.9 pump plate

6-1
Bypass/Recovery Key Switch

The turntable control box (TCON) is the communication and operations center for the machine. The turntable control box contains two key switches. The main key switch towards the top of the control box is for selection of ground or platform controls. The key switch at the bottom of the control box is the Bypass/Recovery key switch. Bypass and Recovery modes are only intended for certain circumstances and are not part of normal machine operation. If either the Bypass or the Recovery function is required, this indicates there may be faults with the machine. Contact trained personnel immediately.

Bypass is used for a platform out-of-level condition and calibrating certain machine parameters.

Recovery is only to be used as a last attempt to lower the platform when the operator in the platform is unable to do so, system failure or in emergency situations.



1 Run
2 Bypass
3 Recovery

Ground Controls

How to Use the Bypass Mode

⚠ DANGER Tip-over hazard. Operating the machine outside of the operating envelope while in Bypass mode will result in death or serious injury if proper operating procedures and safety precautions are not followed. Do not use this mode if you are not trained and familiar with the operating envelope of the machine.

Note: Before using the Bypass mode, make sure you understand the fault code or issue affecting the operation of the machine to be sure the use of bypass is required.

The Bypass mode will allow the platform to be manually leveled when an out-of-level condition exists. In the event that the platform angle is greater than 10° from level, the boom angle and platform level functions are disabled. Use of the Bypass mode will allow the platform to be manually adjusted to within the normal operating envelope, ±4.5°. Only auxiliary power can be used to correct an out of level platform fault.

1 Turn the engine off.

2 Turn the main key switch to ground controls. Remove the key from the main key switch and insert the key into the bypass/recovery key switch.

Note: The main key switch must remain in the ground control position.

3 Turn the bypass/recovery key switch to the bypass position.

4 Using auxiliary power, operate the ground control buttons to level the platform.

Note: Only the auxiliary power unit can be used to correct an out of level platform fault.

5 Turn the bypass/recovery key switch to the run position.

6 Remove the key from the bypass/recovery key switch and insert the key into the main key switch.

Note: If the Bypass function has been used, there may be faults with the machine. Check the LCD screen on the ground control box for machine faults, then contact trained service personnel.

How to Use the Recovery Mode

Recovery is only to be used as a last attempt to lower the platform when the operator in the platform is unable to do so, system failure or in emergency situations.

⚠WARNING Bodily injury hazard. When using recovery mode, the platform may not fully lower to the ground when the recovery mode is completed. Failure to use only suitable equipment and/or practices to allow the operator to safely exit the platform could result in death or serious injury.

⚠WARNING Bodily injury hazard. Platform leveling is not active when using recovery mode. The platform could reach high out-of-level conditions when using this mode. The operator will need to secure themself to the platform to prevent falling injury.

The Recovery mode allows the platform to be lowered in the event the operator in the platform is unable to lower the platform using the platform controls, system failure or emergency situations. The recovery sequence will automatically retract the primary boom, retract the secondary boom and then lower the primary boom using the auxiliary power unit to allow the operator at the platform controls to exit the platform.

1 Turn the main key switch to ground controls. Remove the key from the main key switch and insert the key into the bypass/recovery key switch.

Note: If this procedure is performed with the main key switch in the off position an active latched safety fault will be set and will have to be cleared.

2 Turn and hold the bypass/recovery key switch to the recovery position. The switch must be held in the recovery position.

⊙ Result: The auxiliary power unit will turn on and the boom will begin the following recovery sequence.

- The primary boom will retract.
- The secondary boom will retract.
- The primary boom will lower.

Note: The key switch must be held in the recovery position until the recovery sequence is complete or until the operator in the platform can safely exit the platform.

Note: If any boom safety limit switches are faulty, the boom will only retract and not lower and the operator will need to be recovered from that point.

Note: If the event the platform becomes out of level ± 15°, all functions using auxiliary power will be disabled, PLATFORM LEVEL > 15 DEGREES will be displayed on the ground control LCD screen, and the operator will have to be recovered using the Recovery Mode.

Note: If the Recovery function has been used, this may indicate there may be faults with the machine. Tag and remove the machine from service until the fault has been corrected by trained personnel.

Ground Controls

6-2 Circuit Boards

The ground control box contains a replaceable membrane decal with touch sensitive buttons for various machine functions. The ground control box also contains two printed circuit boards:

The LCD (Liquid Crystal Display) circuit board is mounted to the inside of the control box lid which controls the LCD display screen.

The ECM circuit board is the main circuit board for the machine. All operating parameters and configuration of options for the machine are stored in the ECM memory.

Note: When the ECM circuit board is replaced, the machine will need to be fully calibrated. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Fully Calibrate the Machine*.

How to Remove the LCD Display Screen Circuit Board

1 Push in the red Emergency Stop button to the off position at both the ground and platform controls.

2 Remove the ground control box lid fasteners.

3 Open the ground control box.

⚠WARNING Electrocution/burn hazard. Contact with electrically charged circuits could result in death or serious injury. Remove all rings, watches and other jewelry.

NOTICE Component damage hazard. Electrostatic discharge (ESD) can damage printed circuit board components. Maintain firm contact with a metal part of the machine that is grounded at all times when handling printed circuit boards OR use a grounded wrist strap.

4 Carefully disconnect the LCD circuit board ribbon cable from the ECM circuit board.

5 Remove the LCD display circuit board retaining fasteners.

6 Carefully remove the LCD display circuit board from the ground control box lid.

How to Remove the ALC-1000 Circuit Board

Note: If the ALC-1000 circuit board (TCON) has been replaced, the entire machine must be calibrated in a specific order. Refer to Repair Procedure, *Full Machine Calibration*.

1 Push in the red Emergency Stop button to the off position at both the ground and platform controls.

2 Remove the ground control box lid fasteners.

3 Open the ground control box.

4 Tag and disconnect the harnesses from the ground control box.

5 Remove the control cable receptacle retaining fasteners from the side of the control box.

6 Attach a grounded wrist strap to the ground screw inside the control box.

⚠WARNING Electrocution/burn hazard. Contact with electrically charged circuits could result in death or serious injury. Remove all rings, watches and other jewelry.

NOTICE Component damage hazard. Electrostatic discharge (ESD) can damage printed circuit board components. Maintain firm contact with a metal part of the machine that is grounded at all times when handling printed circuit boards OR use a grounded wrist strap.

7 Tag and carefully disconnect the wire connectors from the circuit board.

8 Carefully disconnect the LCD circuit board ribbon cable from the ECM circuit board.

9 Carefully disconnect the two ribbon cables from the membrane decal at the ECM circuit board.

10 Remove the circuit board mounting fasteners.

11 Carefully remove the circuit board from the control box.

Ground Controls

6-3
Membrane Decal

The membrane decal is a special decal that consists of a decal with an electronic membrane on the backside. The membrane contains touch sensitive areas that, when pushed, activate the machine functions. The membrane contains touch sensitive areas that activate the machine functions.

How to Replace the Membrane Decal

1 Turn the key switch to the off position and push in the red Emergency Stop button to the off position at both the ground and platform controls.

2 Remove the ground control box lid fasteners.

3 Open the ground control box.

4 Carefully disconnect the two ribbon cables from the membrane decal at the ECM circuit board.

⚠WARNING Electrocution/burn hazard. Contact with electrically charged circuits could result in death or serious injury. Remove all rings, watches and other jewelry.

NOTICE Component damage hazard. Electrostatic discharge (ESD) can damage printed circuit board components. Maintain firm contact with a metal part of the machine that is grounded at all times when handling printed circuit boards OR use a grounded wrist strap.

5 Carefully remove the membrane decal from the control box lid while guiding the ribbon cables out of the control box lid.

6 Remove any decal adhesive from the control box lid with a mild solvent.

Note: Do not allow any solvent to come in contact with the LCD display screen.

7 Install the new membrane decal while guiding the ribbon cables through the control box lid.

8 Connect the ribbon cables to the ECM circuit board.

9 Close the control box lid and install the retaining fasteners.

6-4
Full Machine Calibration

Full machine calibration must be completed in the proper sequence when the ALC-1000 circuit board (TCON) in the ground control box has been replaced or the turntable level sensor (SCON) has been replaced.

How to Fully Calibrate the Machine

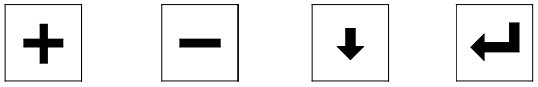
Calibration procedures shall only be completed by qualified technicians that have Genie factory service training.

⚠WARNING Tip-over hazard. Failure to calibrate the machine in the proper sequence could cause the machine to tip over resulting in death or serious injury.

Note: A digital level will be required to perform this procedure.

Note: A kit is available through Genie Product Support (Genie part number 58351). This kit includes a digital level with a magnetic base and cable harnesses.

Note: Use the following chart to identify the description of each LCD screen control button used in this procedure.



Plus Minus Previous Enter

Note: Start this procedure with the booms in the fully stowed position and the axle retracted.

Full machine calibration must be completed in the following sequence:

- Select engine configuration. Refer to Repair Section, Display Module. *Unit of Measure and Language*.
- Joysticks. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Calibrate a Joystick*.
- Turntable level sensor. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Calibrate the Turntable Level Sensor*.
- Platform level sensor. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Calibrate the Platform Level Sensor*.
- Axle angle sensors. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Calibrate the Axle Angle Sensors*.
- Steer sensors. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Calibrate All Steer Sensors*.
- Secondary boom angle sensor. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Calibrate the Secondary Boom Angle Sensor*.
- Primary boom angle sensor. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Calibrate the Primary Boom Angle Sensor*.
- Jib boom bellcrank angle sensor. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Calibrate the Jib Boom Bellcrank Sensor*.
- Select option configuration. Refer to Repair Section, Display Module. *Options*.

Display Module

This table lists the various screens and menu options of the operating software. Some display menus are for informational purpose only, while others can be used to change the machine operating parameters.

⚠WARNING Tip-over hazard. Calibration and parameter settings must be completed by a person trained and qualified on the repair of this machine. Failure to properly calibrate or set parameters could cause the machine to tip over resulting in death or serious injury.

Note:The key switch must be in the off position before entering the programming mode.

Note: Use the following chart to identify the description of each LCD screen control button used in this procedure.

Plus

Minus

Previous

Enter

Activation of the **enter** or **previous** buttons scrolls through the screens. To change parameter values or select a setting, use the **plus** button (to increase or scroll forward) and the **minus** button (to decrease or scroll backwards). Then press the **enter** button to save the new value to memory. An audible beep will indicate a save to memory. Use the **enter** and **previous** buttons to scroll to the EXIT menu. Use the **plus** button to change to YES and use the **enter** button to exit.

Screen or Menu	Procedure	Description	Range or Selection
Operator	Default	Hourmeter (on power up)	
		Engine speed	
		Engine oil pressure PSI (English)	
		Engine oil pressure kPa (metric)	
		Engine temperature °F (Engiish)	engine temp will not display until temp is >100°F
		Engine temperature °C (metric)	engine temp will not display until temp is >38°C
		Primary boom angle to gravity	
		Turntable level sensor X° direction	
		Turntable level sensor Y° direction	
		Platform level sensor degree	
		Battery volts	

Display Module

Screen or Menu	Procedure	Description	Range or Selection
Machine Status	With key switch on, press the **(plus)(minus)** buttons at the same time.	Hydraulic pressure PSI (English)	0-4500 PSI
		Hydraulic pressure kPa (metric)	0-31000 kPa
		Primary boom to secondary boom angle	+22° to +136°
		Primary boom length	=0', >0', >22
		Secondary boom angle*	-3.5° to 76°
		Secondary boom length	=0FT, >0 FT
		Jib bellcrank angle	-10° to +10° *(referenced to chassis tilt angle)
		DPF Regeneration Mode (Auto / Force / Inhibit)	
Unit of Measure and Language	With key switch OFF, press and hold the **enter** button and turn key switch to on position. Release the **enter** button and press **(plus)(minus)(minus)(plus)**.	Metric/English (measurement units)	English, German, French, Spanish, Portuguese, Italian, Dutch, and Swedish.
		Set engine	Deutz TD2011L04i (DL04i) Perkins 1104D-44T (P1104)
	Overload Recovery (software V3.07 and later)	Clear Overload Recovery	YES/NO A passcode is required to clear the message
Default Reset	With key switch OFF, press and hold the **enter** button and turn key switch to on position. Release the **enter** button and press **(minus)(minus)(previous)(previous)**	Delete drive functions	
		Delete boom function speed	
		Delete lift function ramps	
		Delete all (Contact Genie Product Support before using this option)	
		Delete Faults	Delete faults will reset active latching faults. Delete faults will not clear fault history.

Display Module

Screen or Menu	Procedure	Description	Range or Selection
Drive Functions	With key switch OFF, press and hold the **enter** button and turn key switch to on position. Release the **enter** button and press **(plus)(plus)(enter)(enter)**.	Forward extended drive speed %	120% (max) 100% (default) 50% (min)
		Forward not stowed drive speed %	120% (max) 100% (default) 50% (min)
		Forward low drive speed %	120% (max) 100% (default) 50% (min)
		Forward high drive speed %	120% (max) 100% (default) 50% (min)
		Reverse extended drive speed %	120% (max) 100% (default) 50% (min)
		Reverse not stowed drive speed %	120% (max) 100% (default) 50% (min)
		Reverse low drive speed %	120% (max) 100% (default) 50% (min)
		Reverse high drive speed %	120% (max) 100% (default) 50% (min)
		Drive acceleration %	125% (max) 100% (default) 25% (min)
		Drive deceleration %	125% (max) 100% (default) 25% (min)
		Speed limit on steer angle	100% (max) 50% (default) 0%

Display Module

Screen or Menu	Procedure	Description	Range or Selection
Boom Function Speeds	With key switch OFF, press and hold the **enter** button and turn key switch to on position. Release the **enter** button and press **(plus)(plus)(minus)(minus)**	Primary boom up speed stowed Primary boom up speed not stowed Primary boom down speed stowed Primary boom down speed not stowed Primary boom extend speed Primary boom retract speed Secondary boom up speed stowed Secondary boom up speed not stowed Secondary boom down speed stowed Secondary boom down speed not stowed Secondary boom extend speed Secondary boom retract speed Turntable rotate speed retracted Turntable rotate speed not retracted Turntable rotate speed extended Jib up speed retracted Jib up speed not retracted Jib down speed retracted Jib down speed not retracted	120% max, 50% min, 100% (default)

Display Module

Screen or Menu	Procedure	Description	Range or Selection
Lift Functions Ramps	With key switch OFF, press and hold the **enter** button and turn key switch to on position. Release the **enter** button and press **(plus)(plus)(previous)(previous)**.	Primary boom up/down ramp acceleration % Primary boom up/down ramp deceleration % Primary boom extend/retract ramp acceleration % Primary boom extend/retract ramp deceleration % Secondary boom up/down ramp acceleration % Secondary boom up/down ramp deceleration % Secondary boom extend/retract ramp acceleration % Secondary boom extend/retract ramp deceleration % Turntable rotate ramp acceleration % Turntable rotate ramp deceleration %	150% max and 50% min 100% (default), 5% increment
		Jib boom up/down ramp acceleration % Jib boom up/down ramp deceleration %	120% max and 50% min, 100% (default), 5% incr

Display Module

Screen or Menu	Procedure	Description	Range or Selection
Valve Calibration	With key switch OFF, press and hold the **enter** button and turn key switch to on position. Release the **enter** button and press **(minus)(minus)(enter)(enter)**.	Delete drive valve calibration Delete primary boom up/down valve calibration Delete primary boom extend/retract valve calibration Delete secondary boom up/down and extend/retract valve calibration Delete turntable rotate valve calibration Allow primary boom up/down speed calibration Allow primary boom extend/retract speed calibration Allow secondary boom up/down speed calibration Allow turntable rotate speed calibration Delete drive joystick calibration Delete primary boom up/down joystick calibration Delete primary boom extend/retract joystick calibration Delete secondary boom joystick calibration Delete turntable rotate joystick calibration Delete steer joystick calibration Delete jib up/down joystick calibration	YES/NO

Display Module

Screen or Menu	Procedure	Description	Range or Selection
Sensor Calibration (before software version 4.01)	With key switch OFF, press and hold the **enter** button and turn key switch to on position. Release the **enter** button and press **(plus)(enter)(enter)(plus)**.	Set unit X-axis to gravity Set unit Y-axis to gravity Set platform level to gravity (YES/NO) Platform level sensor millivolts/degree Delete axles angle sensors calibration? (YES/NO) YES: Axle angle fully retracted (YES/NO) YES: Axle angle fully extended (YES/NO) Delete all steer sensors calibrations? (YES/NO) Delete blue end blue side steer sensor (FL) calibration? (YES/NO) Delete yellow end blue side steer sensor (RL) calibration? (YES/NO) Delete blue end yellow side steer sensor (FR) calibration? (YES/NO) Delete yellow end yellow side steer sensor (RR) calibration? (YES/NO) Delete secondary boom angle sensor calibration? (YES/NO) secondary boom angle to gravity -3.5° secondary boom angle to gravity 20° secondary boom angle to gravity 35° secondary boom angle to gravity 50° secondary boom angle to gravity 65° secondary boom angle to gravity 76° Delete primary boom angle sensor calibration? (YES/NO) primary boom angle to gravity 0° primary boom angle to gravity -50° primary boom angle to gravity -20° primary boom angle to gravity 10° primary boom angle to gravity 40° primary boom angle to gravity 70° Delete level angle sensor calibration? (YES/NO) jib level calibration deg to gravity 60° jib level calibration deg to gravity 34° jib level calibration deg to gravity 8° jib level calibration deg to gravity -18° jib level calibration deg to gravity -44° jib level calibration deg to gravity -70°	Use +/- buttons to adjust
Screen or Menu	**Procedure**	**Description**	**Range or Selection**

Sensor Calibration (software version 4.01 and higher)	With key switch OFF, press and hold the **enter** button and turn key switch to on position. Release the **enter** button and press **(plus)(enter)(enter)(plus)**.	Set unit X-axis to gravity Set unit Y-axis to gravity Set platform level to gravity (YES/NO) Platform level sensor millivolts/degree Delete axles angle sensors calibration? (YES/NO) YES: Axle angle fully retracted (YES/NO) YES: Axle angle fully extended (YES/NO) Delete all steer sensors calibrations? (YES/NO) Delete blue end blue side steer sensor (FL) calibration? (YES/NO) Delete yellow end blue side steer sensor (RL) calibration? (YES/NO) Delete blue end yellow side steer sensor (FR) calibration? (YES/NO) Delete yellow end yellow side steer sensor (RR) calibration? (YES/NO) Delete secondary boom angle sensor calibration? (YES/NO) Secondary boom fully lowered? (YES/NO) Secondary boom fully raised? (YES/NO) Delete primary boom angle sensor calibration? (YES/NO) Primary boom fully lowered? (YES/NO)° Primary boom fully raised? (YES/NO)° Delete jib level angle sensor calibration? (YES/NO) Jib level cylinder fully extended? (YES/NO) Jib level cylinder fully retracted? (YES/NO)	Use +/- buttons to adjust

Display Module

Screen or Menu	Procedure	Description	Range or Selection
Options	With key switch OFF, press and hold the **enter** button and turn key switch to on position. Release the **enter** button and press **(minus)(minus)(plus)(plus)**.	Boom Function Limit (NO LT/EXT LT)	No LT= No limit; EXT LT= secondary boom extend inhibited
		AC Generator (NONE/BELT/HILO/HYDRL/GHG 10)	
		Alarm No (NO AL)/Motion (MO AL)	
		Travel (TR AL)/ Descent (DE AL)/ Travel and Descent (TD AL)	
		Lift/Drive No (NO CO)/ Drive cut out while not stored (DCONS)/ Lifting or driving (LORDR)	
		Proximity Kill Switch (NONE/PROX)	
		Platform Overload (NONE/WARN/CUTPT/CUTAL/PLFTS)	
		Work Li ghts (YES/NO)	
		Flashing Beacon (NO/YES)	
		Drive Lights (NO/YES)	
		Disable Steer Mode Change while Driving (NO/YES)	
		Rocker Switch (NO/YES)	
		Chassis Tilt Cutout (NONE), Chassis Tilt Cutout (COALL) Drive Tilt Cutout (CODRV)	Cutout All Cutout Drive
		Foot Switch Lockout (0-30 minutes)	30.0 max and 0.0 min, 10.0 (default)
		Platform Always Level to Gravity (NO/YES)	
		Axle Motion Only While Driving (NO/YES)	
			Holding +/- button will cause display to scroll through options or increment number settings automatically at 0.2 min increase/decrease

7-1 Function Pump

The function pump is a pressure compensated, variable displacement piston pump. Any internal service to the pump should be performed at an authorized Sauer-Danfoss service center. Contact Genie Product Support to locate your local authorized service center.

How to Remove the Function Pump

Note: When removing a hose assembly or fitting, the O-ring (if equipped) on the fitting and/or hose end must be replaced. All connections must be torqued to specification during installation. Refer to Specifications, *Hydraulic Hose and Fitting Torque Specifications.*

1 Locate the two hydraulic tank valves at the hydraulic tank. Close the valves.

NOTICE Component damage hazard. The engine must not be started with the hydraulic tank shut-off valves in the closed position or component damage will occur. If the tank valves are closed, remove the key from the key switch and tag the machine to inform personnel of the condition.

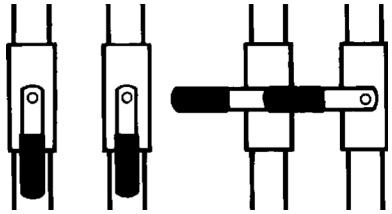
2 Tag, disconnect and plug the function pump hydraulic hoses. Cap the fittings on the pump.

⚠WARNING Bodily injury hazard. Spraying hydraulic oil can penetrate and burn skin. Loosen hydraulic connections very slowly to allow the oil pressure to dissipate gradually. Do not allow oil to squirt or spray.

3 Support the pump with a suitable lifting device.

4 Remove the two pump mounting fasteners. Carefully remove the pump.

NOTICE Component damage hazard. Be sure to open the two hydraulic tank valves and prime the pump after installing the pump.



open closed

Hydraulic Pumps

How to Prime the Function Pump

Note: When removing a hose assembly or fitting, the O-ring (if equipped) on the fitting and/or hose end must be replaced. All connections must be torqued to specification during installation. Refer to Specifications, *Hydraulic Hose and Fitting Torque Specifications.*

1 Remove the case drain hydraulic hose from the top of the function pump.

Note: The case drain hose is the smaller of the two hoses on top of the function pump and closest to the drive pump.

2 Locate and open the hydraulic tank shut-off valve at the hydraulic tank that supplies hydraulic oil to the function pump. Do not open the valve for the drive pump.

3 When hydraulic fluid begins to come out of the case drain port of the function pump, install the function pump case drain hose.

4 Clean up any oil that may have spilled. Properly discard the used oil.

5 Start the engine from the ground controls.

6 Check for hydraulic leaks.

How to Adjust the Function Pump Standby Pressure

1 Connect a 0 to 5000 psi / 0 to 350 bar pressure gauge to the test port on the function manifold

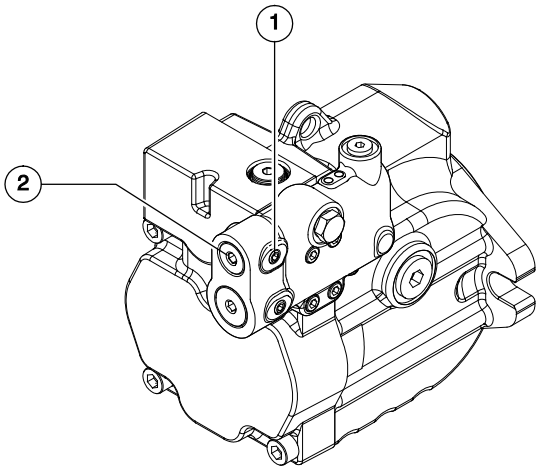
2 Start the engine from the ground controls and allow the engine to run at low idle.

3 Observe the pressure reading on the pressure gauge.

⊙ Result: The gauge should show 250 psi / 17 bar.

⊠ Result: If the gauge does not show 250 psi / 17 bar, proceed with step 4 to adjust the function pump standby pressure.

4 Loosen the set screw for the standby pressure adjustment screw.



1 standby pressure set screw
2 standby pressure adjustment screw

5 Adjust the function pump standby pressure. Turn the adjustment screw clockwise to increase the pressure or counterclockwise to decrease the pressure. Tighten the set screw.

6 Turn the engine off and remove the pressure gauge.

How to Adjust the Function Pump Pressure Compensator

Note: Two people will be required to perform this procedure.

1 Confirm the system relief pressure is set to specification. Refer to Repair Procedure, *Valve Adjustments - Function Manifold*.

2 Connect a 0 to 5000 psi / 0 to 350 bar pressure gauge to the test port on the function manifold

3 Start the engine from the ground controls and change the rpm to high idle.

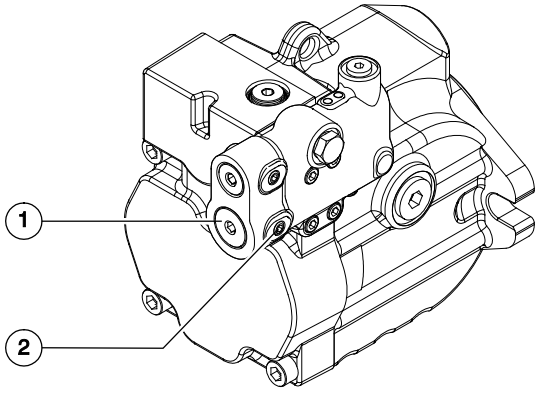
4 Push and hold the high speed function enable button (rabbit symbol). Do not activate any boom functions.

5 Observe the pressure reading on the pressure gauge.

⊙ Result: The gauge should show 2900 psi / 200 bar.

⊠ Result: If the gauge does not show 2900 psi / 200 bar, proceed to step 6 to adjust the function pump pressure compensator.

6 Loosen the set screw for the pressure compensator adjustment screw.



1 pressure compensator set screw
2 pressure compensator adjustment screw

7 Adjust the pressure compensator pressure. Turn the adjustment screw clockwise to increase the pressure or counterclockwise to decrease the pressure. Tighten the set screw.

NOTICE Component damage hazard. Do not adjust the pressure compensator higher than specified.

8 Turn the engine off and remove the pressure gauge.

Hydraulic Pumps

7-2 Drive Pump

The drive pump is a bi-directional variable displacement piston pump. The pump output is controlled by the electronic displacement controller (EDC), located on the pump. The only adjustment that can be made to the pump is the neutral or null adjustment. Any internal service to the pump should be performed at an authorized Sauer-Danfoss service center. Contact Genie Product Support to locate your local authorized service center.

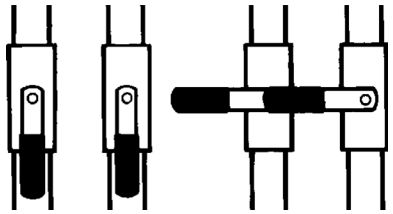
How to Remove the Drive Pump

NOTICE Component damage hazard. The work area and surfaces where this procedure will be performed must be clean and free of debris that could get into the hydraulic system and cause severe component damage. Dealer service is recommended.

Note: When removing a hose assembly or fitting, the O-ring (if equipped) on the fitting and/or hose end must be replaced. All connections must be torqued to specification during installation. Refer to Specifications, *Hydraulic Hose and Fitting Torque Specifications.*

1 Disconnect the wiring plug at the electronic displacement controller (EDC), located on the drive pump.

2 Locate the two hydraulic tank valves at the hydraulic tank. Close the valves.



open closed

NOTICE Component damage hazard. The engine must not be started with the hydraulic tank shut-off valves in the closed position or component damage will occur. If the tank valves are closed, remove the key from the key switch and tag the machine to inform personnel of the condition.

3 Tag, disconnect and plug the hydraulic hoses from the drive and function pumps. Cap the fittings on the pumps.

⚠WARNING Bodily injury hazard. Spraying hydraulic oil can penetrate and burn skin. Loosen hydraulic connections very slowly to allow the oil pressure to dissipate gradually. Do not allow oil to squirt or spray.

4 Support the pumps with a suitable lifting device and remove the two drive pump mounting fasteners.

5 Carefully pull the drive pump out until the pump coupler separates from the flex plate.

6 Remove the drive pump from the machine.

NOTICE Component damage hazard. The pump(s) may become unbalanced and fall if not properly supported.

NOTICE Component damage hazard. The engine must not be started with the hydraulic tank shut-off valves in the closed position or component damage will occur. If the tank valves are closed, remove the key from the key switch and tag the machine to inform personnel of the condition.

How to Prime the Drive Pump

NOTICE Component damage hazard. Be sure to open the two hydraulic tank valves before performing this procedure.

1 Connect a 0 to 600 psi / 0 to 50 bar pressure gauge to either the "A" or "B" test port on the drive pump.

2 **Perkins models:** Disconnect the engine wiring harness from the fuel shutoff solenoid at the injector pump.

Deutz models: Hold the manual fuel shutoff valve clockwise to the closed position.

3 Have another person crank the engine with the starter motor for 15 seconds, wait 15 seconds, then crank the engine an additional 15 seconds or until the pressure reaches approximately 250 psi / 17 bar.

4 **Perkins models:** Connect the engine wiring harness to the fuel solenoid.

Deutz models: Release the manual fuel shutoff valve.

5 Start the engine from the ground controls.

6 Check for hydraulic leaks.

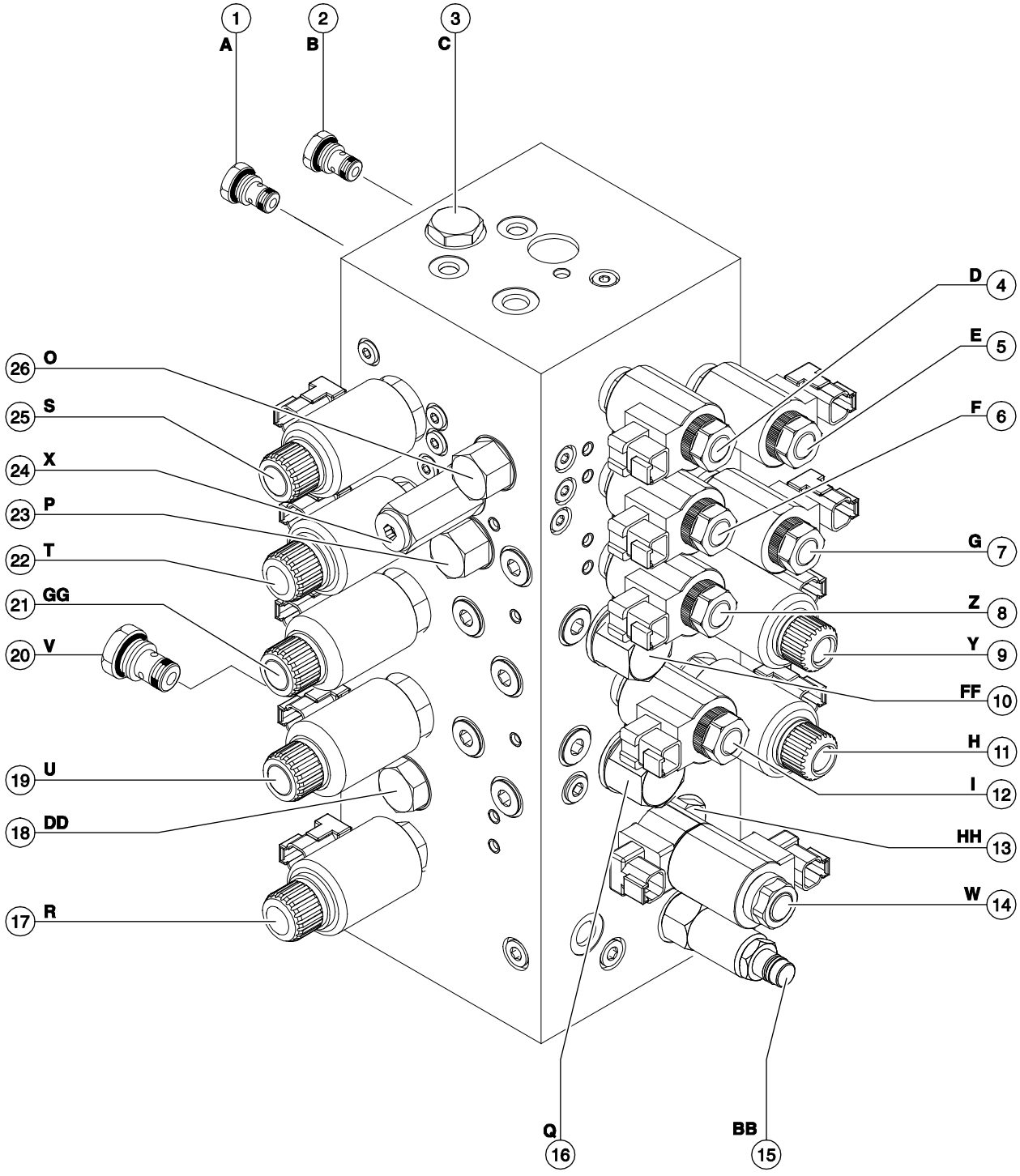
Manifolds

8-1
Function Manifold Components

The function manifold is mounted to the turntable next to the ground controls.

Index No.	Description	Schematic Item	Function	Torque
1	Check valve, 5 psi / 0.34 bar	A	Prevents hydraulic pressure from flowing back into auxiliary pump #1	60 ft-lbs / 81 Nm
2	Check valve, 5 psi / 0.34 bar	B	Prevents hydraulic pressure from flowing back into auxiliary pump #2	60 ft-lbs / 81 Nm
3	Check valve, 5 psi / 0.34 bar	C	Pressure Circuit	30-35 ft-lbs / 41-47 Nm
4	Solenoid Valve, 2 position 3 way	D	Primary boom down	33-37 ft-lbs / 45-50 Nm
5	Solenoid Valve, 2 position 3 way	E	Primary boom up	33-37 ft-lbs / 45-50 Nm
6	Solenoid Valve, 2 position 3 way	F	Primary boom extend	33-37 ft-lbs / 45-50 Nm
7	Solenoid Valve, 2 position 3 way	G	Primary boom retract	33-37 ft-lbs / 45-50 Nm
8	Solenoid Valve, 2 position 3 way	Z	Secondary boom retract	33-37 ft-lbs / 45-50 Nm
9	Solenoid Valve, 2 position 3 way	Y	Secondary boom extend	50-55 ft-lbs / 68-75 Nm
10	Differential sensing valve, 150 psi / 10.3 bar	FF	Secondary boom extend/retract circuit, regulates pressure drop across secondary boom extend/retract proportional valve	50-55 ft-lbs / 68-75 Nm
11	Solenoid Valve, 2 position 3 way	H	Secondary boom up	50-55 ft-lbs / 68-75 Nm
12	Solenoid Valve, 2 position 3 way	I	Secondary boom down	33-37 ft-lbs / 45-50 Nm
13	Check valve, 100 psi / 6.9 bar	HH	Prevents the draining of hydraulic oil from the jib manifold and platform manifold	90-100 ft-lbs / 122-136 Nm
14	Solenoid valve, 3 position 4 way	W	Turntable rotate circuit	33-37 ft-lbs / 45-50 Nm
15	Relief valve, 3100 psi / 214 bar	BB	System relief	30-35 ft-lbs / 41-47 Nm
16	Differential sensing valve, 150 psi / 10.3 bar	Q	Secondary boom up/down circuit, regulates pressure drop across secondary boom up/down proportional valve	50-55 ft-lbs / 68-75 Nm

Manifolds


1
A
2
B
3
C
D
4
E
5
F
6
G
7
Z
8
Y
9
FF
10
H
11
I
12
HH
13
W
14
BB
15
Q
16
R
17
DD
18
U
19
V
20
GG
21
T
22
P
23
X
24
S
25
O
26

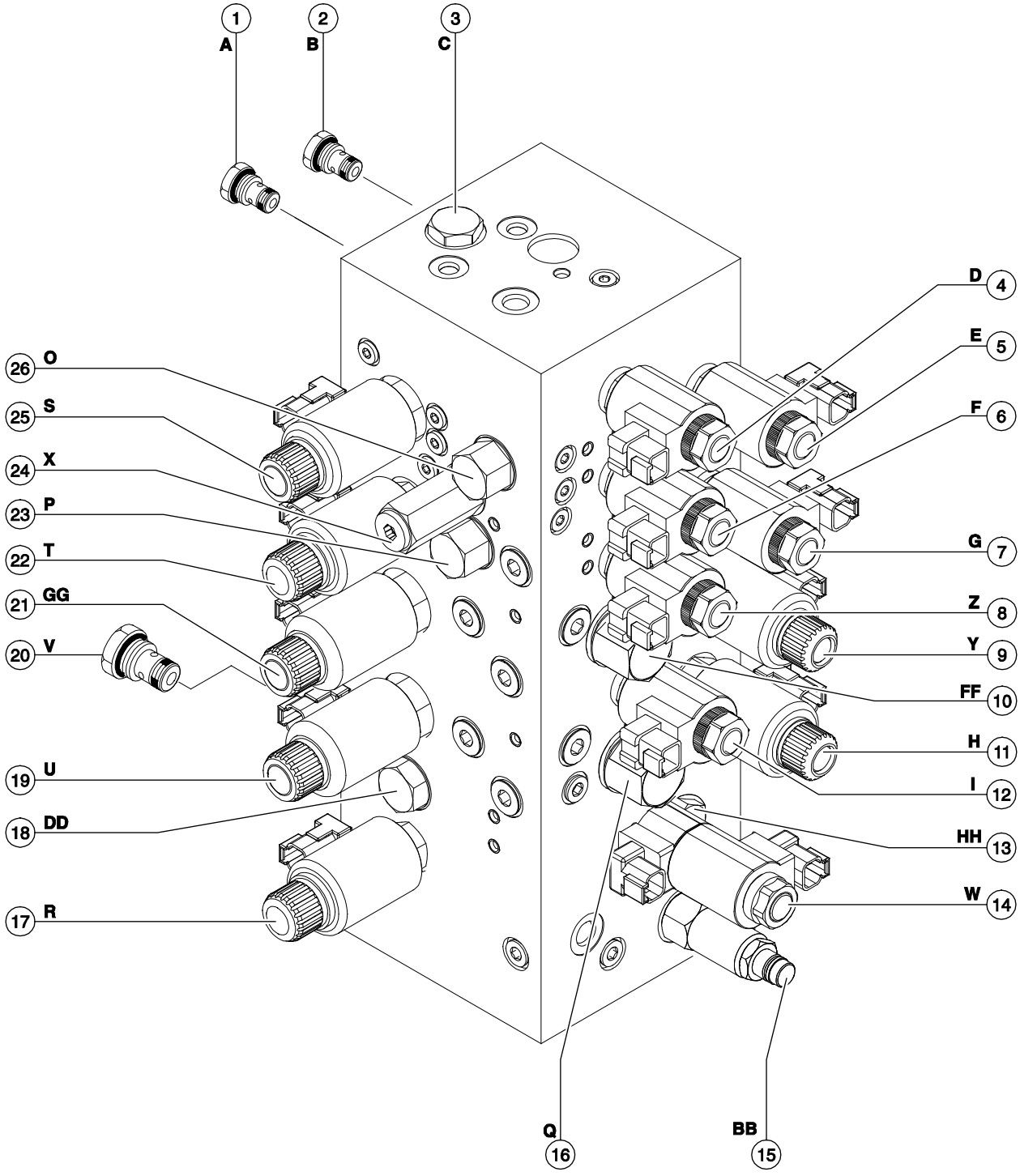
Manifolds

Function Manifold Components, continued

The function manifold is mounted to the turntable next to the ground controls.

Index No.	Description	Schematic Item	Function	Torque
17	Proportional solenoid valve	R	Turntable rotate circuit	33-37 ft-lbs / 45-50 Nm
18	Differential sensing valve, 150 psi / 10.3 bar	DD	Turntable rotate circuit, regulates pressure drop across turntable rotate proportional valve	30-35 ft-lbs / 41-47 Nm
19	Proportional solenoid valve	U	Secondary boom up/down circuit	50-55 ft-lbs / 68-75 Nm
20	Check valve, 5 psi / 0.34 bar	V	Pump circuit	90-100 ft-lbs / 122-136 Nm
21	Proportional solenoid valve	GG	Secondary boom extend/retract circuit	50-55 ft-lbs / 68-75 Nm
22	Proportional solenoid valve	T	Primary boom extend/retract circuit	33-37 ft-lbs / 45-50 Nm
23	Differential sensing valve, 150 psi / 10.3 bar	P	Primary boom extend/retract circuit, regulates pressure drop across primary boom extend/retract proportional valve	30-35 ft-lbs / 41-47 Nm
24	Relief valve, 2600 psi / 179 bar	X	Primary boom extend	20-25 ft-lbs / 27-34 Nm
25	Proportional solenoid valve	S	Primary boom up/down circuit	50-55 ft-lbs / 68-75 Nm
26	Differential sensing valve, 150 psi / 10.3 bar	O	Primary boom up/down circuit, regulates pressure drop across primary boom up/down proportional valve	30-35 ft-lbs / 41-47 Nm

Manifolds


1
A
2
B
3
C
D
4
E
5
F
6
G
7
Z
8
Y
9
FF
10
H
11
I
12
HH
13
W
14
BB
15
Q
16
R
17
DD
18
U
19
V
20
GG
21
T
22
P
23
X
24
S
25
O
26

Manifolds

8-2
Valve Adjustments - Function Manifold

How to Adjust the Function Manifold Relief Valve

Note: Perform this procedure with the boom in the stowed position.

Note: Auxiliary power will be used to perform this procedure. Do not start the engine.

Note: Refer to Function Manifold Component list to locate the system relief valve.

1 Hold the relief valve stem with a hex wrench and loosen the lock nut.

2 Turn the valve stem counterclockwise several turns. Do not allow the relief valve to come apart. Tighten the lock nut.

3 Connect a 0 to 5000 psi / 0 to 350 bar pressure gauge to the test port on the function manifold

4 Simultaneously push and hold the auxiliary power button and the primary boom retract button with the primary boom fully retracted. Observe the pressure reading on the pressure gauge. Refer to Specifications, *Hydraulic Component Specification*.

5 Hold the relief valve stem with a hex wrench and loosen the lock nut.

6 Adjust the valve stem. Turn it clockwise to increase the pressure. Tighten the lock nut.

⚠WARNING Tip-over hazard. Do not adjust the relief valve higher than specified.

7 Repeat step 4 to confirm relief valve pressure.

8 Remove the pressure gauge.

How to Adjust the Primary Boom Extend Relief Valve

Note: Perform this procedure with the axles extended.

1 Remove the primary boom end cover from the pivot end of the boom.

2 Locate the primary boom extend limit switch on the side of the primary boom.

3 Follow the wiring from the switch to the pivot end of the primary boom. Locate and disconnect the wire connector for the primary boom extend limit switch.

Note: The correct wire connector will be a 2 pin connector with a yellow marker on the cable.

4 Start the engine and fully extend the primary boom. Turn the engine off.

5 Connect a 0 to 5000 psi / 0 to 350 bar pressure gauge to the ptest port on the function manifold.

6 Start the engine from the ground controls and press and release the rpm select button until the engine changes to high idle.

7 Simultaneously push and hold the function enable/high speed button and the primary boom extend button with the primary boom fully extended. Observe the pressure reading on the pressure gauge. Refer to Specifications, *Hydraulic Component Specifications*.

8 Turn the engine off. Use a wrench to hold the relief valve and remove the cap.

9 Adjust the internal hex socket. Turn it clockwise to increase the pressure or counterclockwise to decrease the pressure. Install the relief valve cap.

⚠WARNING Tip-over hazard. Do not adjust the relief valve higher than specified.

10 Repeat step 7 to confirm relief valve pressure.

11 At the pivot end of the primary boom, connect the primary boom extend limit switch connector, that was disconnected in step 3.

12 Install the primary boom end cover.

13 Remove the pressure gauge.

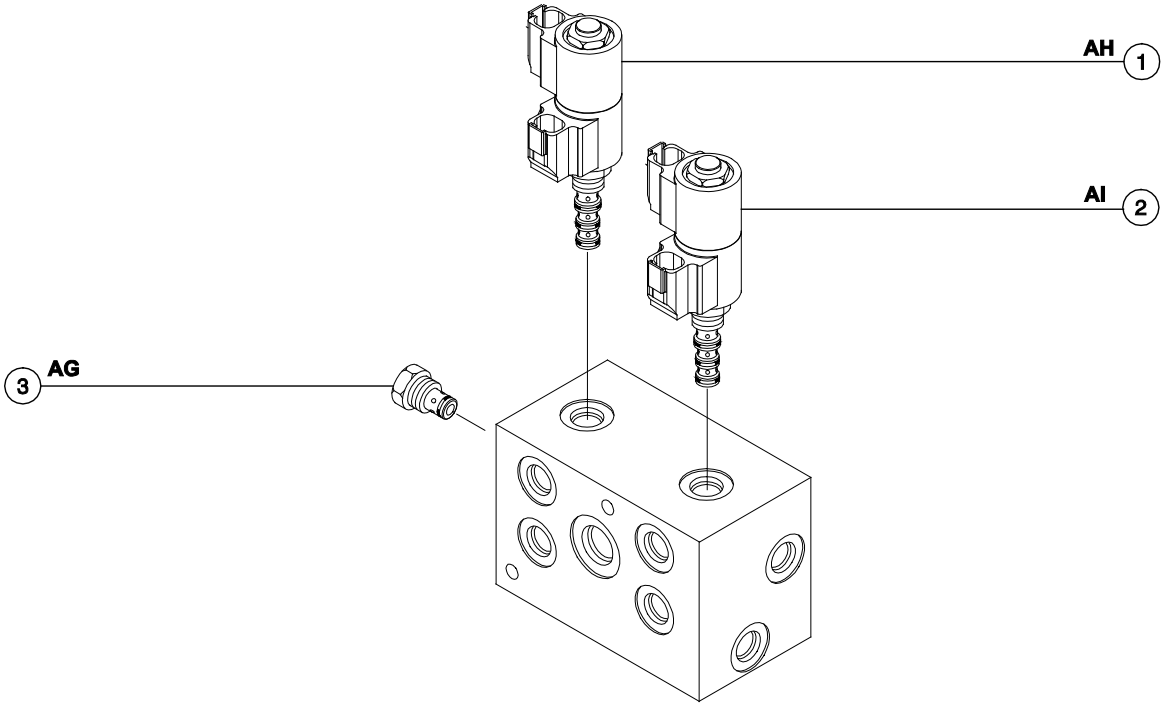
14 Start the engine and fully retract the primary boom. Turn the engine off.

Manifolds

8-3
Platform Manifold

The platform manifold is mounted to the platform mounting weldment.

Index No.	Description	Schematic Item	Function	Torque
1	Solenoid valve, 3 position 4 way	AH	Platform rotate left/right	20-25 ft-lbs / 27-34 Nm
2	Proportional solenoid valve, 3 position 4 way	AI	Platform level up/down	20-25 ft-lbs / 27-34 Nm
3	Flow control valve,0.2 gpm / 0.76 L/min	AG	Platform rotate left/right circuit	20-25 ft-lbs / 27-34 Nm

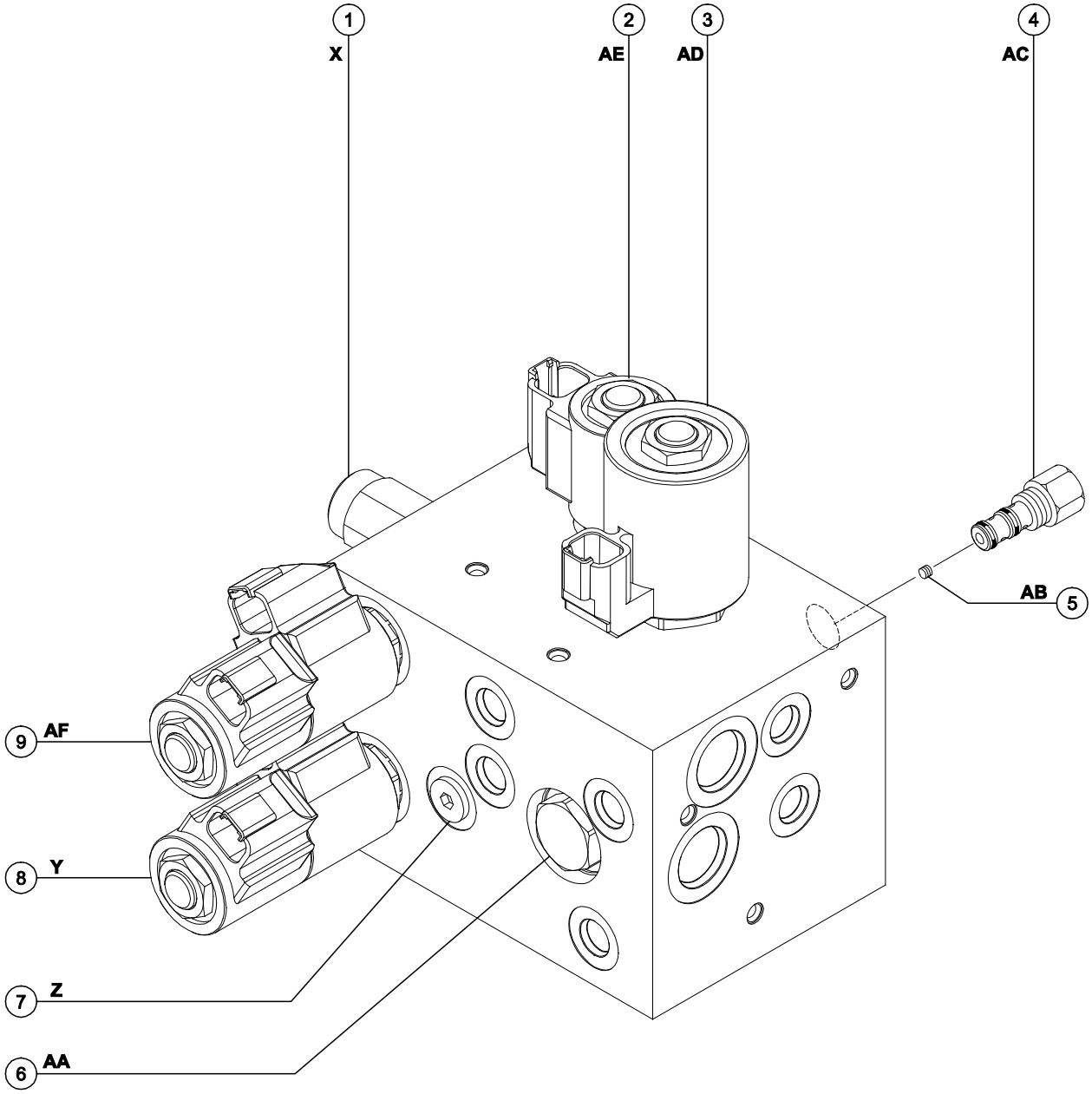


This page intentionally left blank.

8-4
Jib Boom Manifold

The jib boom manifold is mounted inside the primary extension boom at the platform end.

Index No.	Description	Schematic Item	Function	Torque
1	Pressure compensator valve, 150 psi / 10.3 bar	X	Jib boom up/down circuit, regulates pressure drop across jib boom up/down proportional valve	30-35 ft-lbs / 41-47 Nm
2	Solenoid Valve, 2 position 3 way	AE	Jib boom retract	20-25 ft-lbs / 27-34 Nm
3	Solenoid Valve, 2 position 3 way	AD	Jib boom extend	20-25 ft-lbs / 27-34 Nm
4	Flow regulator valve, 2 gpm / 7.6 L/min	AC	Jib boom extend/retract circuit	20-25 ft-lbs / 27-34 Nm
5	Orifice, 0.040 inch / 1 mm	AB	Jib boom extend/retract circuit	
6	Check valve, 25 psi / 1.7 bar	AA	Holds oil in jib boom manifold	20-25 ft-lbs / 27-34 Nm
7	Shuttle valve	Z	Jib boom up/down circuit	10-12 ft-lbs / 14-16 Nm
8	Proportional solenoid valve, 3 position 4 way	Y	Jib boom up/down	20-25 ft-lbs / 27-34 Nm
9	Proportional solenoid valve, 3 position 4 way	AF	Jib boom bellcrank level up/down	20-25 ft-lbs / 27-34 Nm

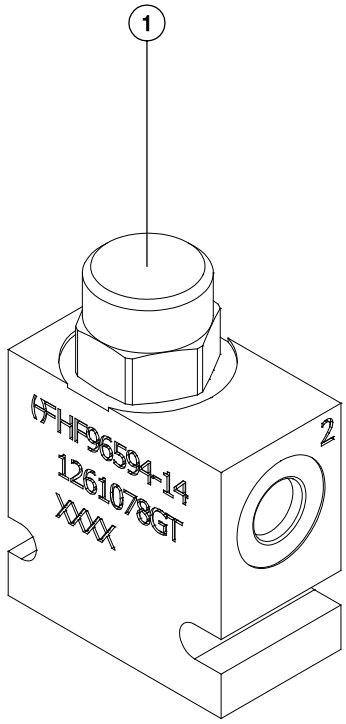

1
X
2
AE
3
AD
4
AC
AB
5
9
AF
8
Y
7
Z
6
AA

Manifolds

8-5
Flow Control Manifold

The flow control manifold is located at the platform next to the jib manifold.

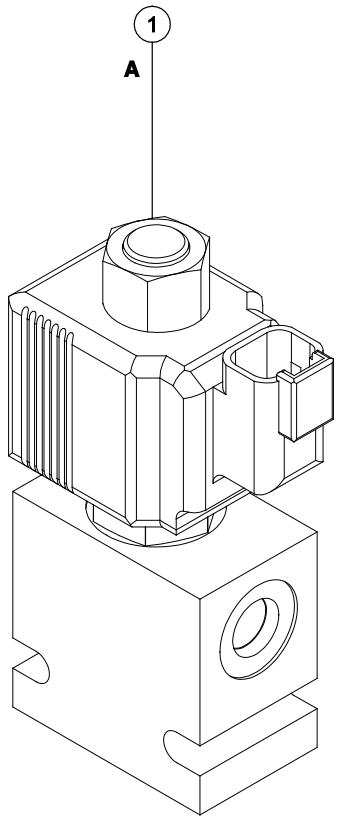
Index No.	Description	Schematic Item	Function	Torque
1	Flow regulator valve, 0.5 gpm / 1.9 L/min	AC	Controls flow in the jib and platform manifold recirculation circuit	20 ft-lbs / 27 Nm



8-6
Function Enable Valve

The function enable valve is mounted behind the medium pressure filter.

Index No.	Description	Schematic Item	Function	Torque
1	Solenoid valve, 2 position, 2 way	A	Enables lift pump to provide hydraulic pressure for all boom and steer/axle functions	20-25 ft-lbs / 27-34 Nm

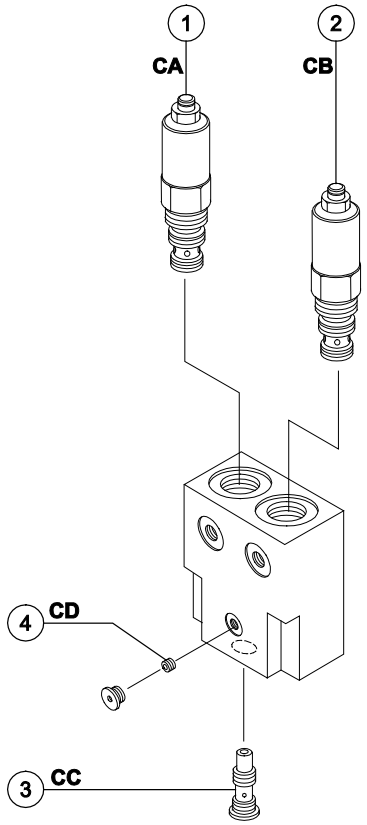


Manifolds

8-7
Turntable Rotation Manifold

The turntable rotation manifolds are mounted to the turntable rotation drive hub motors.

Index No.	Description	Schematic Item	Function	Torque
1	Counterbalance valve	CA	Turntable rotate right	25-30 ft-lbs / 34-41 Nm
2	Counterbalance valve	CB	Turntable rotate left	25-30 ft-lbs / 34-41 Nm
3	Shuttle valve. 2 position, 3 way	CC	Turntable rotation brake release	8-10 ft-lbs / 11-14 Nm
4	Orifice Plug, 0.030 inch / 0.76 mm	CD	Turntable rotation brake release	

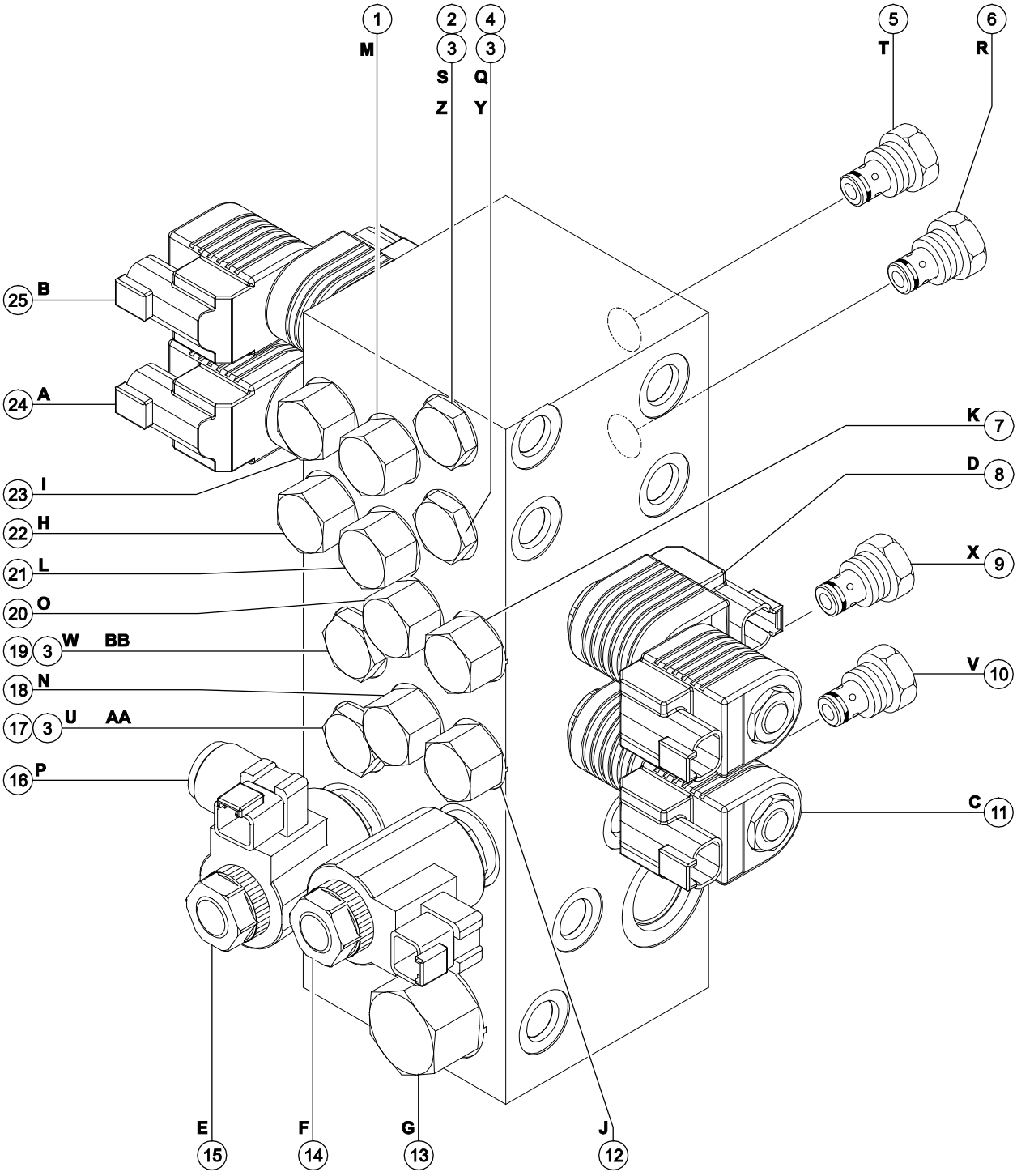


8-8
Steer and Axle Manifold

The steer and axle manifold is mounted inside the manifold box at the yellow triangle side of the machine.

Index No.	Description	Schematic Item	Function	Torque
1	Flow control valve, 1.5 gpm / 5.7 L/min	M	Right front steer cylinder retract circuit	20-25 ft-lbs / 27-34 Nm
2	Check valve	S	Prevents right front steer cylinder from moving when not steering	20-25 ft-lbs / 27-34 Nm
3	Pilot operated piston	Y, Z, AA, BB		
4	Check valve	Q	Prevents left front steer cylinder from moving when not steering	20-25 ft-lbs / 27-34 Nm
5	Check valve	T	Prevents right front steer cylinder from moving when not steering	20-25 ft-lbs / 27-34 Nm
6	Check valve	R	Prevents left front steer cylinder from moving when not steering	20-25 ft-lbs / 27-34 Nm
7	Flow control valve, 2.1 gpm / 8 L/min	K	Right rear steer cylinder extend circuit	20-25 ft-lbs / 27-34 Nm
8	Solenoid valve, 3 position 4 way	D	Steer left/right, right rear steer cylinder	20-25 ft-lbs / 27-34 Nm
9	Check valve	X	Prevents right rear steer cylinder from moving when not steering	20-25 ft-lbs / 27-34 Nm
10	Check valve	V	Prevents left rear steer cylinder from moving when not steering	20-25 ft-lbs / 27-34 Nm
11	Solenoid valve, 3 position 4 way	C	Steer left/right, left rear steer cylinder	20-25 ft-lbs / 27-34 Nm
12	Flow control valve, 2.1 gpm / 8 L/min	J	Left rear steer cylinder extend circuit	20-25 ft-lbs / 27-34 Nm
13	Flow control valve, 7 gpm / 26.5 L/min	G	Axle extend/retract circuit	50-55 ft-lbs / 68-75 Nm
14	Solenoid Valve, 2 position 3 way	F	Axle retract	50-55 ft-lbs / 68-75 Nm
15	Solenoid Valve, 2 position 3 way	E	Axle extend	50-55 ft-lbs / 68-75 Nm

Manifolds

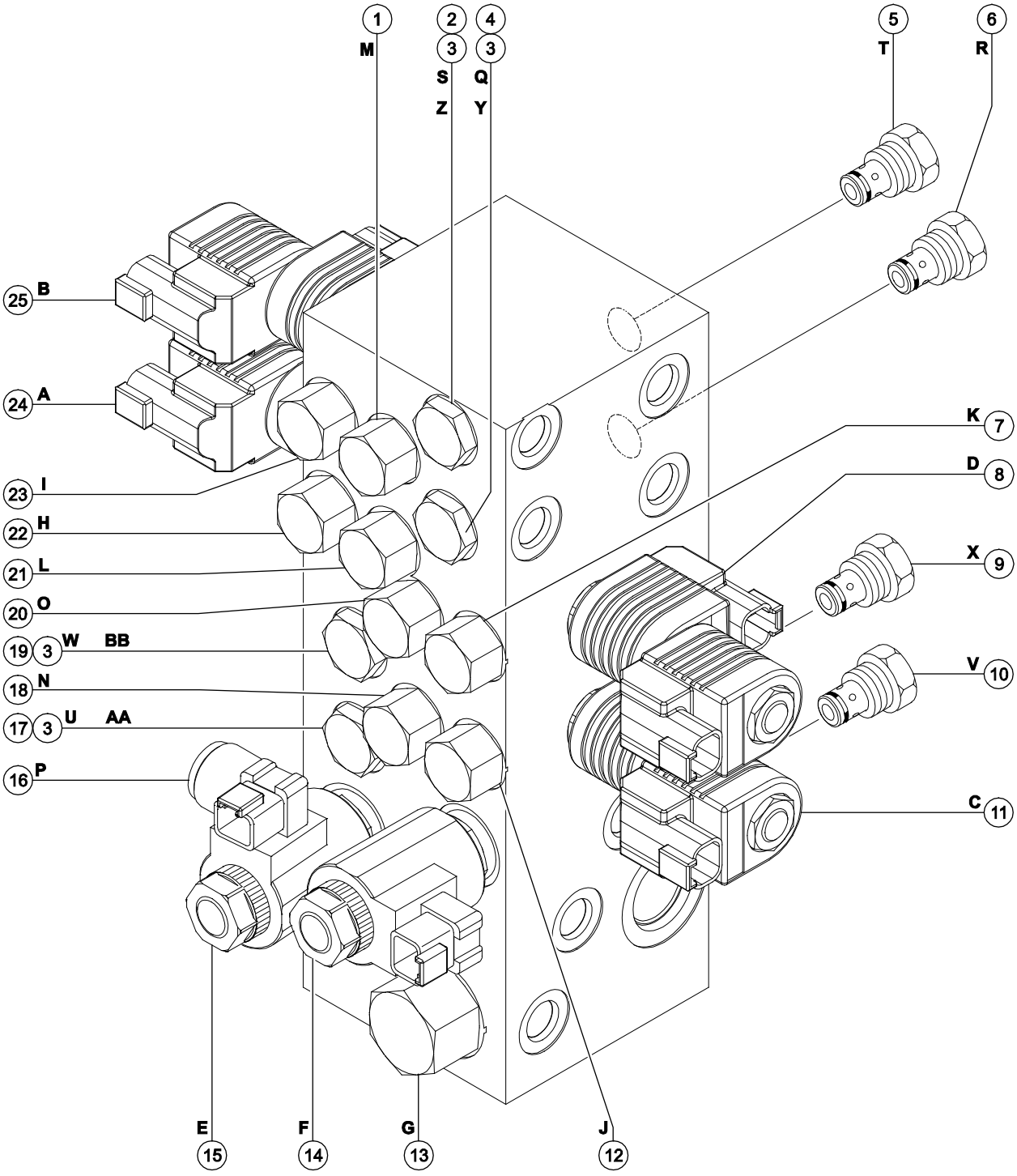

1
M
2
3
S
Z
4
3
Q
Y
5
T
6
R
25
B
24
A
23
I
22
H
21
L
20
O
19
3
W
BB
18
N
17
3
U
AA
16
P
K
7
D
8
X
9
V
10
C
11
E
15
F
14
G
13
J
12

Steer and Axle Manifold, continued

The steer and axle manifold is mounted inside the manifold box at the yellow triangle side of the machine.

Index No.	Description	Schematic Item	Function	Torque
16	Pressure reducing valve, 2400 psi / 165 bar	P	Axle extend/retract circuit	30-35 ft-lbs / 41-47 Nm
17	Check valve	U	Prevents left rear steer cylinder from moving when not steering	20-25 ft-lbs / 27-34 Nm
18	Flow control valve, 1.5 gpm / 5.7 L/min	N	Left rear steer cylinder retract circuit	20-25 ft-lbs / 27-34 Nm
19	Check valve	W	Prevents right rear steer cylinder from moving when not steering	20-25 ft-lbs / 27-34 Nm
20	Flow control valve, 1.5 gpm / 5.7 L/min	O	Right rear steer cylinder retract circuit	20-25 ft-lbs / 27-34 Nm
21	Flow control valve, 1.5 gpm / 5.7 L/min	L	Left front steer cylinder retract circuit	20-25 ft-lbs / 27-34 Nm
22	Flow control valve, 2.1 gpm / 8 L/min	H	Left front steer cylinder extend circuit	20-25 ft-lbs / 27-34 Nm
23	Flow control valve, 2.1 gpm / 8 L/min	I	Right front steer cylinder extend circuit	20-25 ft-lbs / 27-34 Nm
24	Solenoid valve, 3 position 4 way	A	Steer left/right, left front steer cylinder	20-25 ft-lbs / 27-34 Nm
25	Solenoid valve, 3 position 4 way	B	Steer left/right, right front steer cylinder	20-25 ft-lbs / 27-34 Nm

Manifolds


1
M
2
3
S
Z
4
3
Q
Y
5
T
6
R
25
B
24
A
23
I
22
H
21
L
20
O
19
3
W
BB
18
N
17
3
U
AA
16
P
K
7
D
8
X
9
V
10
C
11
E
15
F
14
G
13
J
12

8-9
Valve Adjustments - Steer and Axle Manifold

How to Adjust the Axle Relief Valve

Note: Perform this procedure with the machine on a firm, level surface and in the stowed position with the axles extended.

Note: Refer to Steer and Axle Manifold list to locate the axle relief valve.

Note: Two people will be required to perform this procedure.

1 Connect a 0 to 5000 psi / 0 to 350 bar pressure gauge to the test port on the steer and axle manifold.

2 Locate the axle relief valve on the steer and axle manifold. Hold the relief valve with a wrench and remove the cap.

3 Start the engine from the platform controls and press down the foot switch. Press and hold the axle extend button at the platform controls. Observe the pressure reading on the pressure gauge. Refer to Specifications, *Hydraulic Component Specifications*.

4 Turn the engine off.

5 Adjust the internal hex socket. Turn it clockwise to increase the pressure or counterclockwise to decrease the pressure. Install the relief valve cap.

NOTICE Component damage hazard. Do not adjust the relief valve pressures higher than specifications.

6 Repeat steps 3 through 5 to confirm relief valve pressure.

7 Remove the pressure gauge.

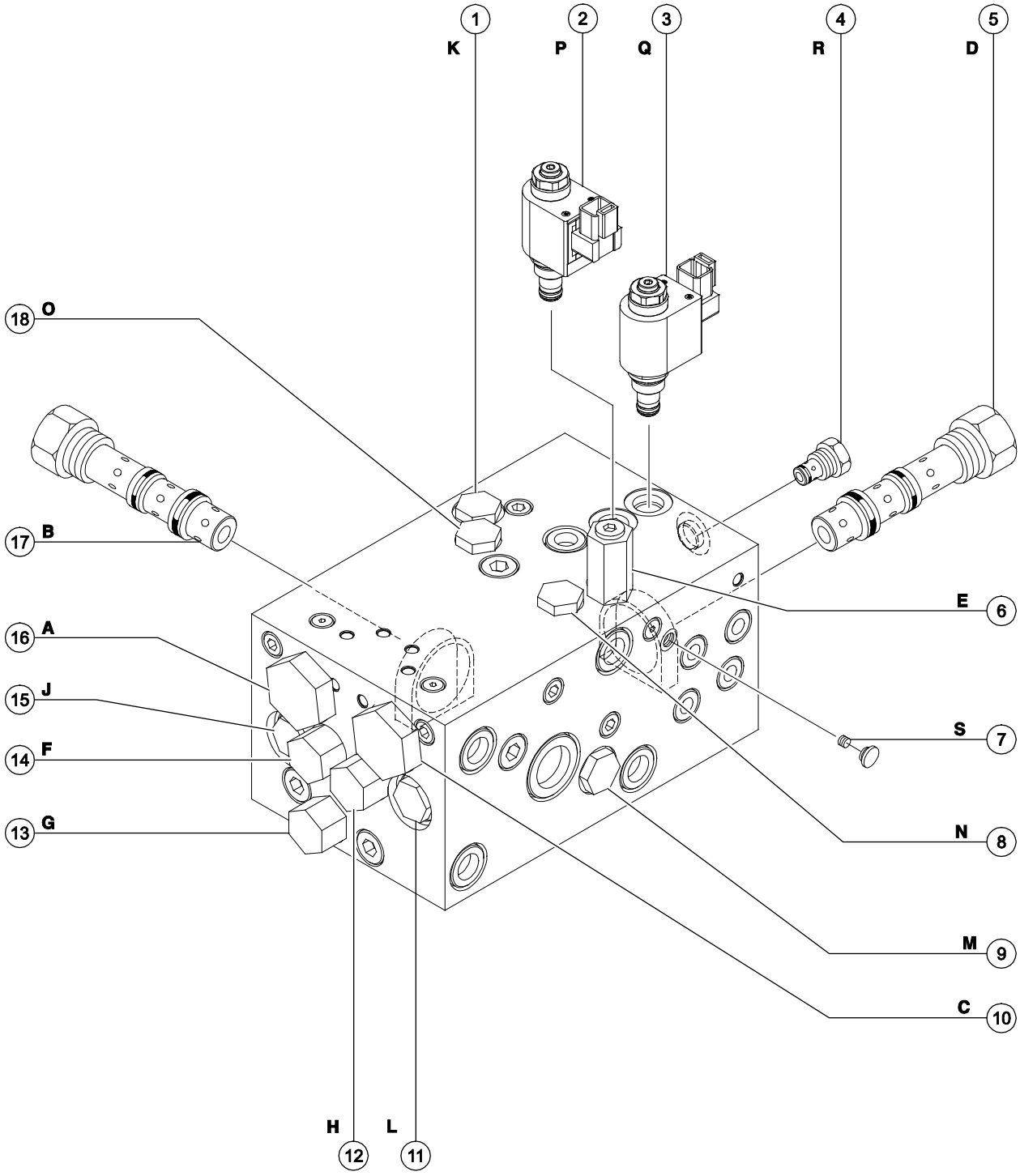
Manifolds

8-10
Traction Manifold Components

The traction manifold is mounted inside the manifold box at the blue triangle side of the machine.

Index No.	Description	Schematic Item	Function	Torque
1	Check valve, 5 psi / 0.3 bar	K	Anti-cavitation	30-35 ft-lbs / 40.7-47.5 Nm
2	Solenoid Valve, 2 position 3 way	P	Two-speed drive motor shift	26-30 ft-lbs / 35.3-40.7 Nm
3	Solenoid Valve, 2 position 3 way	Q	Brake release	26-30 ft-lbs / 35.3-40.7 Nm
4	Check valve, 5 psi / 0.3 bar	R	Brake circuit	20-25 ft-lbs / 27.1-33.9 Nm
5	Shuttle Valve, 3 position 3 way	D	Charge pressure circuit that directs hot oil out of low pressure side of drive pumpp	50-55 ft-lbs / 67.8-74.6 Nm
6	Relief valve, 250 psi / 17.23 bar	E	Charge pressure circuit	20-25 ft-lbs / 27.1-33.9 Nm
7	Orifice Plug, 0.030 inch / 0.762 mm	S	Brake and two-speed circuit	20-25 ft-lbs / 27.1-33.9 Nm
8	Check valve, 5 psi / 0.3 bar	N	Drive motor anti-cavitation	20-25 ft-lbs / 27.1-33.9 Nm
9	Check valve, 5 psi / 0.3 bar	M	Drive motor anti-cavitation	30-35 ft-lbs / 40.7-47.5 Nm
10	Flow divider/combiner valve	C	Controls flow to square end drive motors in forward and reverse	90-100 ft-lbs / 122-135.6 Nm
11	Check valve, 5 psi / 0.3 bar	L	Drive motor anti-cavitation	20-25 ft-lbs / 27.1-33.9 Nm
12	Flow control valve, 2 gpm / 7.6 L/min	H	Equalizes pressure on both sides of divider/combiner valve	30-35 ft-lbs / 40.7-47.5 Nm

Manifolds



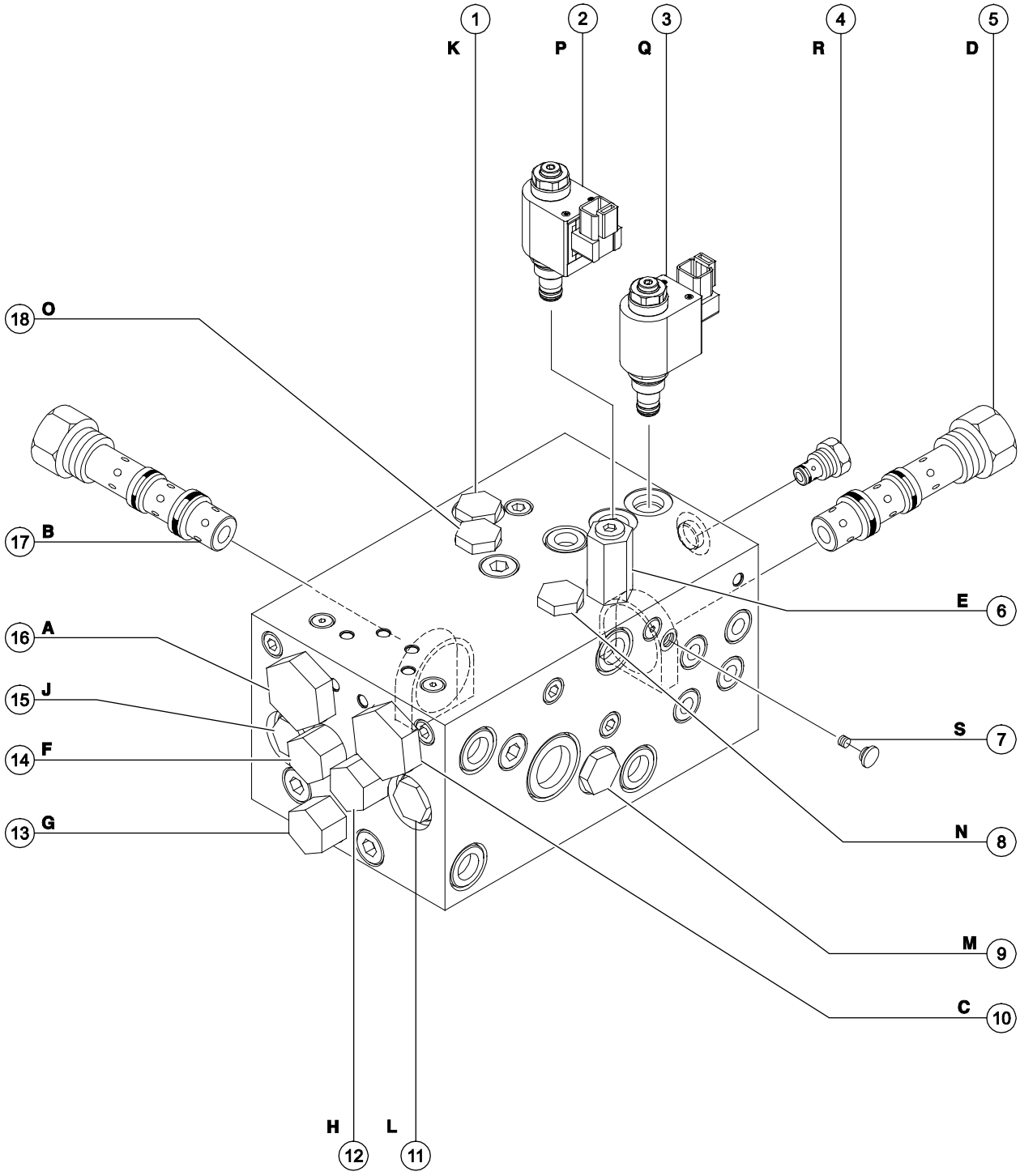
Manifolds

Traction Manifold Components, continued

The traction manifold is mounted inside the manifold box at the blue triangle side of the machine.

Index No.	Description	Schematic Item	Function	Torque
13	Flow control valve 2.2 gpm / 8.3 L/m	G	Equalizes pressure on both sides of divider/combiner valve B	30-35 ft-lbs / 40.7-47.5 Nm
14	Flow control valve 4.0 gpm / 15.1 L/m	F	Equalizes pressure on both sides of divider/combiner valve A	30-35 ft-lbs / 40.7-47.5 Nm
15	Check valve, 5 psi / 0.3 bar	J	Drive motor anti-cavitation	20-25 ft-lbs / 27.1-33.9 Nm
16	Flow divider/combiner valve	A	Controls flow to circle end drive motors in forward and reverse	90-100 ft-lbs / 122-135.6 Nm
17	Flow divider/combiner valve	B	Controls flow to divider/combiner valves	90-100 ft-lbs / 122-135.6 Nm
18	Check valve, 5 psi / 0.3 bar	O	Drive motor anti-cavitation	20-25 ft-lbs / 27.1-33.9 Nm

Manifolds



Manifolds

8-11
Valve Adjustments - Traction Manifold

How to Adjust the Hot Oil Relief Valve

Note: The hydraulic oil temperature must be 100°F to 150°F / 38°C to 65.5°C before performing this procedure.

1 Connect a 0 to 600 psi / 0 to 50 bar pressure gauge to either the "A" or "B" test port on the drive pump.

2 Locate the hot oil relief valve on the traction manifold. Hold the relief valve and remove the cap.

3 Turn the internal hex socket clockwise fully until it stops. Install the cap.

4 Start the engine from the ground controls.

5 Press and hold the function enable/high rpm select button (rabbit symbol) position. Note the reading on the pressure gauge.

6 Turn the engine off.

7 Remove the pressure gauge from the drive pump. Connect the gauge to the test port located on the traction manifold.

8 Hold the hot oil relief valve and remove the cap.

9 Start the engine from the ground controls.

10 Press and hold the function enable/high rpm select button (rabbit symbol) position.

11 Adjust the internal hex socket until the pressure reading on the gauge is 40 psi / 2.8 bar less than the pressure reading on the pump. Turn it clockwise to increase the pressure or counterclockwise to decrease the pressure. Install the relief valve cap.

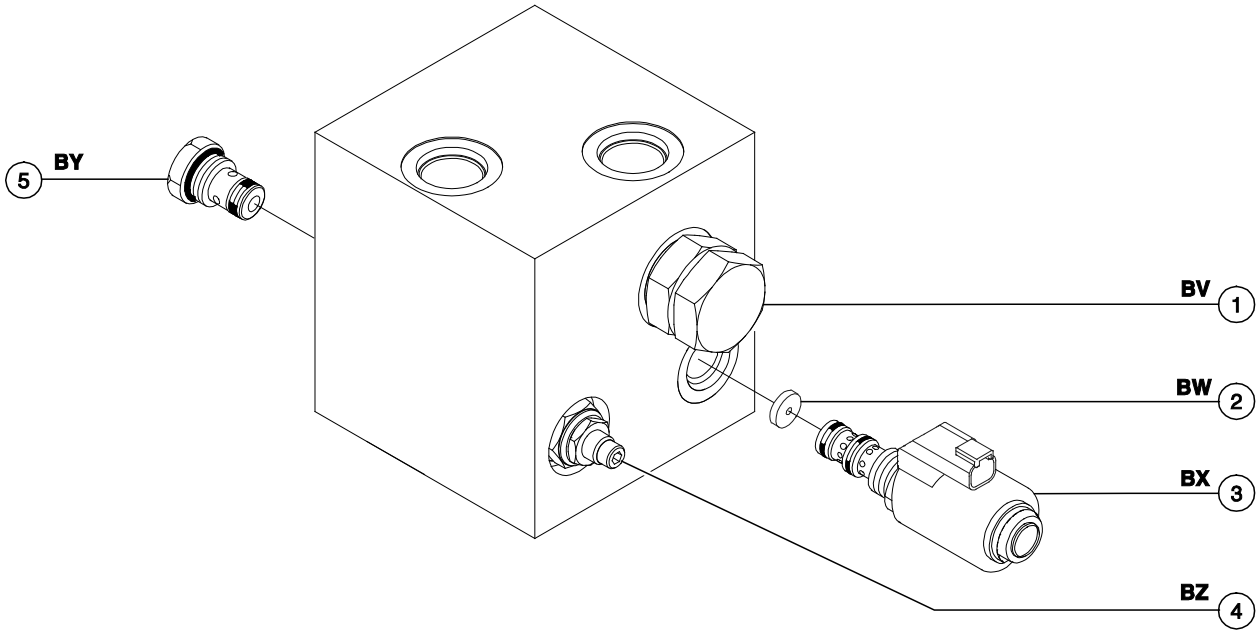
12 Turn the engine off.

13 Remove the pressure gauge.

8-12
Drive Oil Diverter Manifold (welder option)

The oil diverter manifold is mounted to the hydraulic generator located in the engine compartment.

Index No.	Description	Schematic Item	Function	Torque
1	Directional valve	BV	Diverter valve	80-90 ft-lbs / 108-122 Nm
2	Orifice, 0.030 inch / 0.080 cm	BW	Delays shift to drive	
3	Solenoid Valve	BX	Pilot valve to diverter	35-40 ft-lbs / 47-54 Nm
4	Relief valve, 270 psi / 18.6 bar	BZ	Charge pressure circuit	35-40 ft-lbs / 47-54 Nm
5	Check valve	BY	Prevents oil to generator	35-40 ft-lbs / 47-54 Nm



Manifolds

8-13 Valve Coils

How to Test a Coil

A properly functioning coil provides an electromotive force which operates the solenoid valve. Critical to normal operation is continuity within the coil that provides this force field.

Since coil resistance is sensitive to temperature, resistance values outside specification can produce erratic operation. When coil resistance decreases below specification, amperage increases. As resistance rises above specification, voltage increases.

While valves may operate when coil resistance is outside specification, maintaining coils within specification will help ensure proper valve function over a wide range of operating temperatures.

⚠WARNING Electrocution/burn hazard. Contact with electrically charged circuits could result in death or serious injury. Remove all rings, watches and other jewelry.

1 Tag and disconnect the wiring from the coil to be tested.

2 Test the coil resistance.

⊙ Result: The resistance should be within specification, plus or minus 30%.

⊠ Result: If the resistance is not within specification, plus or minus 30%, replace the coil.

Valve Coil Resistance Specification

Note: The following coil resistance specifications are at an ambient temperature of 68°F / 20°C. As valve coil resistance is sensitive to changes in air temperature, the coil resistance will typically increase or decrease by 4% for each 18°F / 10°C that your air temperature increases or decreases from 68°F / 20°C.

Valve Coil Resistance Specification	
3 position 4 way solenoid valve (schematic item A, B, C, D, W)	7.2Ω
2 position 3 way solenoid valve (schematic items D, E, F, G, I, Z)	5.6Ω
2 position 3 way solenoid valve (schematic items P,Q)	7.2Ω
2 position 3 way solenoid valve (schematic items AE)	8.8Ω
3 position 4 way proportional solenoid valve (schematic items Y and AF)	8.8Ω
2 position 2 way solenoid valve (schematic item A)	3.5 to 5.5Ω

How to Test a Coil Diode

Properly functioning coil diodes protect the electrical circuit by suppressing voltage spikes. Voltage spikes naturally occur within a function circuit following the interruption of electrical current to a coil. Faulty diodes can fail to protect the electrical system, resulting in a tripped circuit breaker or component damage.

⚠WARNING Electrocution/burn hazard. Contact with electrically charged circuits could result in death or serious injury. Remove all rings, watches and other jewelry.

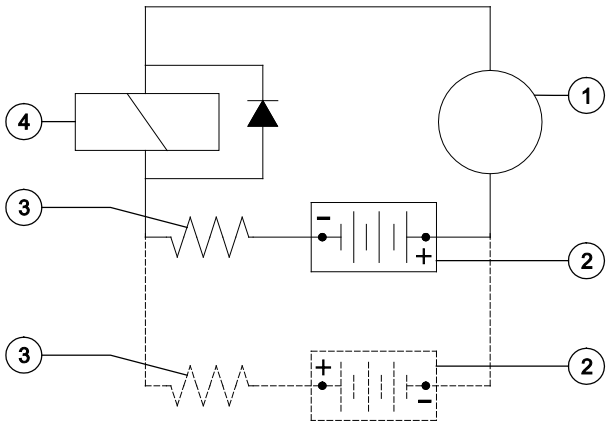
1 Test the coil for resistance. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Test a Coil*.

2 Connect a 10W resistor to the negative terminal of a known good 9V DC battery. Connect the other end of the resistor to a terminal on the coil.

Resistor 10Ω

Genie part number 27287

Note: The battery should read 9V DC or more when measured across the terminals.



1 multimeter
2 9v DC battery
3 10Ω resistor
4 coil

3 Set a multimeter to read DC current.

Note: The multimeter, when set to read DC current, should be capable of reading up to 800 mA.

4 Connect the negative lead to the other terminal on the coil.

5 Momentarily connect the positive lead from the multimeter to the positive terminal on the 9V DC battery. Note and record the current reading.

6 At the battery or coil terminals, reverse the connections. Note and record the current reading.

⊙ Result: Both current readings are greater than 0 mA and are different by a minimum of 20%. The coil is good.

☒ Result: If one or both of the current readings are 0 mA, or if the two current readings do not differ by a minimum of 20%, the coil and/or its internal diode are faulty and the coil should be replaced.

Turntable Rotation Components

9-1
Turntable Rotation Assembly

How to Remove a Turntable Rotation Assembly

Note: When removing a hose assembly or fitting, the O-ring (if equipped) on the fitting and/or hose end must be replaced. All connections must be torqued to specification during installation. Refer to Specifications, *Hydraulic Hose and Fitting Torque Specifications.*

Note: Perform this procedure with the primary boom between the circle-end tires and with the machine on a firm, level surface.

1 Secure the turntable from rotating with the turntable rotation lock pin.

2 Remove the ground controls side fixed turntable cover.

3 Tag, disconnect the hydraulic hoses from the turntable rotation motor. Cap the fittings on the motor.

⚠WARNING Bodily injury hazard. Spraying hydraulic oil can penetrate and burn skin. Loosen hydraulic connections very slowly to allow the oil pressure to dissipate gradually. Do not allow oil to squirt or spray.

4 Attach a lifting strap from an overhead crane or other suitable lifting device to the lifting eye on the turntable rotation assembly.

5 Remove the drive hub mounting bolts and remove the turntable rotation assembly from the machine.

6 Repeat steps 3 through 5 for the other turntable rotation assembly.

⚠DANGER Tip-over hazard. If the turntable rotation lock pin is not properly installed, machine stability is compromised and the machine could tip over when the drive hub is removed from the machine, which could result in death or serious injury.

⚠WARNING Crushing hazard. The drive hub could become unbalanced and fall if not properly supported by an overhead crane or lifting device when removed from the machine.

Note: When installing a turntable rotation assembly, the rotation gear backlash must be adjusted. Refer to Repair Procedure, *Adjust the Turntable Rotation Gear Backlash*.

Turntable Rotation Components

How to Adjust the Turntable Rotation Gear Backlash

1 Secure the turntable from rotating with the turntable rotation lock pin.

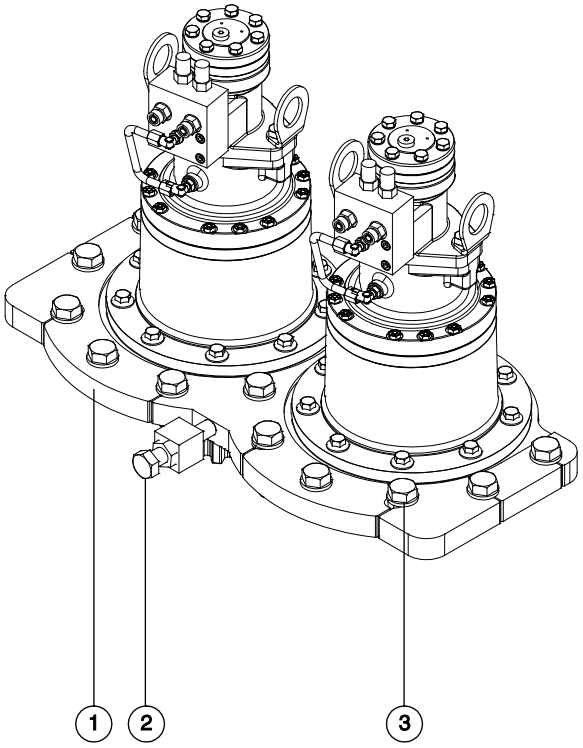
2 Remove the fixed turntable cover at the ground controls side of the machine.

3 Loosen the backlash pivot plate mounting bolts.

4 Push the backlash pivot plate towards the turntable as far as possible (this will push the rotation pinion gears into the turntable bearing ring gear).

5 Loosen the lock nut on the adjustment bolt.

6 Turn the adjustment bolt clockwise until it contacts the backlash pivot plate.



1 backlash pivot plate
2 adjustment bolt with lock nut
3 backlash pivot plate mounting bolts

7 Turn the adjustment bolt 1/2 to 3/4 turn counterclockwise. Tighten the lock nut on the adjustment bolt.

8 Pull the backlash pivot plate away from the turntable until it contacts the adjustment bolt. Then lubricate the mounting fasteners on the backlash pivot plate and torque to specification. Refer to Specifications, *Machine Torque Specifications*.

9 Rotate the turntable through an entire rotation. Check for tight spots that could cause binding. Readjust if necessary.

Turntable Rotation Components

9-2
Turntable Level Sensor

How to Calibrate the Turntable Level Sensor

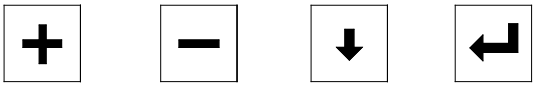
Note: If the Safety Controller (SCON) has been replaced, the entire machine must be calibrated in a specific order. Refer to Repair Procedure, *Full Machine Calibration*.

⚠WARNING Tip-over hazard. Failure to properly calibrate the machine could cause the machine to tip over resulting in death or serious injury.

Note: A digital level will be required to perform this procedure.

Note: A kit is available through Genie Product Support (Genie part number 58351). This kit includes a digital level with a magnetic base and cable harnesses.

Note: Use the following chart to identify the description of each LCD screen control button used in this procedure.



Plus Minus Previous Enter

Note: Perform this procedure with the machine on a firm, level surface with the booms in the fully stowed position and the axles fully extended.

1 Push in the ground controls red Emergency Stop button to the off position.

2 Open the ground control box.

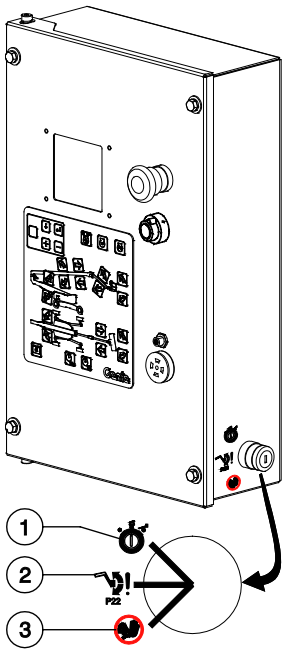
3 Locate the calibration toggle switch at the top of the ground control box. Activate calibration mode by moving the toggle switch in the left direction.

4 Temporarily install a control box door retaining fastener between the door and the box to prevent the control box door from moving the toggle switch while calibrating the machine.

5 Turn the key switch to ground controls.

6 Remove the key from the main key switch. Insert the key into the bypass/recovery key switch and turn it to the bypass position.

Note: The angle sensor calibration values will not be saved correctly unless the key switch is in the bypass position and the calibration toggle switch is activated.



1 Run
2 Bypass
3 Recovery

7 Press and hold the **enter** button on the ground control panel while pulling out the ground controls red Emergency Stop button to the on position. Hold the **enter** button for approximately 5 seconds and then release it.

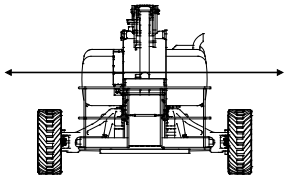
8 Enter sensor calibration mode by pressing the buttons at the ground controls in the following sequence: **(plus)(enter)(enter)(plus)**.

Turntable Rotation Components

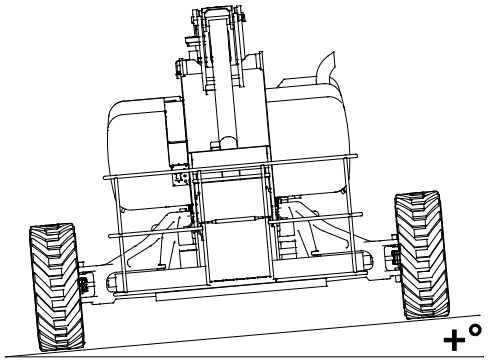
9 Press the **enter** or **previous** button on the LCD screen until SET UNIT X AXIS LEVEL TO GRAVITY is displayed.

10 Place a digital level that has ben calibrated to gravity on the X axis of the turntable.

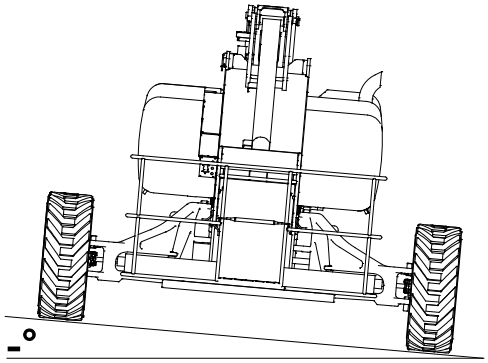
Note: Illustrations shown at the platform end of the machine.



X axis



positive degree side slope



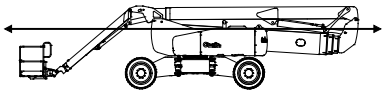
negative degree side slope

11 Press the **plus** button or **minus** button to adjust the display to the exact value shown on the digital level and press the **enter** button.

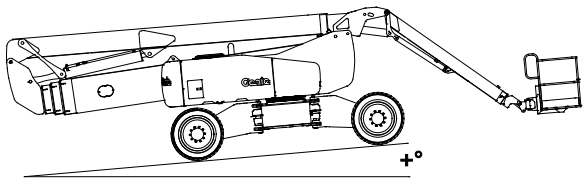
Note: If the measured angle already matches the angle shown on the display at the ground controls, press the **plus** button or **minus** button to change the angle and then change back to the measured value. The system must detect a change in displayed value to record the calibrated value.

12 Press the **enter** or **previous** button on the LCD screen,until SET UNIT Y AXIS LEVEL TO GRAVITY is displayed.

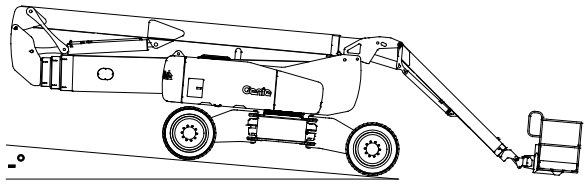
13 Place a digital level that has been calibrated to gravity on the Y axis of the turntable.



Y axis



positive degree downhill slope



negative degree uphill slope

Turntable Rotation Components

14 Press the **plus** button or **minus** button to adjust the display to the exact value shown on the digital level and press the **enter** button.

Note: If the measured angle already matches the angle shown on the display at the ground controls, press the **plus** button or **minus** button to change the angle and then change back to the measured value. The system must detect a change in displayed value to record the calibrated value.

15 Press the **enter** or **previous** button on the LCD screen until EXIT is displayed.

16 Press the **plus** button to select YES, then press the **enter** button to accept.

17 Turn the key back to the run position and remove the key from the bypass/recovery key switch. Insert the key into the main key switch and turn it to ground controls.

Note: Be sure that the bypass/recovery key switch is in the run position before attempting to operate the machine.

18 Wait approximately 20 seconds and turn the machine off by pressing the red Emergency Stop button in.

19 Remove the fastener that was temporarily installed. Close the control box door and install the door retaining fasteners.

Note: When the control box door is closed, the calibration toggle switch is automatically activated to exit out of calibration mode.

20 Start the engine. Be sure there are no calibration faults shown on the display.

21 Perform level sensor test. Refer to Maintenance Procedure, *Test the Level Sensor*.

10-1
Steer Sensors

The steer sensors measure steer angle and communicates that information to the ground controls ECM. The steer sensor on the ground controls side of the machine at the square-end acts as the lead sensor when in front wheel steer mode. In rear wheel steer mode, the steer sensor on the ground controls side of the machine at the circle-end acts as the lead sensor. The other three sensors follow the position, or steer angle, of the lead sensor. There is a steer sensor mounted to the top of each steer yoke upper pivot pin.

How to Replace a Steer Sensor

Note: When the steer sensor is replaced, both the sensor and magnet must be replaced as a set.

Note: Perform this procedure with the axles fully retracted and the boom in the stowed position.

1 Align the remaining wheels on the machine so they are visually parallel to the chassis as close as possible.

2 Disconnect the steer sensor assembly cable from the main harness to be replaced.

3 Remove the steer sensor cover retaining fasteners. Remove the steer sensor assembly.

Note: If the sensor activator pin needs to be replaced, install the new activator pin per Illustration 1.

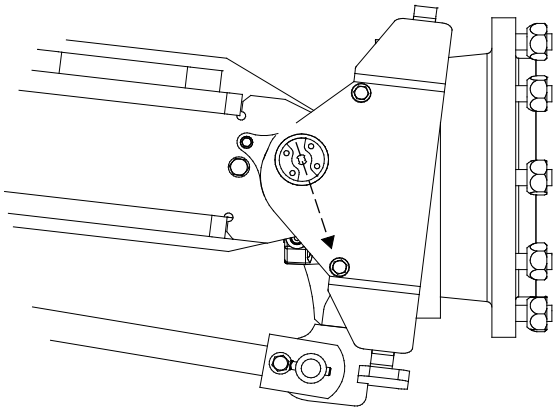


Illustration 1
(square end, yellow side and circle end, blue side shown)

Left front (square-end, blue side) and right rear (circle-end, yellow side) angle sensors:

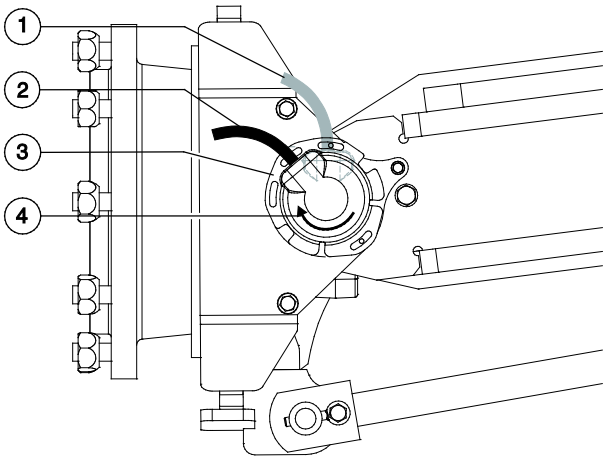


Illustration 2

1 starting position
2 installed position
3 sensor cover
4 rotation arrow

Axle Components

4 Position the new steer sensor assembly over the sensor activator pin with the sensor cable angled towards the tire. Refer to Illustration 2.

5 Align the sensor with the pin and install the sensor on to the pin.

Note: Be sure the sensor activator pin is engaged into the sensor.

6 Rotate the sensor housing in a clockwise direction until the sensor cable is pointing away from the machine. Refer to Illustration 2.

7 Install the steer sensor cover retaining fasteners. Do not tighten the cover retaining fasteners.

8 Connect the steer sensor assembly cable to the main harness.

9 Calibrate the steer sensor. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Calibrate a Replacement Steer Sensor*.

Note: Be sure the yoke pivot pin retaining plate is fully engaged into the pivot pin and that the fasteners are securely tightened.

Right front (square-end, yellow side) and left rear (circle-end, blue side) angle sensors:

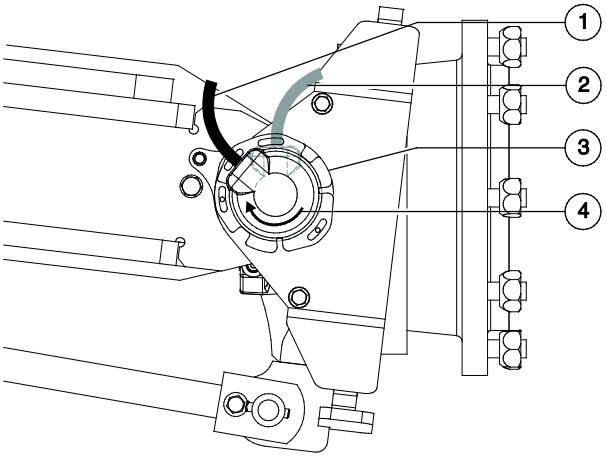


Illustration 3

1 installed position
2 starting position
3 sensor cover
4 rotation arrow

10 Position the new steer sensor assembly over the sensor activator pin with the sensor cable angled away from the tire. Refer to Illustration 3.

11 Align the sensor with the pin and install the sensor on to the pin.

Note: Be sure the sensor activator pin is engaged into the sensor.

12 Rotate the sensor housing in a clockwise direction until the sensor cable is pointing away from the machine. Refer to Illustration 2.

13 Install the steer sensor cover retaining fasteners. Do not tighten the cover retaining fasteners.

14 Connect the steer sensor assembly cable to the main harness.

15 Calibrate the steer sensor. Refer to Repair Procedure, *How to Calibrate a Replacement Steer Sensor*.

Note: Be sure the yoke pivot pin retaining plate is fully engaged into the pivot pin and that the fasteners are securely tightened.

How to Calibrate a Replacement Steer Sensor

Note: If a steer angle sensor has been removed or replaced, the steer angle sensors will need to be calibrated.

Note: Perform this procedure with the axles retracted and the tires straightened.

Note: Two people will be required to perform this procedure.

Note: Be sure the yoke pivot pin retaining plate is fully engaged into the pivot pin and that the fasteners are securely tightened.

1 Start the engine from the platform controls.

2 Select the proper steer mode. If a front (square-end) steer angle sensor has been replaced, select rear steer mode. If a rear (circle-end) steer angle sensor has been replaced, select front steer mode.

3 Have another person press down the foot switch.

4 At the new steer angle sensor, loosen the steer angle sensor cover retaining fasteners. Do not remove the fasteners or the sensor cover.

5 Rotate the sensor cover clockwise or counterclockwise until the tire is straight in relation with the other tires. Tighten the sensor cover fasteners.

Note: If available, WebGPI can also be used for this procedure.

6 Push in the red Emergency Stop button to the off position.

How to Calibrate All Steer Sensors

Note: This procedure will only need to be performed if the ground controls circuit board (TCON) has been replaced.

Note: Perform this procedure with the axles retracted and the tires straightened.

Note: Use the following chart to identify the description of each LCD screen control button used in this procedure.

Plus Minus Previous Enter

1 Locate the calibration toggle switch at the top of the ground control box. Activate calibration mode by moving the toggle switch in the left direction.

2 Temporarily install a control box door retaining fastener between the door and the box to prevent the control box door from moving the toggle switch while calibrating the machine.

3 Turn the key switch to ground controls and pull out the ground controls red Emergency Stop button to the on position.

4 Loosen the steer angle sensor cover retaining fasteners. Do not remove the fasteners or the sensor cover.

5 Using a voltmeter set to DC voltage, probe the back of the electrical connector at pins B and C.

Axle Components

6 **Left front (square-end, blue side) and right rear (circle-end, yellow side) angle sensors:** Rotate the sensor cover clockwise or counterclockwise until the voltage reading is between 1.4 to 1.6V DC. Tighten the sensor cover fasteners.

Right front (square-end, yellow side) and left rear (circle-end, blue side) angle sensors: Rotate the sensor cover clockwise or counterclockwise until the voltage reading is between 3.4 to 3.6V DC. Tighten the sensor cover fasteners.

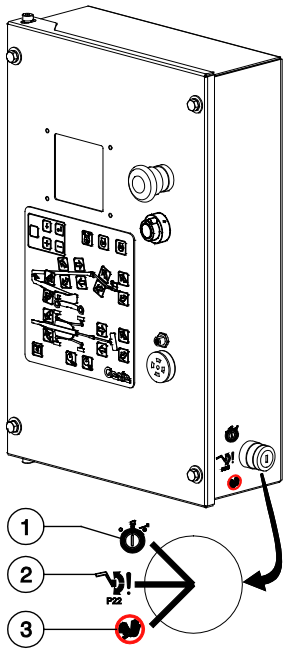
Note: If available, WebGPI can also be used for this procedure.

7 Remove the key from the main key switch. Insert the key into the bypass/recovery key switch and turn it to the bypass position.

Note: The angle sensor calibration values will not be saved correctly unless the key switch is in the bypass position and the calibration toggle switch is activated.

8 Push in the red Emergency Stop button to the off position.

9 Press and hold the **enter** button on the ground control panel while pulling out the ground controls red Emergency Stop button to the on position. Hold the **enter** button for approximately 5 seconds and then release it.



1 Run
2 Bypass
3 Recovery

10 Enter sensor calibration mode by pressing the buttons at the ground controls in the following sequence: **(plus)(enter)(enter)(plus)**.

Delete all Steer Sensor Calibrations

11 Press the **enter** or **previous** button on the LCD screen until DELETE ALL STEER SENSORS CALIBRATION is displayed.Press the **plus** button to select YES, then press the **enter** button to accept.

12 Press the **enter** or **previous** button on the LCD screen until EXIT is displayed.

13 Press the **plus** button to select YES, then press the **enter** button to accept.

14 Proceed to step 20.

Delete a Single Steer Sensor Calibration

15 To calibrate a single steer sensor, delete the specific steer sensor calibration

16 Press the **enter** or **previous** button on the LCD screen until DELETE _____ STEER SENSORS CALIBRATION is displayed. Example: DELETE BLUE END BLUE SIDE STEER SENSORS CALIBRATION (FL).

17 Press the **plus** button to select YES, then press the **enter** button to accept.

18 Press the **enter** or **previous** button on the LCD screen until EXIT is displayed.

19 Press the **plus** button to select YES, then press the **enter** button to accept.

20 Push in the red Emergency Stop button to the off position.

21 Remove the fastener that was temporarily installed. Close the control box door and install the door retaining fasteners.

Note: When the control box door is closed, the calibration toggle switch is automatically activated to exit out of calibration mode.

22 Turn the key back to the run position and remove the key from the bypass/recovery key switch. Insert the key into the main key switch and turn it to ground controls.

Note: Be sure that the bypass/recovery key switch is in the run position before attempting to operate the machine.

10-2
Steer Cylinders

How to Remove a Steer Cylinder

Note: When removing a hose assembly or fitting, the O-ring (if equipped) on the fitting and/or hose end must be replaced. All connections must be torqued to specification during installation. Refer to Specifications, *Hydraulic Hose and Fitting Torque Specifications.*

Note: Perform this procedure with the axles extended.

1 Tag, disconnect and plug the hydraulic hoses from the steer cylinder. Cap the fittings on the cylinder.

⚠WARNING Bodily injury hazard. Spraying hydraulic oil can penetrate and burn skin. Loosen hydraulic connections very slowly to allow the oil pressure to dissipate gradually. Do not allow oil to squirt or spray.

2 Support the steer cylinder with a suitable lifting device. Protect the cylinder rod from damage.

3 Remove the pin retaining fasteners from both steer cylinder pivot pins.

4 Use a soft metal drift to remove the pins.

5 Remove the steering cylinder from the machine.

⚠CAUTION Crushing hazard. The steer cylinder may become unbalanced and fall if not properly supported by the lifting device when removed from the machine.

Axle Components

10-3
Axle Extension Cylinders

How to Remove an Axle Extension Cylinder

Note: When removing a hose assembly or fitting, the O-ring (if equipped) on the fitting and/or hose end must be replaced. All connections must be torqued to specification during installation. Refer to Specifications, *Hydraulic Hose and Fitting Torque Specifications.*

Note: Perform this procedure with the machine on a firm, level surface and in the stowed position with the axles extended.

Note: This procedure will require the use of a portable hydraulic power unit.

1 Tag, disconnect and plug the hydraulic hoses from the axle extension cylinder. Cap the fittings on the cylinder.

⚠WARNING Bodily injury hazard. Spraying hydraulic oil can penetrate and burn skin. Loosen hydraulic connections very slowly to allow the oil pressure to dissipate gradually. Do not allow oil to squirt or spray.

2 Remove the axle extension limit switch cover fasteners. Remove the cover.

3 Remove the limit switch mounting fasteners and remove the limit switch. Do not disconnect the wiring.

4 Connect the hydraulic hoses from a portable hydraulic power unit to the axle extension cylinder.

Note: Connect the pressure hose from the power unit to the "R" port of the cylinder and the return hose from the power unit to the "E" port on the cylinder.

5 Support the axle extension cylinder with a suitable lifting device. Protect the cylinder rod from damage.

6 Remove the pin retaining fasteners from both axle extension cylinder pivot pins.

7 Use a soft metal drift to remove the pins.

8 Using the portable hydraulic power unit, retract the axle extension cylinder until the ends of the cylinder clear the axles.

9 Remove the axle extension cylinder from the machine.

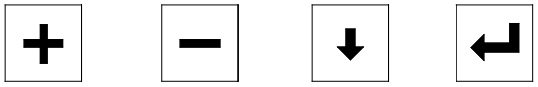
⚠CAUTION Crushing hazard. The axle extension cylinder may become unbalanced and fall if not properly supported by the lifting device.

10-4
Axle Angle Sensors

The axle angle sensors measure the axle angle and communicates that information to the ground controls ECM. There are two axle angle sensors. They are located on opposite axle pivot pins at each end of the chassis.

How to Calibrate the Axle Angle Sensors

Note: Use the following chart to identify the description of each LCD screen control button used in this procedure.



Plus Minus Previous Enter

Note: If an axle angle sensor has been removed or replaced, the axle angle sensors will need to be calibrated.

Note: Perform this procedure with the axles fully retracted and the boom in the stowed position.

Note: Two people will be required to perform this procedure.

1 Turn the key switch to platform controls and pull out the red Emergency Stop button to the on position at both ground and platform controls.

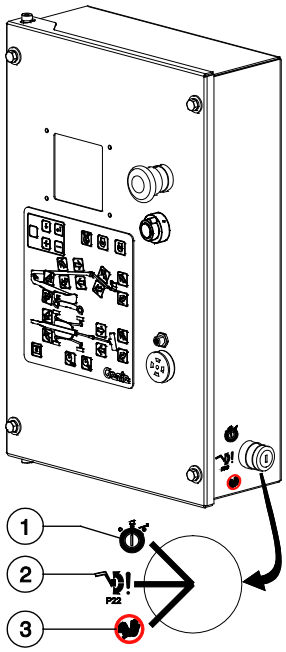
2 Open the ground control box.

3 Locate the calibration toggle switch at the top of the ground control box. Activate calibration mode by moving the toggle switch in the left direction.

4 Temporarily install a control box door retaining fastener between the door and the box to prevent the control box door from moving the toggle switch while calibrating the machine.

5 Remove the key from the main key switch. Insert the key into the bypass/recovery key switch and turn it to the bypass position.

Note: The angle sensor calibration values will not be saved correctly unless the key switch is in the bypass position and the calibration toggle switch is activated.



1 Run
2 Bypass
3 Recovery

6 Press and hold the **enter** button on the ground control panel while pulling out the ground controls red Emergency Stop button to the on position. Hold the **enter** button for approximately 5 seconds and then release it.

Axle Components

7 Enter sensor calibration mode by pressing the buttons at the ground controls in the following sequence: **(plus)(enter)(enter)(plus)**.

8 Press the **enter** or **previous** button on the LCD screen until DELETE AXLE ANGLE SENSORS CALIBRATION is displayed.Press the **plus** button to select YES, then press the **enter** button to accept.

9 At the AXLE ANGLES FULLY RETRACTED screen, press the **plus** button to select YES, then press the **enter** button to accept.

10 When the AXLE ANGLES FULLY EXTENDED screen is displayed, start the engine and fully extend the axles.

Note: If the system exits out of calibration mode when the engine is started, repeat step 10.

11 Press the **plus** button to select YES, then press the **enter** button to accept.

12 Press the **enter** or **previous** button on the LCD screen until EXIT is displayed.

13 Press the **plus** button to select YES, then press the **enter** button to accept.

14 Press and hold the engine start button for approximately 5 seconds to shut off the engine and to save the calibration settings.

Note: Do not turn the engine off with the key switch or red Emergency Stop button or all calibration points or values will not be saved.

15 Wait approximately 20 seconds and turn the machine off by pressing the red Emergency Stop button in.

16 Remove the fastener that was temporarily installed. Close the control box door and install the door retaining fasteners.

Note: When the control box door is closed, the calibration toggle switch is automatically activated to exit out of calibration mode.

17 Turn the key back to the run position and remove the key from the bypass/recovery key switch. Insert the key into the main key switch and turn it to ground controls.

Note: Be sure that the bypass/recovery key switch is in the run position before attempting to operate the machine.

Fault Codes

Observe and Obey:

- ☑ Troubleshooting and repair procedures shall be completed by a person trained and qualified on the repair of this machine
- ☑ Immediately tag and remove from service a damaged or malfunctioning machine.
- ☑ Repair any machine damage or malfunction before operating the machine.
- ☑ Unless otherwise specified, perform each procedure with the machine in the following configuration:
  - Machine parked on a firm, level surface
  - Key switch in the off position with the key removed
  - The red Emergency Stop button in the off position at both ground and platform controls
  - Wheels chocked
  - All external AC power supply disconnected from the machine
  - Boom in the stowed position
  - Turntable secured with the turntable rotation lock
  - Welder disconnected from the machine (if equipped with the weld cable to platform option)

Before Troubleshooting:

- ☑ Read, understand and obey the safety rules and operating instructions in the appropriate operator's manual on your machine.
- ☑ Be sure that all necessary tools and test equipment are available and ready for use.
- ☑ Read each appropriate fault code thoroughly. Attempting short cuts may produce hazardous conditions.
- ☑ Be aware of the following hazards and follow generally accepted safe workshop practices.

⚠WARNING Electrocution/burn hazard. Contact with electrically charged circuits could result in death or serious injury. Remove all rings, watches and other jewelry.

Note: Two persons will be required to safely perform some troubleshooting procedures.

Fault Codes

Error Source	Error Type	Effects	Recovery Actions
Primary Ext/Ret Joystick	Value at 5.0 V	Limited Speed and Direction frozen at zero and neutral, Alarm sounds	Check for damaged wiring to the joystick. Check the connections to ensure the connector terminals have not backed out. Substitute a known good joystick. If necessary replace and recalibrate joystick.
	Value Too High		
	Value Too Low		
	Value at 0 V		
	Not calibrated	Joystick Speed and Direction frozen at zero and neutral	Calibrate Joystick
	Just calibrated	Initiate one second beep of audible warning device	Self-clearing (transient)
Primary Up/Down Joystick	Value at 5.0 V	Limited Speed and Direction frozen at zero and neutral, Alarm sounds	Check for damaged wiring to the joystick. Check the connections to ensure the connector terminals have not backed out. Substitute a known good joystick. If necessary replace and recalibrate joystick.
	Value Too High		
	Value Too Low		
	Value at 0 V		
	Not calibrated	Joystick Speed and Direction frozen at zero and neutral	Calibrate Joystick
	Just calibrated	Initiate one second beep of audible warning device	Self-clearing (transient)
Steer Joystick	Value at 5.0 V	Limited Speed and Direction frozen at zero and neutral, Alarm sounds	Check for damaged wiring to the joystick. Check the connections to ensure the connector terminals have not backed out. Substitute a known good joystick. If necessary replace and recalibrate joystick.
	Value Too High		
	Value Too Low		
	Value at 0 V		
	Not calibrated	Joystick Speed and Direction frozen at zero and neutral	Calibrate Joystick
	Just calibrated	Initiate one second beep of audible warning device	Self-clearing (transient)

Fault Codes

Error Source	Error Type	Effects	Recovery Actions
Primary Boom Up/Down buttons on TCON	Fault Check (both buttons pressed)	Primary Boom Up/Down disabled, display message on LCD	Check ribbon and connector from membrane switch. If necessary replace membrane switch.
Primary Boom Ext/Ret buttons on TCON	Fault Check (both buttons pressed)	Primary Boom Ext/Retract disabled, display message on LCD	Check ribbon and connector from membrane switch. If necessary replace membrane switch.
Primary Boom Length	Fault Check (unknown length)	Stop all boom functions, allow only boom retract, once fully retracted allow boom down. Display message on LCD	Check primary boom retracted and extended switches for proper contact with the boom. Readjust or shim switch as necessary.
Primary Up/Down Speed	Not calibrated	Display message on LCD and allow operation at default speed	Perform auto calibrate procedure.
Primary Extend/Retract Speed	Not calibrated	Display message on LCD and allow operation at default speed	Perform auto calibrate procedure.
Primary Boom Extend Valve	Fault Check	Limited Speed and Direction frozen at zero and neutral, Alarm sounds	Check for defective or damaged wiring. Check for an open or shorted valve coil. Repair or replace as necessary.
Primary Boom Retract Valve			
Primary Boom Up Valve			
Primary Boom Down Valve			
Primary Lock-Out Valve #1			
Primary Lock-Out Valve #2			
Secondary Boom Up/Down/Extend/Retract Flow Valve	Not calibrated	Normal function except threshold for one or the other direction is zero. Display message on LCD	Perform calibration procedure
	Just calibrated	Initiate one second beep of audible warning device	Self-clearing (transient)
	Value Too High	Limited Speed and Direction frozen at zero and neutral, Alarm sounds	Check for opens in the wiring or a bad ground. Replace coil if necessary
	Value Too Low	Limited Speed and Direction frozen at zero and neutral, Alarm sounds	Check for opens in the wiring or a bad ground. Replace coil if necessary

Fault Codes

Error Source	Error Type	Effects	Recovery Actions
Safety Switch P3	Fault Check	Display message on LCD P3 SAFETY SWITCH FAULT	Internal fault not on Z135
Safety Switch P6R1	Fault Check	Display message on LCD P6R1 SAFETY SWITCH FAULT	Check wiring for circuit P53LS (white/black wire) for damage resulting in shorts or opens. Repair wiring or replace TCON.
Safety Switch P6R2	Fault Check	Display message on LCD P6R2 SAFETY SWITCH FAULT	Check wiring for circuit P54ENG (black/white wire) for damage resulting in shorts or opens. Repair wiring or replace TCON.
Safety Switch P7	Fault Check	Display message on LCD P7 SAFETY SWITCH FAULT	Check wiring for circuit S56PRV (red wire) for damage resulting in shorts or opens. Repair wiring or replace TCON.
Safety Switch P7R	Fault Check	Display message on LCD P7R SAFETY SWITCH FAULT	Function enable button was held down during startup. Recycle power with the function button released.
Safety Switch DCON P7R	Fault Check	Display message on LCD DCON P7R SAFETY SWITCH FAULT	Check wiring for circuit S56PRV (red wire) for damage resulting in shorts or opens. Repair wiring or replace DCON.
Safety Switch P9A	Fault Check	Display message on LCD P9A SAFETY SWITCH FAULT	Check wiring for circuit P53LS (white/black wire) for damage resulting in shorts or opens. Repair wiring or replace TCON.
Safety Switch P9B	Fault Check	Display message on LCD P9B SAFETY SWITCH FAULT	Boom has violated the safety limits resulting in the engine being shut off as a safety feature. Use aux to get the boom back into operational limits. Check P54ENG and P58LS between SCON and TCON for damage. Check SCON chart for possible fault conditions.

Fault Codes

Error Source	Error Type	Effects	Recovery Actions
Safety Switch P10	Fault Check	Display message on LCD P10 SAFETY SWITCH FAULT	Recycle power
Safety Switch P11	Fault Check	Display message on LCD P11 SAFETY SWITCH FAULT	Recycle power and check wiring on circuit S140ENL (orange/black) between SCON and TCON. Check SCON chart for possible faults.
Safety Switch P12	Fault Check	Display message on LCD P12 SAFETY SWITCH FAULT	Recycle power
Safety Switch P14	Fault Check	Display message on LCD P14 SAFETY SWITCH FAULT	Recycle power
Safety Switch P18	Fault Check	Display message on LCD P18 SAFETY SWITCH FAULT	Recycle power
Safety Switch P22	Fault Check	Display message on LCD P22 SAFETY SWITCH FAULT	Re-level platform. Check for wiring damage on circuit P56PRV (red/white).
Safety Switch P22R	Fault Check	Display message on LCD P22R SAFETY SWITCH FAULT	Re-level platform. Repair or replace PCON.
Safety Switch P30	Fault Check	Display message on LCD P30 SAFETY SWITCH FAULT	Recycle power and check wiring on circuit S140ENL (orange/black) between SCON and TCON. Check SCON chart for possible faults.
Safety Switch P38	Fault Check	Display message on LCD P38 SAFETY SWITCH FAULT	Recycle power and check wiring on circuit S137PLL (red/white) between SCON and TCON. Check SCON chart for possible faults.
Safety Switch P39	Fault Check	Display message on LCD P39 SAFETY SWITCH FAULT	Recycle power and check wiring on circuit S139TRF (white/red) between SCON and TCON. Check SCON chart for possible faults.

Fault Codes

Error Source	Error Type	Effects	Recovery Actions
Platform Overload	Fault Check (if active)	Display message on LCD. Disable all functions from PCON. Limit functions at TCON to AUX Power. FUEL POWER P9B FAULT	Check for an overload in the platform. Check the overload switch mounted on the platform support.
Footswitch Timeout	Calibration check	Display message on LCD	Recycle power
Engine Speed	Range Check (underspeed)	Display message on LCD	Engine is running below 50 RPM. Check fuel system.
Oil Pressure	Range Check (low oil pressure)	Display message on LCD	Oil pressure is low. Check sender and oil level.
Water/Oil Temperature	Range Check (high temp)	Display message on LCD	Engine is overheating. Check sender, water or oil level or radiator/heat exchanger.
Oil Pressure Sender	Fault Check	Display message on LCD	Check wiring to senders for opens or shorts. Repair or replace senders.
Water/Oil Temp Sender			
Axle Extend/Retract Buttons	Fault Check (both buttons pressed)	Axle extend/retract disabled. Display message on LCD	Check ribbon and connector from membrane switch. If necessary replace membrane switch.
Axle Valve	Fault Check	Limited Speed and Direction frozen at zero and neutral, Alarm sounds	Check for defective or damaged wiring. Check for an open or shorted valve coil. Repair or replace as necessary.
DCON CAN Bus	Fault Check	Display message on LCD Disable propel	Check CAN bus wiring from TCON to DCON through rotator. Repair or replace wiring or DCON.
CAN Bus	Fault Check	Display message on LCD	Check CAN bus wiring from TCON to SCON/PCON. Repair or replace wiring or SCON/PCON.

Fault Codes

Error Source	Error Type	Effects	Recovery Actions
Primary Boom Up/Down Flow Valve	Not calibrated	Normal function except threshold for one or the other direction is zero. Display message on LCD	Calibrate Thresholds
	Just calibrated	Initiate one second beep of audible warning device	Self-clearing (transient)
	Value Too High	Limited Speed and Direction frozen at zero and neutral, Alarm sounds	Check for opens in the wiring or a bad ground. Replace coil if necessary
	Value Too Low		
Primary Boom Extend/Retract Flow Valve	Not calibrated	Normal function except threshold for one or the other direction is zero. Display message on LCD	Calibrate Thresholds
	Just calibrated	Initiate one second beep of audible warning device	Self-clearing (transient)
	Value Too High	Limited Speed and Direction frozen at zero and neutral, Alarm sounds	Check for opens in the wiring or a bad ground. Replace coil if necessary
	Value Too Low		
Operational Primary Boom Angle Sensor	Value at 5.0 V	Primary up, Secondary up/down and Extend disabled, Alarm sounds	Check for an open ground circuit going to the sensor
	Value Too High	Primary up, Secondary up/down and Extend disabled, Alarm sounds	Sensor is out of range. Check sensor and actuating pin for proper installation. Repair or replace sensor and recalibrate.
	Value Too Low		
	Value at 0 V	Primary up, Secondary up/down and Extend disabled, Alarm sounds	Check for 5.0 VDC at the sensor. Check for damaged wiring going to the sensor. Check that the % .0 VDC LED is lit on the TCON board. Repair or replace as necessary
	Out of Tolerance	Primary up, Secondary up/down and Extend disabled, Alarm sounds	Recalibrate sensor
	Not calibrated	Primary up only active from TCON, activate alarm	Perform calibration procedure per service manual
	Just calibrated	Initiate one second beep of audible warning device	Self-clearing (transient)

Fault Codes

Error Source	Error Type	Effects	Recovery Actions
Safety Primary Boom Angle Sensor	Value at 5.0 V	Primary up, Secondary up/down and Extend disabled, Alarm sounds	Check for an open ground circuit going to the sensor
	Value Too High	Primary up, Secondary up/down and Extend disabled, Alarm sounds	Sensor is out of range. Check sensor and actuating pin for proper installation. Repair or replace sensor and recalibrate.
	Value Too Low		
	Value at 0 V	Primary up, Secondary up/down and Extend disabled, Alarm sounds	Check for 5.0 VDC at the sensor. Check for damaged wiring going to the sensor. Check that the % .0 VDC LED is lit on the TCON board. Repair or replace as necessary
	Out of Tolerance	Primary up, Secondary up/down and Extend disabled, Alarm sounds	Recalibrate sensor
	Not calibrated	Primary up only active from TCON, activate alarm	Perform calibration procedure per service manual
	Just calibrated	Initiate one second beep of audible warning device	Self-clearing (transient)
Secondary Boom Joystick	Value at 5.0 V	Primary up, Secondary up/down and Extend disabled, Alarm sounds	Check for damaged wiring to the joystick. Check the connections to ensure the connector terminals have not backed out. Substitute a known good joystick. If necessary replace and recalibrate joystick.
	Value Too High		
	Value Too Low		
	Value at 0 V		
	Not calibrated	Joystick Speed and Direction frozen at zero and neutral	
	Just calibrated	Initiate one second beep of audible warning device	Self-clearing (transient)
Secondary Boom Up/Extend/Down/Retract Switches on TCON	Fault Check (both buttons pressed)	Secondary boom Up/Ext/Down/Retract disabled Display message on LCD	Check ribbon and connector from membrane switch. If necessary replace membrane switch.
Secondary Boom Up/Down Speed	Not calibrated	Display message on LCD and allow operation at default speed	See service manual on how to perform this procedure.

Fault Codes

Error Source	Error Type	Effects	Recovery Actions
Secondary Boom Extend Valve	Fault Check	Limited Speed and Direction frozen at zero and neutral, Alarm sounds	Check for defective or damaged wiring. Check for an open or shorted valve coil. Repair or replace as necessary.
Secondary Boom Retract Valve	Fault Check	Limited Speed and Direction frozen at zero and neutral, Alarm sounds	Check for defective or damaged wiring. Check for an open or shorted valve coil. Repair or replace as necessary.
Secondary Boom Up Valve	Fault Check	Limited Speed and Direction frozen at zero and neutral, Alarm sounds	Check for defective or damaged wiring. Check for an open or shorted valve coil. Repair or replace as necessary.
Secondary Boom Down Valve	Fault Check	Limited Speed and Direction frozen at zero and neutral, Alarm sounds	Check for defective or damaged wiring. Check for an open or shorted valve coil. Repair or replace as necessary.
Secondary Boom Extend Sequence Valve	Fault Check	Limited Speed and Direction frozen at zero and neutral, Alarm sounds	Check for defective or damaged wiring. Check for an open or shorted valve coil. Repair or replace as necessary.
Secondary Boom Down Sequence Valve	Fault Check	Limited Speed and Direction frozen at zero and neutral, Alarm sounds	Check for defective or damaged wiring. Check for an open or shorted valve coil. Repair or replace as necessary.
Operational Secondary Boom Angle Sensor	Value at 5.0 V	Primary up, Secondary up/down and Extend disabled, Alarm sounds	Check for an open ground circuit going to the sensor
	Value Too High	Primary up, Secondary up/down and Extend disabled, Alarm sounds	Sensor is out of range. Check sensor and actuating pin for proper installation. Repair or replace sensor and recalibrate.
	Value Too Low		
	Value at 0 V	Primary up, Secondary up/down and Extend disabled, Alarm sounds	Check for 5.0 VDC at the sensor. Check for damaged wiring going to the sensor. Check that the % .0 VDC LED is lit on the TCON board. Repair or replace as necessary
	Out of Tolerance	Primary up, Secondary up/down and Extend disabled, Alarm sounds	Recalibrate sensor
	Not calibrated	Secondary up only active from TCON, activate alarm	Perform calibration procedure per service manual
	Just calibrated	Initiate one second beep of audible warning device	Self-clearing (transient)

Fault Codes

Error Source	Error Type	Effects	Recovery Actions
Safety Secondary Boom Angle Sensor	Value at 5.0 V	Primary up, Secondary up/down and Extend disabled, Alarm sounds	Check for an open ground circuit going to the sensor
	Value Too High	Primary up, Secondary up/down and Extend disabled, Alarm sounds	Sensor is out of range. Check sensor and actuating pin for proper installation. Repair or replace sensor and recalibrate.
	Value Too Low		
	Value at 0 V	Primary up, Secondary up/down and Extend disabled, Alarm sounds	Check for 5.0 VDC at the sensor. Check for damaged wiring going to the sensor. Check that the % .0 VDC LED is lit on the TCON board. Repair or replace as necessary
	Out of Tolerance	Primary up, Secondary up/down and Extend disabled, Alarm sounds	Recalibrate sensor
	Not calibrated	Secondary up only active from TCON, activate alarm	Perform calibration procedure per service manual
	Just calibrated	Initiate one second beep of audible warning device	Self-clearing (transient)
Operational Turntable Level Sensor X Direction	Value at 5.0 V	Flash unit out of level icon and LED and activate alarm	Check that SCON is grounded
	Value Too High		Replace SCON
	Value Too Low		
	Value at 0 V		
	Out of Tolerance		
	Just calibrated	Initiate one second beep of audible warning device	Self-clearing (transient)
Safety Turntable Level Sensor X Direction	Value at 5.0 V	Flash unit out of level icon and LED and activate alarm	Check that SCON is grounded
	Value Too High		Replace SCON
	Value Too Low		
	Value at 0 V		
	Out of Tolerance		
	Just calibrated	Initiate one second beep of audible warning device	Self-clearing (transient)

Fault Codes

Error Source	Error Type	Effects	Recovery Actions
Turntable Rotate Joystick	Value at 5.0 V	Limited Speed and Direction frozen at zero and neutral, Alarm sounds	Check for damaged wiring to the joystick. Check the connections to ensure the connector terminals have not backed out. Substitute a known good joystick. If necessary replace and recalibrate joystick.
	Value Too High		
	Value Too Low		
	Value at 0 V		
	Not calibrated	Joystick Speed and Direction frozen at zero and neutral	Calibrate Joystick
	Just calibrated	Initiate one second beep of audible warning device	Self-clearing (transient)
Turntable Rotate Buttons on TCON	Fault Check (both buttons pressed)	Turntable rotate disabled Display message on LCD	Check ribbon and connector from membrane switch. If necessary replace membrane switch.
Turntable Rotate Speed	Not calibrated	Display message on LCD and allow operation at default speed	Perform auto calibrate procedure.
Turntable Rotate Flow Valve	Not calibrated	Normal function except threshold for one or the other direction is zero. Display message on LCD	Perform calibration procedure
	Just calibrated	Initiate one second beep of audible warning device	Self-clearing (transient)
	Value Too High	Limited Speed and Direction frozen at zero and neutral, Alarm sounds	Check for opens in the wiring or a bad ground. Replace coil if necessary
	Value Too Low		Check for shorts to ground in the wiring. Replace coil if necessary
Turntable Rotate Clockwise Valve	Fault Check	Limited Speed and Direction frozen at zero and neutral, Alarm sounds	Check for defective or damaged wiring. Check for an open or shorted valve coil. Repair or replace as necessary.
Turntable Rotate Counterclockwise Valve			
Operational Turntable Level Sensor Y Direction	Value at 5.0 V	Primary up and extend disabled, Alarm sounds	Check that SCON is grounded
	Value Too High		Replace SCON
	Value Too Low		
	Value at 0 V		
	Out of Tolerance		
	Just calibrated	Initiate one second beep of audible warning device	Self-clearing (transient)

Fault Codes

Error Source	Error Type	Effects	Recovery Actions
Safety Turntable Level Sensor Y Direction	Value at 5.0 V	Primary up and extend disabled, Alarm sounds	Check that SCON is grounded
	Value Too High		Replace SCON
	Value Too Low		
	Value at 0 V		
	Out of Tolerance		
	Just calibrated	Initiate one second beep of audible warning device	Self-clearing (transient)
Platform Level Sensor Y Direction	Value at 5.0 V	Primary up and extend disabled, Alarm sounds	Check that SCON is grounded
	Value Too High		
	Value Too Low		
	Value at 0 V		
	Just calibrated	Initiate one second beep of audible warning device	Self-clearing (transient)
Platform Rotate Clockwise Valve	Fault Check	Fault Check	Check for defective or damaged wiring. Check for an open or shorted valve coil. Repair or replace as necessary.
Platform Rotate Counterclockwise Valve			
Jib Extend /Retract Valve	Fault Check	Fault Check	Check for defective or damaged wiring. Check for an open or shorted valve coil. Repair or replace as necessary.
Jib Up/Down Flow Valve(s)	Not calibrated	Normal function except threshold for one or the other direction is zero. Display message on LCD	Perform calibration procedure
	Just calibrated	Initiate one second beep of audible warning device	Self-clearing (transient)
	Value Too High	Limited Speed and Direction frozen at zero and neutral, Alarm sounds	Check for opens in the wiring or a bad ground. Replace coil if necessary
	Value Too Low		

Fault Codes

Error Source	Error Type	Effects	Recovery Actions
Jib Level (Bellcrank) Up/Down Flow Valve(s)	Not calibrated	Normal function except threshold for one or the other direction is zero. Display message on LCD	Perform calibration procedure
	Just calibrated	Initiate one second beep of audible warning device	Self-clearing (transient)
	Value Too High	Limited Speed and Direction frozen at zero and neutral, Alarm sounds	Check for opens in the wiring or a bad ground. Replace coil if necessary
	Value Too Low		
Platform Level Up / Platform Level Down Flow Valve	Not calibrated	Normal function except threshold for one or the other direction is zero. Display message on LCD	Perform calibration procedure
	Just calibrated	Initiate one second beep of audible warning device	Self-clearing (transient)
	Value Too High	Limited Speed and Direction frozen at zero and neutral, Alarm sounds	Check for opens in the wiring or a bad ground. Replace coil if necessary
	Value Too Low	Limited Speed and Direction frozen at zero and neutral, Alarm sounds	Check for shorts to ground in the wiring. Replace coil if necessary
Platform Rotate Switches	Fault Check (both closed)	Affected functions disabled. Display message on LCD	Check ribbon and connector from membrane switch. If necessary replace membrane switch.
Jib Up/Down Joystick	Value at 5.0 V	Limited Speed and Direction frozen at zero and neutral, Alarm sounds	Check for damaged wiring to the joystick. Check the connections to ensure the connector terminals have not backed out. Substitute a known good joystick. If necessary replace and recalibrate joystick.
	Value Too High		
	Value Too Low		
	Value at 0 V		
	Not calibrated	Joystick Speed and Direction frozen at zero and neutral	
	Just calibrated	Initiate one second beep of audible warning device	Self-clearing (transient)

Fault Codes

Error Source	Error Type	Effects	Recovery Actions
Jib Extend/Retract Joystick	Value at 5.0 V	Limited Speed and Direction frozen at zero and neutral, Alarm sounds	Check for damaged wiring to the joystick. Check the connections to ensure the connector terminals have not backed out. Substitute a known good joystick. If necessary replace and recalibrate joystick.
	Value Too High		
	Value Too Low		
	Value at 0 V		
	Not calibrated	Joystick Speed and Direction frozen at zero and neutral	Calibrate Joystick
	Just calibrated	Initiate one second beep of audible warning device	Self-clearing (transient)
Platform Rotate Joystick	Value at 5.0 V	Limited Speed and Direction frozen at zero and neutral, Alarm sounds	Power up controller with problem corrected.
	Value Too High		
	Value Too Low		
	Value at 0 V		
	Not calibrated	Joystick Speed and Direction frozen at zero and neutral	Calibrate Joystick
	Just calibrated	Initiate one second beep of audible warning device	Self-clearing (transient)
Front Axle Angle Sensor	Value at 5.0 V	Primary up, Secondary up/down and Extend disabled, Alarm sounds	Check for an open ground circuit going to the sensor
	Value Too High	Primary up, Secondary up/down and Extend disabled, Alarm sounds	Sensor is out of range. Check sensor and actuating pin for proper installation. Repair or replace sensor and recalibrate.
	Value Too Low		
	Value at 0 V	Primary up, Secondary up/down and Extend disabled, Alarm sounds	Check for 5.0 VDC at the sensor. Check for damaged wiring going to the sensor. Check that the % .0 VDC LED is lit on the TCON board. Repair or replace as necessary
	Out of Tolerance	Primary up, Secondary up/down and Extend disabled, Alarm sounds	Recalibrate sensor
	Not calibrated	Primary up only active from TCON, activate alarm	Perform calibration procedure per service manual
	Just calibrated	Initiate one second beep of audible warning device	Self-clearing (transient)

Fault Codes

Error Source	Error Type	Effects	Recovery Actions
Rear Axle Angle Sensor	Value at 5.0 V	Primary up, Secondary up/down and Extend disabled, Alarm sounds	Check for an open ground circuit going to the sensor
	Value Too High	Primary up, Secondary up/down and Extend disabled, Alarm sounds	Sensor is out of range. Check sensor and actuating pin for proper installation. Repair or replace sensor and recalibrate.
	Value Too Low		
	Value at 0 V	Primary up, Secondary up/down and Extend disabled, Alarm sounds	Check for 5.0 VDC at the sensor. Check for damaged wiring going to the sensor. Check that the % .0 VDC LED is lit on the TCON board. Repair or replace as necessary
	Out of Tolerance	Primary up, Secondary up/down and Extend disabled, Alarm sounds	Recalibrate sensor
	Not calibrated	Primary up only active from TCON, activate alarm	Perform calibration procedure per service manual
	Just calibrated	Initiate one second beep of audible warning device	Self-clearing (transient)
Propel Joystick	Value at 5.0 V	Limited Speed and Direction frozen at zero and neutral, Alarm sounds	Check for damaged wiring to the joystick. Check the connections to ensure the connector terminals have not backed out. Substitute a known good joystick. If necessary replace and recalibrate joystick.
	Value Too High		
	Value Too Low		
	Value at 0 V		
	Not calibrated	Joystick Speed and Direction frozen at zero and neutral	Calibrate Thresholds
	Just calibrated	Initiate one second beep of audible warning device	Self-clearing (transient)
Propel Valves Forward/Reverse Propel EDC Forward/Reverse	Not calibrated	Joystick Speed and Direction frozen at zero and neutral	Calibrate Thresholds
	Just calibrated	Initiate one second beep of audible warning device	Self-clearing (transient)
	Value Too High	Limited Speed and Direction frozen at zero and neutral, Alarm sounds	Check for opens in the wiring or a bad ground. Replace coil if necessary
	Value Too Low		Check for shorts to ground in the wiring. Replace coil if necessary
Motor Valve Speed	Fault Check	Limited Speed and Direction frozen at zero and neutral, Alarm sounds	Check for defective or damaged wiring. Check for an open or shorted valve coil. Repair or replace as necessary.
Brake Valve			

Fault Codes

Error Source	Error Type	Effects	Recovery Actions
Left Front Steer Angle Sensor	Value at 5.0 V	Primary up, Secondary up/down and Extend disabled, Alarm sounds	Check for an open ground circuit going to the sensor
	Value Too High	Primary up, Secondary up/down and Extend disabled, Alarm sounds	Sensor is out of range. Check sensor and actuating pin for proper installation. Repair or replace sensor and recalibrate.
	Value Too Low		
	Value at 0 V	Primary up, Secondary up/down and Extend disabled, Alarm sounds	Check for 5.0 VDC at the sensor. Check for damaged wiring going to the sensor. Check that the % .0 VDC LED is lit on the TCON board. Repair or replace as necessary
Right Front Steer Angle Sensor	Value at 5.0 V	Primary up, Secondary up/down and Extend disabled, Alarm sounds	Check for an open ground circuit going to the sensor
	Value Too High	Primary up, Secondary up/down and Extend disabled, Alarm sounds	Sensor is out of range. Check sensor and actuating pin for proper installation. Repair or replace sensor and recalibrate.
	Value Too Low		
	Value at 0 V	Primary up, Secondary up/down and Extend disabled, Alarm sounds	Check for 5.0 VDC at the sensor. Check for damaged wiring going to the sensor. Check that the % .0 VDC LED is lit on the TCON board. Repair or replace as necessary
Left Rear Steer Angle Sensor	Value at 5.0 V	Primary up, Secondary up/down and Extend disabled, Alarm sounds	Check for an open ground circuit going to the sensor
	Value Too High	Primary up, Secondary up/down and Extend disabled, Alarm sounds	Sensor is out of range. Check sensor and actuating pin for proper installation. Repair or replace sensor and recalibrate.
	Value Too Low		
	Value at 0 V	Primary up, Secondary up/down and Extend disabled, Alarm sounds	Check for 5.0 VDC at the sensor. Check for damaged wiring going to the sensor. Check that the % .0 VDC LED is lit on the TCON board. Repair or replace as necessary

Fault Codes

Error Source	Error Type	Effects	Recovery Actions
Right Rear Steer Angle Sensor	Value at 5.0 V	Primary up, Secondary up/down and Extend disabled, Alarm sounds	Check for an open ground circuit going to the sensor
	Value Too High	Primary up, Secondary up/down and Extend disabled, Alarm sounds	Sensor is out of range. Check sensor and actuating pin for proper installation. Repair or replace sensor and recalibrate.
	Value Too Low		
	Value at 0 V	Primary up, Secondary up/down and Extend disabled, Alarm sounds	Check for 5.0 VDC at the sensor. Check for damaged wiring going to the sensor. Check that the % .0 VDC LED is lit on the TCON board. Repair or replace as necessary
Steer Valves - LF, RF, LR, RR	Fault Check	Limited Speed and Direction frozen at zero and neutral, Alarm sounds	Check for defective or damaged wiring. Check for an open or shorted valve coil. Repair or replace as necessary.

Fault Codes

Error Source	Error Type	Effects	Recovery Actions
Secondary Boom Switch Timeout	Too much time has elapsed from when LSS1RO is released and LSS1RS is released on extend and LSS1RS is engged and LSS1RO is engaged. Or the joystick was engaged three times in the interval.	Inhibit Secondary Boom Extend if the fault occurs.	If the fault occurs on extend, retract boom until LSS1RO is engaged and try again. Check LSS1RS and LSS1RO for physical damage and proper operation.
Secondary Boom Switches Intermittence Fault (LSS1RS Fault)	Either LSS1RS or LSS1RO have changed state without a secondary boom extend/retract command or they have changed state when the secondary boom is not fully raised.	Inhibit Secondary Boom Down until the fault is cleared.	Check switch for proper operation or damage. Use TCON display menu or laptop with WebGPI to clear faults.
Jib Angle Sensor Operational (RSJ1AO)	Value at 5.0 V	Limited Speed and Direction frozen at zero and neutral, Alarm sounds	Power up controller with problem corrected.
	Value Too High		
	Value Too Low		
	Value at 0 V		
SCON Tilt Sensor	Calibration check	Display X direction and Y direction not calibrated	Re-power after entering tilt x axis and y axis matrix information
LSS1RO Fault	LSS1RO did not switch within a specified time after the secondary boom was raised	Inhibit secondary boom extend and sound an audible warning	Check switch for proper operation or damage. Use TCON display menu or laptop with WebGPI to clear faults.

Fault Codes

P_38 - Propel	P_39 - Turntable Rotate	P_10 - Primary Boom Extend	P_11 - Primary / Secondary Up	P_9B - Ignition/Fuel	P_30 - Secondary Extend/Down

	P_38	P_39	P_10	P_11	P_30	P_9B
Turntable tilt Y axis (+5°, secondary boom not stowed)	OFF	OFF		OFF	OFF	
Primary Boom angle (crosscheck)	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	
Secondary Boom angle (crosscheck)	OFF	OFF		OFF	OFF	
Secondary Boom safety (not retracted and not raised)				OFF	OFF	OFF
Axle safety not stowed (not faulted primary and secondary stowed)		OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	
Axle crosscheck angle sensor versus safety switch		OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	
Axle(not fully extended) and Turntable rotate (stowed and in drive disable zone)	OFF	OFF				
Turntable tilt angle (crosscheck SCON internal sensors 3 in a delta configuration)	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	
Primary Boom safety (max angle)	OFF	OFF		OFF	OFF	OFF
Loss of CAN	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
LSS1RS disconnected (SCON pin #2)				OFF	OFF	
Platform Overload (SCON pin #1)						OFF
Secondary Boom length (crosscheck LSS1RS and LSS1RO)				OFF	OFF	OFF

Deutz TD 2.9 L4 Engine Fault Codes

SPN = Suspect Parameter Number
FMI = Failure Mode Identifier
KWP = Keyword Protocol

SPN	FMI	KWP	Description
51	3	1019	EGR-Valve, short circuit to battery
51	3	1024	Position sensor error of actuator EGR-Valve; signal range check high
51	3	1226	EGR-Valve; short circuit to battery (A02)
51	3	1227	EGR-Valve; short circuit to battery (A67)
51	4	1020	EGR-Valve; short circuit to ground
51	4	1025	Position sensor error actuator EGR-Valve; signal range check low
51	4	1228	EGR-Valve; short circuit to ground (A02)
51	4	1229	EGR-Valve; short circuit to ground (A67)
1	4	1232	Actuator error EGR-Valve; Voltage below threshold
51	5	1015	Actuator error EGR-Valve; signal range check low
51	5	1017	Actuator EGR-Valve; open load
51	5	1023	Actuator error EGR-Valve; signal range check low
51	5	1223	Actuator EGR-Valve; open load
51	6	1014	Actuator error EGR-Valve; signal range check high
51	6	1022	Actuator error EGR-Valve; signal range check high
51	6	1224	Actuator EGR-Valve; over current
51	6	1230	Actuator error EGR-Valve; Overload by short-circuit
51	7	1016	Actuator position for EGR-Valve not plausible
51	11	1231	Actuator error EGR-Valve; Power stage over temp due to high current
51	12	1018	Actuator EGR-Valve; powerstage over temperature
51	12	1021	Mechanical actuator defect EGR-Valve
51	12	1225	Actuator EGR-Valve; over temperature
94	1	474	Low fuel pressure; warning threshold exceeded
94	1	475	Low fuel pressure; shut off threshold exceeded
94	3	472	Sensor error low fuel pressure; signal range check high
94	4	473	Sensor error low fuel pressure; signal range check low
97	3	464	Sensor error water in fuel; signal range check high
97	4	465	Sensor error water in fuel; signal range check low
97	12	1157	Water in fuel level prefilter; maximum value exceeded

Deutz TD 2.9 L4 Engine Fault Codes

SPN = Suspect Parameter Number
FMI = Failure Mode Identifier
KWP = Keyword Protocol

SPN	FMI	KWP	Description
100	0	734	High oil pressure; warning threshold exceeded
100	0	735	High oil pressure; shut off threshold exceeded
100	1	736	Low oil pressure; warning threshold exceeded
100	1	737	Low oil pressure; shut off threshold exceeded
100	3	732	Sensor error oil pressure; signal range check high
100	4	733	Sensor error oil pressure sensor; signal range check low
102	2	88	Charged air pressure above warning threshold
102	2	89	Charged air pressure above shut off threshold
102	4	777	Sensor error charged air press.; signal range check low
105	0	996	High charged air cooler temperature; warning threshold exceeded
105	0	997	High charged air cooler temperature; shut off threshold exceeded
105	3	994	Sensor error charged air temperature; signal range check high
105	4	995	Sensor error charged air temperature; signal range check low
108	3	412	Sensor error ambient air press.; signal range check high
108	4	413	Sensor error ambient air press.; signal range check low
110	0	98	High coolant temperature; warning threshold exceeded
110	0	99	High coolant temperature; shut off threshold exceeded
110	3	96	Sensor error coolant temp.; signal range check high
110	4	97	Sensor error coolant temp.; signal range check low
111	1	101	Coolant level too low
132	11	1	Air flow sensor load correction factor exceeding the maximum drift limit; plausibility error
132	11	2	Air flow sensor load correction factor exceeding drift limit; plausibility error
132	11	3	Air flow sensor low idle correction factor exceeding the maximum drift limit
132	11	4	Air flow sensor load correction factor exceeding the maximum drift limit
157	3	877	Sesnor error rail pressure; signal range check high
157	4	878	Sensor error rail pressure; signal range check low

Deutz TD 2.9 L4 Engine Fault Codes

SPN = Suspect Parameter Number
FMI = Failure Mode Identifier
KWP = Keyword Protocol

SPN	FMI	KWP	Description
168	0	1180	Physical range check high for battery voltage
168	1	1181	Physical range check low for battery voltage
168	2	47	High battery voltage; warning threshold exceeded
168	2	48	Low battery voltage; warning threshold exceeded
168	3	45	Sensor error battery voltage; signal range check high
168	4	46	Sensor error battery voltage; signal range check low
171	3	417	Sensor error environment temperature; signal range check high
171	4	418	Sensor error environment temperature; signal range check low
172	0	1182	Physical range check high for intake air temperature
172	1	1183	Physical range check low for intake air temperature
172	2	9	Sensor ambient air temperature; plausibility error
172	2	983	Intake air sensor; plausibility error
172	3	981	Sensor error intake air; signal range check high
172	4	982	Sensor error intake air sensor; signal range check low
174	0	481	High low fuel temperature; warning threshold exceeded
174	0	482	High Low fuel temperature; shut off threshold exceeded
175	0	740	Physical range check high for oil temperature
175	0	745	High oil temperature; warning threshold exceeded
175	0	746	High oil temperature; shut off threshold exceeded
175	1	741	Physical range check low for oil temperature
175	2	738	Sensor oil temperature; plausibility error
175	2	739	Sensor oil temperature; plausibility error oil temperature too high
175	3	743	Sensor error oil temperature; signal range check high
175	4	744	Sensor error oil temperature; signal range check low
190	0	389	Engine speed above warning threshold (FOC-Level 1)
190	2	421	Offset angle between crank- and camshaft sensor is too large
190	8	419	Sensor camshaft speed; disturbed signal

Deutz TD 2.9 L4 Engine Fault Codes

SPN = Suspect Parameter Number
FMI = Failure Mode Identifier
KWP = Keyword Protocol

SPN	FMI	KWP	Description
190	8	422	Sensor crankshaft speed; disturbed signal
190	11	390	Engine speed above warning threshold (FOC-Level 2)
190	12	420	Sensor camshaft speed; no signal
190	12	423	Sensor crankshaft speed; no signal
190	14	391	Engine speed above warning threshold (Overrun Mode)
190	14	1222	Camshaft- and Crankshaft speed sensor signal not available on CAN
411	0	791	Physical range check high for differential pressure Venturiunit (EGR)
411	1	792	Physical range check low for differential pressure Venturiunit (EGR)
411	3	795	Sensor error differential pressure Venturiunit (EGR); signal range check high
411	4	381	Physical range check low for EGR differential pressure
411	4	796	Sensor error differential pressure Venturiunit (EGR); signal range check low
412	3	1007	Sensor error EGR cooler downstream temperature; signal range check high
412	4	1008	Sensor error EGR cooler downstream temperature; signal range check low
520	9	306	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame TSC1TR; Setpoint
597	2	49	Break lever mainswitch and break lever redundancy switch status not plausible
624	3	971	SVS lamp; short circuit to batt.
624	4	972	SVS lamp; short circuit to grd.
624	5	969	SVS lamp; open load
624	12	970	SVS lamp; powerstage over temperature
630	12	376	Access error EEPROM memory (delete)
630	12	377	Access error EEPROM memory (read)
630	12	378	Access error EEPROM memory (write)
639	14	84	CAN-Bus 0 "BusOff-Status"
651	3	580	Injector 1 (in firing order); short circuit
651	4	586	High side to low side short circuit in the injector 1 (in firing order)

Deutz TD 2.9 L4 Engine Fault Codes

SPN = Suspect Parameter Number
FMI = Failure Mode Identifier
KWP = Keyword Protocol

SPN	FMI	KWP	Description
651	5	568	Injector 1 (in firing order); interruption of electric connection
652	3	581	Injector 2 (in firing order); short circuit
652	4	587	High side to low side short circuit in the injector 2 (in firing order)
652	5	569	Injector 2 (in firing order); interruption of electric connection
653	3	582	Injector 3 (in firing order); short circuit
653	4	588	High side to low side short circuit in the injector 3 (in firing order)
653	5	570	Injector 3 (in firing order); interruption of electric connection
654	3	583	Injector 4 (in firing order); short circuit
654	4	589	High side to low side short circuit in the injector 4 (in firing order)
654	5	571	Injector 4 (in firing order); interruption of electric connection
676	11	543	Cold start aid relay error.
676	11	544	Cold start aid relay open load
677	3	956	Starter relay high side; short circuit to battery
677	3	960	Starter relay low side; short circuit to battery
677	4	957	Starter relay high side; short circuit to ground
677	4	961	Starter relay low side; short circuit to ground
677	5	958	Starter relay; no load error
677	12	959	Starter relay; powerstage over temperature
703	3	426	Engine running lamp; short circuit to battery
703	4	427	Engine running lamp; short circuit to ground
703	5	424	Engine running lamp; open load
703	12	425	Engine running lamp; powerstage over temperature
729	5	545	Cold start aid relay open load
729	12	547	Cold start aid relay; over temperature error
898	9	305	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame TSC1TE; Setpoint
1079	13	946	Sensor supply voltage monitor 1 error (ECU)
1080	13	947	Sensor supply voltage monitor 2 error (ECU)

Deutz TD 2.9 L4 Engine Fault Codes

SPN = Suspect Parameter Number
FMI = Failure Mode Identifier
KWP = Keyword Protocol

SPN	FMI	KWP	Description
1109	2	121	Engine shut off demand ignored
1136	0	1398	Physikal range check high for ECU temperature
1136	1	1399	Physikal range check low for ECU temperature
1136	3	1400	Sensor error ECU temperature; signal range check high
1136	4	1401	Sensor error ECU temperature; signal range check low
1176	3	849	Sensor error pressure sensor upstream turbine; signal range check high
1176	4	850	Sensor error pressure sensor downstream turbine; signal range check high
1180	0	1193	Physical range check high for exhaust gas temperature upstream turbine
1180	0	1460	Turbocharger Wastegate CAN feedback; warning threshold exceeded
1180	0	1462	Exhaust gas temperature upstream turbine; warning threshold exceeded
1180	1	1194	Physical range check low for exhaust gas temperature upstream turbine
1180	1	1461	Turbocharger Wastegate CAN feedback; shut off threshold exceeded
1180	1	1463	Exhaust gas temperature upstream turbine; shut off threshold exceeded
1180	3	1067	Sensor error exhaust gas temperature upstream turbine; signal range check high
1180	11	1066	Sensor exhaust gas temperature upstream turbine; plausibility error
1188	2	1414	Wastegate; status message from ECU missing
1188	7	1415	Wastegate actuator; blocked
1188	11	1411	Wastegate actuator; internal error
1188	11	1412	Wastegate actuator; EOL calibration not performed correctly
1188	11	1416	Wastegate actuator; over temperature (> 145øC)
1188	11	1417	Wastegate actuator; over temperature (> 135øC)
1188	11	1418	Wastegate actuator; operating voltage error
1188	13	1413	Wastegate actuator calibration deviation too large, recalibration required
1231	14	85	CAN-Bus 1 "BusOff-Status"
1235	14	86	CAN-Bus 2 "BusOff-Status"

Deutz TD 2.9 L4 Engine Fault Codes

SPN = Suspect Parameter Number
FMI = Failure Mode Identifier
KWP = Keyword Protocol

SPN	FMI	KWP	Description
1237	2	747	Override switch; plausibility error
1322	12	610	Too many recognized misfires in more than one cylinder
1323	12	604	Too many recognized misfires in cylinder 1 (in firing order)
1324	12	605	Too many recognized misfires in cylinder 2 (in firing order)
1325	12	606	Too many recognized misfires in cylinder 3 (in firing order)
1326	12	607	Too many recognized misfires in cylinder 4 (in firing order)
2659	0	1524	Physical range check high for EGR exhaust gas mass flow
2659	1	1525	Physical range check low for EGR exhaust gas mass flow
2659	2	1523	Exhaust gas recirculation AGS sensor; plausibility error
2659	2	1527	AGS sensor temperature exhaust gas mass flow; plausibility error
2659	12	1526	Exhaust gas recirculation; AGS sensor has "burn off" not performed
2797	4	1337	Injector diagnostics; timeout error of short circuit to ground measurement cyl. Bank 0
2798	4	1338	Injector diagnostics; timeout error of short circuit to ground measurement cyl. Bank 1
2798	4	1339	Injector diagnostics; short circuit to ground monitoring Test in Cyl. Bank 0
2798	4	1340	Injector diagnostics; short circuit to ground monitoring Test in Cyl. Bank 1
3224	2	127	DLC Error of CAN-Receive-Frame AT1IG1 NOX Sensor (SCR-system upstream cat; DPF-system downstream cat); length of frame incorrect
3224	9	128	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame AT1IG1; NOX sensor upstream
3248	4	1047	Sensor error particle filter downstream temperature; signal range check low
3699	2	1616	DPF differential pressure sensor and a further sensor or actuator CRT system defective
3699	2	1617	Temperature sensor us. and ds. DOC simultaneously defect
3699	14	1615	Maximum stand-still-duration reached; oil exchange required
4765	0	1039	Physical range check high for exhaust gas temperature upstream (DOC)
4765	1	1042	Physical range check low for exhaust gas temperature upstream (DOC)

Deutz TD 2.9 L4 Engine Fault Codes

SPN = Suspect Parameter Number
FMI = Failure Mode Identifier
KWP = Keyword Protocol

SPN	FMI	KWP	Description
4766	0	1029	Physical range check high for exhaust gas temperature downstream (DOC)
4766	1	1032	Physical range check low for exhaust gas temperature downstream (DOC)
4768	2	1036	Sensor exhaust gas temperature upstream (DOC); plausibility error
4768	3	1044	Sensor error exhaust gas temperature upstream (DOC); signal range check high
4768	4	1045	Sensor error exhaust gas temperature upstream (DOC) signal range check low
4769	2	1026	Sensor exhaust gas temperature downstream (DOC); plausibility error
4769	3	1034	Sensor error exhaust gas temperature downstream (DOC); signal range check high
4769	4	1035	Sensor error exhaust gas temperature downstream (DOC); signal range check low
523006	3	34	Controller mode switch; short circuit to battery
523006	4	35	Controller mode switch; short circuit to ground
523008	1	648	Manipulation control was triggered
523008	2	649	Timeout error in Manipulation control
523009	9	825	Pressure Relief Valve (PRV) reached maximun allowed opening count
523009	10	833	Pressure relief valve (PRV) reached maximun allowed open time
523212	9	171	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComEngPrt; Engine Protection
523216	9	198	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame PrHtEnCmd; pre-heat command, engine command
523240	9	179	Timeout CAN-message FunModCtl; Function Mode Control
523350	4	565	Injector cylinder-bank 1; short circuit
523352	4	566	Injector cylinder-bank 2; short circuit
523354	12	567	Injector powerstage output defect
523470	2	826	Pressure Relief Valve (PRV) forced to open; performed by pressure increase
523470	2	827	Pressure Relief Valve (PRV) forced to open; performed by pressure shock

Deutz TD 2.9 L4 Engine Fault Codes

SPN = Suspect Parameter Number
FMI = Failure Mode Identifier
KWP = Keyword Protocol

SPN	FMI	KWP	Description
523470	7	876	Maximum rail pressure in limp home mode exceeded (PRV)
523470	11	831	The PRV can not be opened at this operating point with a pressure shock
523470	11	832	Rail pressure out of tolerance range
523470	12	828	Open Pressure Relief Valve (PRV); shut off condition
523470	12	829	Open Pressure Relief Valve (PRV); warning condition
523470	14	830	Pressure Relief Valve (PRV) is open
523550	12	980	T50 start switch active for too long
523601	13	948	Sensor supply voltage monitor 3 error (ECU)
523603	9	126	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame AMB; Ambient Temperature Sensor
523605	9	300	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame TSC1AE; Traction Control
523606	9	301	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame TSC1AR; Retarder
523612	12	387	Internal software error ECU; injection cut off
523612	12	612	Internal ECU monitoring detection reported error
523612	12	613	Internal ECU monitoring detection reported error
523612	12	614	Internal ECU monitoring detection reported error
523612	12	615	Internal ECU monitoring detection reported error
523612	12	616	Internal ECU monitoring detection reported error
523612	12	617	Internal ECU monitoring detection reported error
523612	12	618	Internal ECU monitoring detection reported error
523612	12	619	Internal ECU monitoring detection reported error
523612	12	620	Internal ECU monitoring detection reported error
523612	12	621	Internal ECU monitoring detection reported error
523612	12	623	Internal ECU monitoring detection reported error
523612	12	624	Internal ECU monitoring detection reported error
523612	12	625	Internal ECU monitoring detection reported error
523612	12	627	Internal ECU monitoring detection reported error
523612	12	628	Internal ECU monitoring detection reported error

Deutz TD 2.9 L4 Engine Fault Codes

SPN = Suspect Parameter Number
FMI = Failure Mode Identifier
KWP = Keyword Protocol

SPN	FMI	KWP	Description
523612	12	637	Internal ECU monitoring detection reported error
523612	12	1170	Internal software error ECU
523612	14	973	Softwarereset CPU SWReset_0
523612	14	974	Softwarereset CPU SWReset_1
523612	14	975	Softwarereset CPU SWReset_2
523613	0	856	Maximum positive deviation of rail pressure exceeded (RailMeUn0)
523613	0	857	Maximum positive deviation of rail pressure in metering unit exceeded (RailMeUn1)
523613	0	858	Railsystem leakage detected (RailMeUn10)
523613	0	859	Maximum negative deviation of rail pressure in metering unit exceeded (RailMeUn2)
523613	0	860	Negative deviation of rail pressure second stage (RailMeUn22)
523613	0	862	Maximum rail pressure exceeded (RailMeUn4)
523613	1	861	Minimum rail pressure exceeded (RailMeUn3)
523613	2	864	Setpoint of metering unit in overrun mode not plausible
523615	3	594	Metering unit (Fuel-System); short circuit to battery highside
523615	3	596	Metering unit (Fuel-System); short circuit to battery low side
523615	4	595	Metering unit (Fuel-System); short circuit to ground high side
523615	4	597	Metering Unit (Fuel-System); short circuit to ground low side
523615	5	592	Metering unit (Fuel-System); open load
523615	12	593	Metering unit (Fuel-System); powerstage over temperature
523619	2	488	Physical range check high for exhaust gas temperature upstrem (SCR-CAT)
523698	11	122	Shut off request from supervisory monitoring function
523717	12	125	Timeout Error of CAN-Transmit-Frame AmbCon; Weather environments
523718	3	1488	SCR mainrelay; short circuit to battery (only CV56B)
523718	4	1489	SCR mainrelay; short circuit to ground (only CV56B)
523718	5	1486	SCR mainrelay; open load (only CV56B)
523718	12	1487	SCR mainrelay; powerstage over temperature (only CV56B)
523766	9	281	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame Active TSC1AE
523767	9	282	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame Passive TSC1AE

Deutz TD 2.9 L4 Engine Fault Codes

SPN = Suspect Parameter Number
FMI = Failure Mode Identifier
KWP = Keyword Protocol

SPN	FMI	KWP	Description
523768	9	283	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame Active TSC1AR
523769	9	284	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame Passive TSC1AR
523770	9	285	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame Passive TSC1DE
523776	9	291	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame TSC1TE - active
523777	9	292	Passive Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame TSC1TE; Setpoint
523778	9	293	Active Timeout Errorof CAN-Receive-Frame TSC1TR
523779	9	294	Passive Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame TSC1TR
523788	12	299	Timeout Error of CAN-Transmit-Frame TrbCH; Status Wastegate
523793	9	202	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame UAA10; AGS sensor service message
523794	9	203	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame UAA11; AGS sensor data
523895	13	559	Check of missing injector adjustment value programming (IMA) injector 1 (in firing order)
523896	13	560	check of missing injector adjustment value programming (IMA) injector 2 (in firing order)
523897	13	561	check of missing injector adjustment value programming (IMA) injector 3 (in firing order)
523898	13	562	check of missing injector adjustment value programming (IMA) injector 4 (in firing order)
523910	6	1261	Air Pump; over current
523913	3	74	Sensor error glow plug control diagnostic line voltage; signal range check high
523913	4	75	Sensor error glow plug control diagnostic line voltage; signal range check low
523914	3	78	Glow plug control; short circuit to battery
523914	4	79	Glow plug control; short circuit to ground
523914	5	76	Glow plug control; open load
523914	5	1216	Glow plug control release line; short circuit error
523914	11	1217	Glow plug control; internal error
523914	12	77	Glow plug control; powerstage over temperature
523919	2	1378	Sensor air pump airpressure; plausibility error
523920	2	1379	Sensor exhaust gas back pressure burner; plausibility error

Deutz TD 2.9 L4 Engine Fault Codes

SPN = Suspect Parameter Number
FMI = Failure Mode Identifier
KWP = Keyword Protocol

SPN	FMI	KWP	Description
523922	7	1262	Burner Shut Off Valve; blocked closed
523922	7	1264	Burner Shut Off Valve; blocked closed
523929	0	109	Fuel Balance Control integrator injector 1 (in firing order); maximum value exceeded
523929	1	115	Fuel Balance Control integrator injector 1 (in firing order); minimum value exceeded
523930	0	110	Fuel Balance Control integrator injector 2 (in firing order); maximum value exceeded
523930	1	116	Fuel Balance Control integrator injector 2 (in firing order); minimum value exceeded
523931	0	111	Fuel Balance Control integrator injector 3 (in firing order); maximum value exceeded
523931	1	117	Fuel Balance Control integrator injector 3 (in firing order); minimum value exceeded
523932	0	112	Fuel Balance Control integrator injector 4 (in firing order); maximum value exceeded
523932	1	118	Fuel Balance Control integrator injector 4 (in firing order); minimum value exceeded
523935	12	168	Timeout Error of CAN-Transmit-Frame EEC3VOL1; Engine send messages
523936	12	169	Timeout Error of CAN-Transmit-Frame EEC3VOL2; Engine send messages
523946	0	1158	Zerofuel calibration injector 1 (in firing order); maximum value exceeded
523946	1	1164	Zerofuel calibration injector 1 (in firing order); minimum value exceeded
523947	0	1159	Zerofuel calibration injector 2 (in firing order); maximum value exceeded
523947	1	1165	Zerofuel calibration injector 2 (in firing order); minimum value exceeded
523948	0	1160	Zerofuel calibration injector 3 (in firing order); maximum value exceeded
523948	1	1166	Zerofuel calibration injector 3 (in firing order); minimum value exceeded
523949	0	1161	Zerofuel calibration injector 4 (in firing order); maximum value exceeded
523949	1	1167	Zerofuel calibration injector 4 (in firing order); minimum value exceeded
523960	0	1011	Physical range check high for EGR cooler downstream temp.

Deutz TD 2.9 L4 Engine Fault Codes

SPN = Suspect Parameter Number
FMI = Failure Mode Identifier
KWP = Keyword Protocol

SPN	FMI	KWP	Description
523960	0	1458	High exhaust gas temperature EGR cooler downstream; warning threshold exceeded
523960	1	1012	Physical range check low for EGR cooler downstream temp.
523960	1	1459	High exhaust gas temperature EGR cooler downstream; shut off threshold exceeded
523980	14	1187	Bad quality of reduction agent detected
523981	11	918	Urea-tank without heating function (heating phase)
523982	0	360	Powerstage diagnosis disabled; high battery voltage
523982	1	361	Powerstage diagnosis disabled; low battery voltage
523988	3	1245	Charging lamp; short circuit to battery
523988	4	1246	Charging lamp; short circuit to ground
523988	5	1243	Charging lamp; open load
523988	12	1244	Charging lamp; over temp.
523998	4	1327	Injector cylinder bank 2 slave; short circuit
523999	12	1328	Injector powerstage output Slave defect
524014	1	1254	Air pressure glow plug flush line; below limit
524016	2	1259	Amount of air is not plausible to pump speed
524016	2	1260	Calculated amount of air is not plausible to HFM reading
524016	11	1258	HFM sensor; electrical fault
524021	11	1263	Burner fuel line pipe leak behind Shut Off Valve
524024	11	1302	Deviation of the exhaust gas temp. setpoint to actual value downstream (DOC) too high
524028	2	1431	CAN message PROEGRActr; plausibility error
524029	2	1432	Timeout Error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComEGRActr - exhaust gas recirculation positioner
524030	7	1440	EGR actuator; internal error
524031	13	1441	EGR actuator; calibration error
524032	2	1442	EGR actuator; status message EGRCust is missing
524033	7	1443	EGR actuator; due to overload in Save Mode
524034	3	1438	Disc separator; short circuit to battery
524034	4	1439	Disc separator; short circuit to ground
524034	5	1436	Disc Separator; open load
524034	12	1437	Disc Separator; powerstage over temperature

Deutz TD 2.9 L4 Engine Fault Codes

SPN = Suspect Parameter Number
FMI = Failure Mode Identifier
KWP = Keyword Protocol

SPN	FMI	KWP	Description
524035	12	1341	Injector diagnostics; time out error in the SPI communication
524057	2	1505	Electric fuel pump; fuel pressure build up error
524097	9	1663	Timeout error of CAN-Transmit-Frame DPFBrnAirPmpCtl
524098	9	1664	Timeout error of CAN-Transmit-Frame ComDPFBrnPT
524099	9	1665	Timeout error of CAN-Transmit-Frame ComDPFC1
524100	9	1666	Timeout error of CAN-Transmit-Frame ComDPFHisDat
524101	9	1667	Timeout error of CAN-Transmit-Frame ComDPFTstMon
524102	9	1674	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComRxDPFBrnAirPmpCtl
524103	9	1675	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComRxDPFBrnAirPmp
524104	9	1676	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComRxDPFCtl
524105	9	1668	Timeout error of CAN-Transmit-Frame ComEGRMsFlw
524106	9	1677	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComRxEGRMsFlw1
524107	9	1678	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComRxEGRMsFlw2
524108	9	1669	Timeout error of CAN-Transmit-Frame ComEGRTVActr
524109	9	1679	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComRxEGRTVActr
524110	9	1670	Timeout error of CAN-Transmit-Frame ComETVActr
524111	9	1680	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComRxETVActr
524112	9	1671	Timeout ComITVActr
524113	9	1681	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComRxITVActr
524114	9	1659	Timeout error of CAN-Transmit-Frame A1DOC
524115	9	1660	Timeout error of CAN-Transmit-Frame AT1S
524116	9	1661	Timeout error of CAN-Transmit-Frame SCR2
524117	9	1662	Timeout error of CAN-Transmit-Frame SCR3
524118	9	1672	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComRxCM1
524119	9	1673	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComRxCustSCR3

Deutz TD 2.9 L4 Engine Fault Codes

SPN = Suspect Parameter Number
FMI = Failure Mode Identifier
KWP = Keyword Protocol

SPN	FMI	KWP	Description
524120	9	1682	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComRxSCRHtDiag
524121	9	1683	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComRxTrbChActr
524122	9	1684	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComRxUQSens
524123	9	1685	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComSCRHtCtl
524124	9	1686	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComTxAT1IMG
524125	9	1687	Timeout error of CAN-Receive-Frame ComTxTrbChActr

Perkins 854F-34T Engine Fault Code

SPN = Suspect Parameter Number
FMI = Failure Mode Identifier

SPN	FMI	Description	Refer to Engine Manual
27	3	Engine Exhaust Gas Recirculation Valve Position :Voltage Above Normal	Valve Position Sensor- Test
27	4	Engine Exhaust Gas Recirculation Valve Position :Voltage Be- low Normal	Valve Position Sensor - Test
29	3	Accelerator Pedal Position 2 :Voltage Above Normal	Analog Throttle Position Sensor Circuit - Test
29	4	Accelerator Pedal Position 2 :Voltage Below Normal	Analog Throttle Position Sensor Circuit - Test
51	3	Engine Throttle Valve 1Position :Voltage Above Normal	Valve Position Sensor - Test
51	4	Engine Throttle Valve 1 Position :Voltage Below Normal	Valve Position Sensor - Test
91	3	Accelerator Pedal Position 1 :Voltage Above Normal	Analog Throttle Position Sensor Circuit - Test
91	4	Accelerator Pedal Position 1: Voltage Below Normal	Analog Throttle Position Sensor Circuit - Test
97	15	Water In Fuel Indicator :High - least severe	Fuel Contains Water
100	2	Engine Oil Pressure :Erratic,Intermittent,or Incorrect	Switch Circuits - Test
100	17	Engine Oil Pressure :Low - least severe (1)	Oil Pressure Is Low
102	3	Engine Intake Manifold #1 Pressure:Voltage Above Normal	Engine Pressure Sensor Open or Short Circuit - Test
102	4	Engine Intake Manifold #1 Pressure :Voltage Below Normal	Engine Pressure Sensor Open or Short Circuit - Test
102	20	Engine Intake Manifold #1Pressure :Data Drifted High	Engine Pressure Sensor Open or Short Circuit - Test
102	21	Engine Intake Manifold #1Pressure :Data Drifted Low	Engine Pressure Sensor Open or Short Circuit - Test
105	3	Engine Intake Manifold #1 Temperature :Voltage Above Normal	Engine Temperature Sensor Open or Short Circuit - Test
105	4	Engine Intake Manifold #1 Temperature :Voltage Below Normal	Engine Temperature Sensor Open or Short Circuit- Test
107	2	Engine Air Filter 1Differential Pressure : Erratic,Intermittent,or Incorrect	Switch Circuits - Test
107	15	Engine Air Filter 1Differential Pressure :High - least severe (1)	Inlet Air Is Restricted
107	16	Engine Air Filter 1Differential Pressure :High - moderate severity(2)	Inlet Air Is Restricted

Perkins 854F-34T Engine Fault Code

SPN = Suspect Parameter Number
FMI = Failure Mode Identifier

SPN	FMI	Description	Refer to Engine Manual
108	3	Barometric Pressure :Voltage Above Normal	Engine Pressure Sensor Open or Short Circuit - Test
108	4	Barometric Pressure :Voltage Below Normal	Engine Pressure Sensor Open or Short Circuit - Test
110	3	Engine Coolant Temperature :Voltage Above Normal	Engine Temperature Sensor Open or Short Circuit - Test
110	4	Engine Coolant Temperature :Voltage Below Normal	Engine Temperature Sensor Open or Short Circuit - Test
110	15	Engine Coolant Temperature :High - least severe (1)	Coolant Temperature Is High
110	16	Engine Coolant Temperature:High - moderate severity (2)	Coolant Temperature Is High
152	2	Number Of ECU Resets :Erratic,Intermittent,or Incorrect	ECM Memory - Test
157	0	Engine Injector Metering Rail#1Pressure : High - most severe (3)	Fuel Rail Pressure Problem
157	2	Engine Injector Metering Rail #1 Pressure : Erratic, Intermittent, or Incorrect	Fuel Rail Pressure Problem
157	3	Engine Injector Metering Rail#1 Pressure : Voltage Above Normal	Engine Pressure Sensor Open or Short Circuit - Test
157	4	Engine Injector Metering Rail #1 Pressure :Voltage Below Normal	Engine Pressure Sensor Open or Short Circuit - Test
157	10	Engine Injector Metering Rail#1 Pressure : Abnormal Rate of Change	Engine Pressure Sensor Open or Short Circuit - Test
157	16	Engine Injector Metering Rail#1 Pressure : High - moderate severity (2)	Fuel Rail Pressure Problem
157	17	Engine Injector Metering Rail#1Pressure :Low - least severe (1)	Fuel Rail Pressure Problem
157	18	Engine Injector Metering Rail#1Pressure :Low - moderate severity (2)	Fuel Rail Pressure Problem
168	3	Battery Potential/ Power Input 1 :Voltage Above Normal	Ignition Keyswitch Circuit and Battery Supply Circuit - Test
166	2	Engine Rated Power :Erratic, Intermittent or Incorrect	ECM Memory- Test
166	14	Engine Rated Power :Special Instruction	ECM Memory - Test
168	4	Battery Potential/ Power Input 1 :Voltage Below Normal	Ignition Keyswitch Circuit and Battery Supply Circuit - Test

Perkins 854F-34T Engine Fault Code

SPN = Suspect Parameter Number
FMI = Failure Mode Identifier

SPN	FMI	Description	Refer to Engine Manual
172	3	Engine Air Inlet Temperature Sensor :Voltage Above Normal	Engine Temperature Sensor Open or Short Circuit- Test
172	4	Engine Air Inlet Temperature Sensor :Voltage Below Normal	Engine Temperature Sensor Open or Short Circuit - Test
173	3	Engine Exhaust Gas Temperature : Voltage Above Normal	Engine Temperature Sensor Open or Short Circuit - Test
173	4	Engine Exhaust Gas Temperature :Voltage Below Normal	Engine Temperature Sensor Open or Short Circuit- Test
174	3	Engine Fuel Temperature1 :Voltage Above Normal	Engine Temperature Sensor Open or Short Circuit - Test
174	4	Engine Fuel Temperature 1 :Voltage Below Normal	Engine Temperature Sensor Open or Short Circuit - Test
190	8	Engine Speed :Abnormal Frequency,Pulse Width,or Period	Engine Speed/Timing Sensor Circuit - Test
190	15	Engine Speed :High - least severe (1)	Engine Over speeds
558	2	Accelerator Pedal1Low Idle Switch :Erratic, Intermittent, or Incorrect	Idle Validation Switch Circuit- Test
593	31	Engine Idle Shutdown has Shutdown Engine	This code indicates that an engine idle shutdown is about to occur. This code does not represent a fault. If equipped, the warning lamp will come on.
594	31	Engine Idle Shutdown Driver Alert Mode	This code indicates that an engine idle shut down has occurred.This code does not represent a fault. If equipped,the warning lamp will flash and the shutdown lamp will come on.
623	6	Red Stop Lamp :Current Above Normal	Indicator Lamp Circuit- Test
624	6	Amber Warning Lamp :Current Above Normal	Indicator Lamp Circuit - Test
630	2	Calibration Memory :Erratic, Intermittent, or Incorrect	Injector Data Incorrect- Test
637	11	Engine Timing Sensor :Other Failure Mode	Engine Speed/Timing Sensor Circuit- Test
639	9	J1939 Network #1 :Abnormal Update Rate	CAN Data Link Circuit - Test
639	14	J1939 Network #1:Special Instruction	CAN Data Link Circuit - Test
651	5	Engine Injector Cylinder #01 : Current Below Normal	Injector Solenoid Circuit - Test
651	6	Engine Injector Cylinder #01 : Current Above Normal	Injector Solenoid Circuit- Test
651	20	Engine Injector Cylinder#01 :Data Drifted High	Injector Data Incorrect- Test
651	21	Engine Injector Cylinder#01 :Data Drifted Low	Injector Data Incorrect - Test

Perkins 854F-34T Engine Fault Code

SPN = Suspect Parameter Number
FMI = Failure Mode Identifier

SPN	FMI	Description	Refer to Engine Manual
652	5	Engine Injector Cylinder #02 :Current Below Normal	Injector Solenoid Circuit - Test
652	6	Engine Injector Cylinder #02 :Current Above Normal	Injector Solenoid Circuit - Test
652	20	Engine Injector Cylinder #02 :Data Drifted High	Injector Data Incorrect- Test
652	21	Engine Injector Cylinder #02 :Data Drifted Low	Injector Data Incorrect- Test
653	5	Engine Injector Cylinder #03 :Current Below Normal	Injector Solenoid Circuit - Test
653	6	Engine Injector Cylinder #03 :Current Above Normal	Injector Solenoid Circuit - Test
653	20	Engine Injector Cylinder #03 :Data Drifted High	Injector Data Incorrect- Test
653	21	Engine Injector Cylinder #03 :Data Drifted Low	Injector Data Incorrect - Test
654	5	Engine Injector Cylinder #04 :Current Below Normal	Injector Solenoid Circuit - Test
654	6	Engine Injector Cylinder #04 :Current Above Normal	Injector Solenoid Circuit - Test
654	20	Engine Injector Cylinder #04 :Data Drifted High	Injector Data Incorrect- Test
654	21	Engine Injector Cylinder #04 :Data Drifted Low	Injector Data Incorrect - Test
676	5	Engine GloW Plug Relay : Current Below Normal	Glow Plug Starting Aid - Test
676	6	Engine Glow Plug Relay :Current Above Normal	Glow Plug Starting Aid - Test
676	19	Engine Glow Plug Relay :Data Error	Glow Plug Starting Aid- Test
677	3	Engine Starter Motor Relay :Voltage Above Normal	Start Relay Circuit - Test
677	5	Engine Starter Motor Relay :Current Below Normal	Start Relay Circuit - Test
677	6	Engine Starter Motor Relay :Current Above Normal	Start Relay Cricuit - Test
723	8	Engine Speed Sensor #2 :Abnormal Frequency,Pulse Width, or Period	Engine Speed/liming Sensor Circuit - Test
976	2	PTO Governor State : Erratic,Intermittent, or Incorrect	PTO Switch Circuit - Test
1041	2	Start Signal Indicator :Erratic,Intermittent,or Incorrect	Start Relay Circuit- Test

Perkins 854F-34T Engine Fault Code

SPN = Suspect Parameter Number
FMI = Failure Mode Identifier

SPN	FMI	Description	Refer to Engine Manual
1076	2	Engine Fuel Injection Pump Fuel Control Valve :Erratic, Intermittent, or Incorrect	Solenoid Valve - Test
1076	5	Engine Fuel Injection Pump Fuel Control Valve :Current Below Normal	Solenoid Valve - Test
1076	6	Engine Fuel Injection Pump Fuel Control Valve :Current Above Normal	Solenoid Valve- Test
1081	5	Engine Wait to Start Lamp :Current Below Normal	Indicator Lamp Circuit - Test
1081	6	Engine Wait to Start Lamp :Current Above Normal	Indicator Lamp Circuit- Test
1127	16	Engine Turbocharger 1 Boost Pressure : High - moderate severity (2)	Intake Manifold Air Pressure Is High
1127	18	Engine Turbocharger 1 Boost Pressure :Low - moderate severity (2)	Intake Manifold Air Pressure Is Low
1188	5	Engine Turbocharger Wastegate Actuator 1 Position :Current Below Normal	Solenoid Valve - Test
1188	6	Engine Turbocharger Wastegate Actuator 1 Position :Current Above Normal	Solenoid Valve - Test
1209	3	Engine Exhaust Gas Pressure :Voltage Above Normal	Engine Pressure Sensor Open or Short Circuit - Test
1209	4	Engine Exhaust Gas Pressure :Voltage Below Normal	Engine Pressure Sensor Open or Short Circuit- Test
1221	2	Continuously Monitored Systems Support/Status ;Erratic,Intermittent,or Incorrect	ECM Memory- Test
1221	14	Continuously Monitored Systems Support/Status : Special Instruction	Another diagnostic code has requested engine speed limitation. The warning lamp will flash.The engine speed is limited to 1200rpm. Troubleshoot all other diagnostic codes.No troubleshooting is required for this diagnostic code.
1239	0	Engine Fuel Leakage 1 :High- most severe (3)	Fuel Rail Pressure Problem
1485	7	ECM Main Relay :Not Responding Properly	Electrical Power Supply- Test
1485	14	ECM Main Relay :Special Instruction	Electrical Power Supply- Test

Perkins 854F-34T Engine Fault Code

SPN = Suspect Parameter Number
FMI = Failure Mode Identifier

SPN	FMI	Description	Refer to Engine Manual
2791	5	Engine Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR) Valve Control:Current Below Normal	Motorized Valve- Test
2791	6	Engine Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR) Valve Control :Current Above Normal	Motorized Valve - Test
2791	7	Engine Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR) Valve Control :Not Responding Properly	Motorized Valve- Test
2797	6	Engine Injector Group 1 :Current Above Normal	Injector Solenoid Circuit- Test
2797	7	Engine Injector Group 1 :Not Responding Property	Injector Solenoid Circuit - Test
2798	6	Engine Injector Group 2 :Current Above Normal	Injector Solenoid Circuit- Test
2840	12	ECU Instance :Failure	ECM Memory- Test
2840	14	ECU Instance :Special Instruction	Electrical Power Supply- Test
2880	2	Engine Operator Primary Intermediate Speed Select :Erratic, Intermittent,or Incorrect	Throttle Switch Circuit - Test
2880	3	Engine Operator Primary Intermediate Speed Select :Voltage Above Normal	Throttle Switch Circuit - Test
2880	4	Engine Operator Primary Intermediate Speed Select : Voltage Below Normal	Throttle Switch Circuit - Test
2970	2	Accelerator Pedal 2 Low Idle Switch :Erratic, Intermittent, or Incorrect	Idle Validation Switch Circuit- Test
3217	3	After treatment #1 Intake 02 :Voltage Above Normal	Oxygen Level- Test
3217	4	After treatment #1 Intake 02 :Voltage Below Normal	Oxygen Level - Test
3217	5	After treatment #1 Intake 02 :Current Below Normal	Oxygen Level- Test
3217	6	After treatment #1 Intake 02 :Current Above Normal	Oxygen Level- Test
3217	12	After treatment #1 Intake 02 :Failure	Oxygen Level- Test
3217	13	After treatment #1 Intake 02 : Out of Calibration	Oxygen Level- Test
3217	15	After treatment #1 Intake 02 : High - least severe (1)	Oxygen Level- Test

Perkins 854F-34T Engine Fault Code

SPN = Suspect Parameter Number
FMI = Failure Mode Identifier

SPN	FMI	Description	Refer to Engine Manual
3219	15	After treatment #1 Intake Gas Sensor at Temperature : High- least severe (1)	Oxygen Level- Test
3219	17	After treatment #1 Intake Gas Sensor at Temperature : Low - least severe (1)	Oxygen Level- Test
3222	3	After treatment #1 Intake Gas Sensor Heater : Voltage Above Normal	Oxygen Level- Test
3222	4	After treatment #1 Intake Gas Sensor Heater :Voltage Below Normal	Oxygen Level- Test
3222	5	After treatment #1 Intake Gas Sensor Heater :Current Below Normal	Oxygen Level- Test
3242	3	Particulate Trap Intake Gas Temperature :Voltage Above Normal	Engine Temperature Sensor Open or Short Circuit- Test
3242	4	Particulate Trap Intake Gas Temperature :Voltage Below Normal	Engine Temperature Sensor Open or Short Circuit- Test
3251	0	Particulate Trap Differential Pressure : High-most severe (3)	Diesel Particulate Filter Collects Excessive Soot
3251	3	Particulate Trap Differential Pressure:Voltage Above Normal	Engine Pressure Sensor Open or Short Circuit - Test
3251	4	Particulate Trap Differential Pressure :Voltage Below Normal	Engine Pressure Sensor Open or Short Circuit- Test
3251	7	Particulate Trap Differential Pressure :Not Responding Properly	Diesel Particulate Filter Has Differential Pressure Problem
3251	10	Particulate Trap Differential Pressure :Abnormal Rate of Change	Diesel Particulate Filter Has Differential Pressure Problem
3251	16	Particulate Trap Differential Pressure :High-moderate severity (2)	Diesel Particulate Filter Collects Excessive Soot
3251	17	Particulate Trap Differential Pressure : Low - least severe (1)	Diesel Particulate Filter Has Differential Pressure Problem
3509	2	Sensor Supply Voltage 1: Erratic,Intermittent,or Incorrect	5 Volt Sensor Supply Circuit- Test
3510	2	Sensor Supply Voltage 2 : Erratic,Intermittent, or Incorrect	5 Volt Sensor Supply Circuit- Test
3511	2	Sensor Supply Voltage 3 : Erratic,Intermittent,or Incorrect	5 Volt Sensor Supply Circuit - Test
3697	6	Particulate Trap Lamp Command :Current Above Normal	Indicator Lamp Circuit- Test
3698	6	Exhaust System High Temperature Lamp Command :Current Below Normal	Indicator Lamp Circuit- Test

Perkins 854F-34T Engine Fault Code

SPN = Suspect Parameter Number
FMI = Failure Mode Identifier

SPN	FMI	Description	Refer to Engine Manual
3702	6	Diesel Particulate Filter Active Regeneration Inhibited Status : Current Above Normal	Indicator Lamp Circuit- Test
4765	3	After treatment #1 Diesel Oxidation Catalyst Intake Gas Temperature :Voltage Above Normal	Engine Temperature Sensor Open or Short Circuit - Test
4765	4	After treatment #1 Diesel Oxidation Catalyst Intake Gas Temperature :Voltage Below Normal	Engine Temperature Sensor Open or Short Circuit- Test
5055	17	Engine Oil Viscosity : Low - least severe (1)	Oil Contains Fuel
5055	18	Engine Oil Viscosity : Low - moderate severity (2)	Oil Contains Fuel
5099	6	Engine Oil Pressure Low Lamp Data : Current Above Normal	Indicator Lamp Circuit- Test
5319	31	After treatment Diesel Particulate Filter Incomplete Regeneration	Diesel Particulate Filter Active Regeneration Was Interrupted
5324	7	Engine Glow Plug 1: Not Responding Properly	Glow Plug Starting Aid - Test
5325	7	Engine Glow Plug 2 :Not Responding Properly	Glow Plug Starting Aid - Test
5326	7	Engine Glow Plug 3 :Not Responding Properly	Glow Plug Starting Aid - Test
5327	7	Engine Glow Plug 4 :Not Responding Properly	Glow Plug Starting Aid - Test
5419	5	Engine Throttle Actuator #1 :Current Below Normal	Motorized Valve- Test
5419	6	Engine Throttle Actuator #1 :Current Above Normal	Motorized Valve - Test
5419	7	Engine Throttle Actuator #1 :Not Responding Properly	Motorized Valve- Test
5571	2	High Pressure Common Rail Fuel Pressure Relief Valve :Erratic, Intermittent, or Incorrect	Fuel Rail Pressure Problem
5571	7	High Pressure Common Rail Fuel Pressure Relief Valve :Not Responding Properly	Fuel Rail Pressure Problem
5571	10	High Pressure Common Rail Fuel Pressure Relief Valve : Abnormal Rate of Change	Fuel Rail Pressure Problem
5571	14	High Pressure Common Rail Fuel Pressure Relief Valve : Special Instruction	Fuel Rail Pressure Problem
5571	16	High Pressure Common Rail Fuel Pressure Relief Valve :High - moderate severity (2)	Fuel Rail Pressure Problem
5826	16	Emission Control System Operator Inducement Severity :High - moderate severity (2)	Refer to "Operator Inducement Codes".

Schematics

Observe and Obey:

- ☑ Troubleshooting and repair procedures shall be completed by a person trained and qualified on the repair of this machine
- ☑ Immediately tag and remove from service a damaged or malfunctioning machine.
- ☑ Repair any machine damage or malfunction before operating the machine.

Before Troubleshooting:

- ☑ Read, understand and obey the safety rules and operating instructions in the appropriate operator's manual on your machine.
- ☑ Be sure that all necessary tools and test equipment are available and ready for use.

About This Section

There are two groups of schematics in this section.

Electrical Schematics

⚠WARNING Electrocution/burn hazard. Contact with electrically charged circuits could result in death or serious injury. Remove all rings, watches and other jewelry.

Hydraulic Schematics

⚠WARNING Bodily injury hazard. Spraying hydraulic oil can penetrate and burn skin. Loosen hydraulic connections very slowly to allow the oil pressure to dissipate gradually. Do not allow oil to squirt or spray.

Wire Circuit Legend

Circuit numbering

1 Circuit numbers consist of three parts: the circuit prefix, circuit number and circuit suffix. The circuit prefix indicates the type of circuit. The circuit number describes the function of the circuit. The circuit suffix provides an abbreviation for the number or may be used to further define the function of this portion of the circuit. It also may be used to indicate the final end of the circuit, i.e., LS or limit sw.

2 The circuit number may be used more than once in a circuit.

For Example:

C 74 PL – This is the circuit for the lockout valve #1. C stands for control, 74 is the number of the circuit for the primary #1 lock out valve. PL stands for Primary Lockout.

S 62 BST – This is the circuit that communicates to the onboard computers of the machine that the boom is fully stowed. S stands for safety, 62 is the number of the circuit for boom stowed and BST stands for Boom Stowed.

P 48 LP – P stands for power. 48 is the circuit number for work lamps and LP stands for Lamp.

R 48 LP – R stands for relay. In this case it is the wire that feeds the relay coil for the work lamp. All other numbers remain the same.

V61AXR – V stands for valve power. Number 61 stands for axle retracted circuit; AXR stands for Axle retracted.

R46HRN – R stands for Relay output, supplying power to the horn (HRN). Number 46 is the circuit number for the horn.

Circuit prefix

C	Control
D	Data
E	Engine
G	Gauges
N	Neutral
P	Power
R	Relay Output
S	Safety
V	Valve

Wire Circuit Legend

Suffix	Definition
ABV	Auxiliary Boom Valve
AF	Alternator Field
AFV	Auxiliary Forward Valve
AH	Auxiliary Hydraulic Pump
ANG	Angle
APV	Auxiliary Platform Valve
ARV	Auxiliary Reverse Valve
ASV	Auxiliary Steer/Drive Valve
AXE	Axle Extend Valve
AXO	Axle Oscillate
AXR	Axle Retract Valve
BAT	Battery
BEX	Boom Extended
BRK	Brake
BST	Boom Stowed
BV	Bypass Valves
CAL	Calibrate
CAN	CAN Signal
CAT	CATS Module
CNK	Chain Break
DCN	Drive Chassis Controller
DE	Drive Enable
DEL	Drive Enable Left
DER	Drive Enable Right
DTH	Data High
DTL	Data Low
EDC	Electrical Displacement Control
ENL	Envelope Lockout
ENV	Envelope Light
ERL	Extend/Retract Lockout
ESL	Engine Status Lamp
ESP	Engine Speed Select
FAP	Axle Front Position
FB	Flashing Beacon
FE	Function Enable
FL	Fuel Select (gas/LP)
FLR	Filter Restricted
FLT	Filter Switch
FP	Fuel Pump
FS	Float Switch
FSL	Fuel Solenoid
FTS	Foot switch Signal
FWD	Forward
GEN	AC Generator
GND	Ground
HG	Hydraulic Generator
HRN	Horn
HS	High RPM
IGN	Ignition
JBD	Jib Bellcrank Down
JBE	Jib Extend
JBR	Jib Retract
JBS	Jib Sensor
JBU	Jib Bellcrank Up
JD	Jib Down
JER	Jib Extend/Retract Control
JFC	Jib Up/Down Flow Control
JPL	Propel Signal
JPW	Joystick 5V DC Power
JRL	Jib Rotate Left (CCW)
JRR	Jib Rotate Right (CW)

Wire Circuit Legend

Suffix	Definition
JSV	Jib Select Valve
JU	Jib Up
JUD	Jib Up/Down Control
LDS	Load Sensor
LF	Left Front
LFS	Left Front Steer Sensor
LO	Lockout
LOF	Low fuel
LPS	Lamps
LR	Left Rear
LRS	Left Rear Steer Sensor
LS	Limit Switch
LS	Low RPM
LSR	Lift Speed Reduction
MFV	Multi Function Valve
MS	Motor Shift (Speed)
PBD	Primary Boom Down
PBE	Primary Boom Extend
PBL	Primary Boom Extend/Retract Lockout Valve
PBR	Primary Boom Retract
PBS	Primary Boom Angle Sensor
PBU	Primary Boom Up
PCE	Pressure Comp Enable
PCN	Platform Control
PEL	Primary Ext/Ret Lockout
PER	Primary Boom Extend/Retract Flow Control
PES	Primary Boom Up/Down Signal
PL	Primary Lockout
PLD	Platform Level Down

Suffix	Definition
PLF	Platform Level Flow Control
PLL	Propel Lockout
PLS	Primary Boom Extend/Retract Signal
PLU	Platform Level Up
PRC	Platform Rotate Control
PRF	Platform Rotate Flow Control
PRL	Platform Rotate Left (CCW)
PRR	Platform Rotate Right (CW)
PRV	Proportional Valve
PS	Pressure Switches
PSE	Program Setup Enable
PSL	Power to Length Sensor
PSR	Pressure Sender
PTA	Platform Tilt Alarm
PTS	Platform Tilt Sensor
PUD	Primary Boom Up/Down Flow Control
PWR	Power
PXS	Proximity Sensor
RAP	Axle Rear Position
RCV	Recovery
REC	Receptacle
RET	Return
REV	Reverse
RF	Right Front
RFS	Right Front Steer Sensor
RL	Retract Lockout
RPM	RPM
RR	Right Rear

Wire Circuit Legend

Suffix	Definition
RRS	Right Rear Steer Sensor
RS	Rotary Sensor
SA	Start Aid (Glow Plug or choke)
SB	Secondary Boom
SBD	Sec Boom Down
SBE	Sec Boom Extend
SBL	Sec Boom Elevated
SBR	Sec Boom Retract
SBS	Sec Boom Angle Sensor
SBU	Sec Boom Up
SCC	Steering Valve (CCW)
SCW	Steering Valve (CW)
SEN	Sensor
SER	Sec Boom Extend/Retract Flow Control
SHD	CAN Shield
SLD	Secondary Boom Lockout Valve (riser down)
SLE	Secondary Boom Lockout Valve (extend)
SP	Spare
SS	Speed Sensor
STC	Steer Control Signal
STR	Starter
SUD	Sec Boom Up/Down Flow Control
TAX	Tilt Alarm X axis
TAY	Tilt Alarm Y axis
TCN	Ground Control
TCN	Ground Control Panel
TET	Tether
TRF	Turntable Rotate Flow Control
TRR	Turntable Rotate Right (CW)
TS	Temp Switches
TSR	Temp Sender
TSW	Test Switch
TTA	Turntable Tilt Alarm
TTS	Turntable Tilt Sensor

Wire Color Legend

Wire Coloring

1 All cylinder extension colors are solid and all retract functions are striped black. When using black wire, the stripe shall be white.

2 All rotations that are LEFT or CW are solid, RIGHT or CCW are striped and black. When the wire is black, the stripe is white.

3 All proportional valve wiring is striped.

Wire Color Legend

BL	Blue
BL/BK	Blue/Black
BL/RD	Blue/Red
BL/WH	Blue/White
BK	Black
BK/RD	Black/Red
BK/WH	Black/White
BK/YL	Black/Yellow
BR	Brown
GR	Green
GR/BK	Green/Black
GR/WH	Green/White
RD	Red
RD/BK	Red/Black
RD/WH	Red/White
OR	Orange
OR/BK	Orange/Black
OR/RD	Orange/Red
WH	White
WH/BK	White/Black
WH/RD	White/Red
YL	Yellow

Power Circuits

P9A	Primary boom down valve
P9B	Engine ignition / Fuel
P10	Primary boom extend valve
P11	Primary boom up valve
P30	Secondary boom down and extend valves
P38	Propel (drive) valves
P39	Turntable rotate flow control valve

Wire Color Legend

Color	Circuit #	Primary Function
RD	1	Primary boom up driver
RD/BK	2	Primary boom down driver
RD/WH	3	Primary boom up/down flow control proportional valve driver
WH	4	Turntable rotate left valve driver
WH/BK	5	Turntable rotate right valve driver
WH/RD	6	Turntable rotate flow control proportional valve driver
BK	7	Primary boom extend
BK/WH	8	Primary boom retract
BK/RD	9	Primary boom Extend/Retract proportional valve driver
BL	10	Secondary boom up valve driver
BL/BK	11	Secondary boom down valve driver
BL/WH	12	Secondary boom up/down flow control proportional valve driver
BL/RD	13	Drive enable
OR	14	Platform level up valve
OR/BK	15	Platform level down valve
OR/RD	16	Platform up/down flow control proportional valve driver
GR	17	Platform rotate left valve driver
GR/BK	18	Platform rotate right valve driver
GR/WH	19	Jib select valve driver circuit
RD	20	12V DC battery supply
WH	21	12V DC ignition supply
BK	22	Key switch power to platform
WH	23	Power to platform
RD	24	Power to warning senders
WH/BK	25	Power to oil pressure sender
WH/RD	26	Power to temp sender
RD	27	Auxiliary Power
RD/BK	28	Platform level alarm
RD/WH	29	Drive Motor shift (speed)
WH	30	Forward/EDC-A
WH/BK	31	Reverse/EDC-B
WH/RD	32	Brake
BK	33	Start
BK/WH	34	Start Aid (glow plug or choke)
BK/RD	35	High Engine speed select
BL	36	Steer clockwise
BL/BK	37	Steer counterclockwise
BL/WH	38	Gasoline
BL/RD	39	LPG
OR	40	Limit switch signal stowed
OR/BK	41	RPM signal
OR/RD	42	Boom retracted signal
GR	43	Jib Up
GR/BK	44	Jib Down
GR/WH	45	AC Generator
WH	46	Horn
WH/BK	47	Output Power Enable
WH/RD	48	Work Lamp
WH/BK	49	Motion Lamp
BL	50	Auxiliary Boom
BL/WH	51	Auxiliary Steer
BL/RD	52	Auxiliary Platform
WH/BK	53	Boom envelope safety valve cutoff
BK/WH	54	Power to safety interlock switches (engine)

Wire Color Legend

Color	Circuit #	Primary Function
GR/BK	55	Axle oscillation
RD	56	Foot switch/TCON estop power
RD/WH	57	Boom down safety interlock
RD/BK	58	Safety interlock to engine
GR/WH	59	Chain break circuit
GR/WH	60	Axle extend
GR	61	Axle retract
OR	62	Boom stowed (safety)
OR/RD	63	Power to boom envelope safety switch
OR/BK	64	Power for operational switches
BL/WH	65	Low fuel indication
BL	66	Drive Enable
BL	67	Secondary boom not stowed
RD	68	Primary Boom lowered (operational)
BL	69	Primary boom #1 extended
BL/WH	70	Primary boom #2 retracted
BL/BK	71	Primary boom #2 extended
BL/WH	72	Secondary boom extended
BL/RD	73	Secondary boom retracted
RD	74	Primary #1 Lockout
RD/WH	75	Primary #2 Lockout
BL	76	Primary boom #3 extended
WH	77	Lower Angle #1 operational
WH/BK	78	Upper Angle #2 operational
BK	79	Power from TCON ESTOP
N/A	80	Can 2.0/J1939 Shield
GR	81	Can 2.0/J1939 Low
YL	82	Can 2.0/J1939 High
GR/WH	83	Tilt signal X axis
GR/BK	84	Tilt signal Y axis
GR	85	Tilt sensor power
OR	86	Hydraulic Filter restricted
RD	87	Platform Level Safety Power
RD/BK	88	Platform Level Safety Output
BR	89	Platform Level Safety Ground
RD/BK	90	Proximity Kill
RD/WH	91	Gate Interlock
WH/BK	92	Motor Speed (LO/HI)
WH/RD	93	Motor Bypass
WH	94	Load Sensor
OR	95	Tether ESTOP return
RD	96	Tether Power
BK	97	Tether ESTOP Power
WH	98	J1708 + (high)
BK	99	J1708- (low)
WH/RD	100	Outrigger lowered
WH/BK	101	Outrigger raised
OR	102	Pothole protector up
OR/RD	103	Pothole protector down
BK/WH	104	Proprietary Data buss - (I.e. ITT or AP)
BK/RD	105	Proprietary Data buss + (I.e. ITT or AP)
GR	106	Spare
RD	107	Alternator Field
BL/WH	108	Engine Status
GR/WH	109	Sensor Power
BK	110	Sensor Return
OR	111	Steer Signal
RD	112	Steer Signal to Solenoid Valve
OR/RD	113	Multi-function Valve
BK/RD	114	Load Moment Overweight
RD/BK	115	Load Moment Underweight
OR	116	Hydraulic Oil Cooler

Wire Color Legend

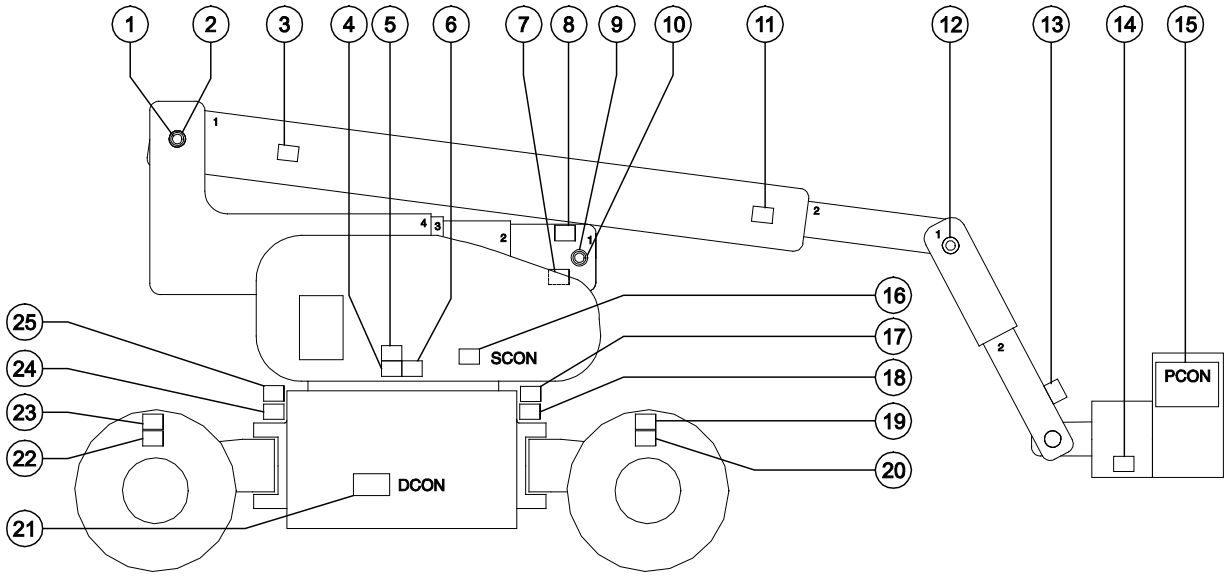
Color	Circuit #	Primary Function
RD	117	Flashing Beacon
OR	118	Lift Speed Reduction
BL	119	Hydraulic Pressure Sensor Output
OR	120	Oil Cooler Fan
GR	121	Axle Oscillate Left
GR/BK	122	Axle Oscillate Right
RD/BK	123	Primary Boom Angle Signal Operational
RD/WH	124	Secondary Boom Angle Signal Operational
WH/RD	125	Secondary Boom Lockout (Extend Enable)
WH/BK	126	Secondary Boom Lockout (Riser Down Enable)
GR	127	ECU Test Switch
OR/RD	128	Low Engine Speed
RD/BK	129	Descent Alarm
WH/RD	130	Travel Alarm
BL	131	Motion Alarm
GR	132	Platform Load Input
GR/WH	133	Platform Load Alarm
GR/BK	134	Key Switch power
BL/WH	135	Fuel Pump
RD	136	Power to Safety Module
RD/WH	137	Drive Power (P_38)
RD/BK	138	Primary Boom Up/Secondary Boom Down-Extend (P_11/30)
WH/RD	139	Turntable Rotate Flow Control Safety (P_39)
OR/RD	140	Boom Envelope Safety
RD	141	Primary Boom Angle Signal Safety
OR	142	Secondary Boom Angle Signal Safety
BL/RD	143	Drive Enable Left
BL/WH	144	Drive Enable Right
RD/WH	145	Calibrate
BL	146	Jib Bellcrank Up Flow Control
BL/BK	147	Jib Bellcrank Down Flow Control
BL/WH	148	Jib Bellcrank Sensor
GR/WH	149	Jib Up/Down Flow Control
GR/BK	150	Hydraulic Generator Bypass
GR	151	Hydraulic EDC Output
BK	152	Injector Retard
BK	153	Jib Extend
BK/WH	154	Jib Retract
OR/RD	155	Pressure Comp. Enable
GR/WH	156	Jib Up/Down
BK/RD	157	Jib Extend/Retract
BL/RD	158	Steer Signal Rocker
BL/WH	159	Steer Joystick Signal
WH/RD	160	Propel Joystick Signal
WH/BK	161	Secondary Boom Joystick Signal
OR	162	Joystick 5V DC power
BL/WH	163	Primary Extend/Retract Signal
RD/WH	164	Primary Up/Down Signal
WH/RD	165	TT Rotate Signal

Wire Color Legend

Color	Circuit #	Primary Function
OR	166	Boom Length Signal Safety
OR/BK	167	Boom Length Signal Operational
BL/RD	168	Primary Boom Hydraulic Valve Lockout
GR	169	Envelope Active LED
WH/RD	170	Load Sense Relay Source
WH/BK	171	Load Sense Relay Sink
BL	172	UP/DN Flow Control Ground
BK	173	Ext/Ret Flow Control Ground
WH	174	Key Switch Power, Ground Position
WH/BK	175	Load Sensor Signal Operational
GR/WH	176	Secondary Extend/Retract FC
BL/RD	177	Extend/Retract Lockout
BK	178	Control Module Status Light
GR	179	Drive Power Relay
BK	180	Lift Power Relay
OR	181	48 Volt Alternator field (or Battery)
RD	182	24 Volt Battery
BL	183	Envelope or Load Sense Recovery
WH	184	Program setup Enable
WH	185	Encode A
BL	186	Encode B
BL	187	Bootstrap or Program Enable
GR	188	Safety cross check
BK	189	Data Receive
BK/WH	190	Data Transmit
WH/RD	191	Multi-Function Pressure Relief
WH/BK	192	Jib Rotate Left
WH/RD	193	Jib Rotate Right
WH/RD	194	Speed Select Input
OR/RD	195	Electric Brake Source
YL	196	2.5V Sensor Power
WH	197	Hour Meter
RD	198	+12V Sensor Power
WH/RD	199	Thermal Switch
BL	226	Telematics Remote Disable
GR	227	Engine Control CAN 2.0 / J1939 Low
YL	228	Engine Control CAN 2.0 / J1939 High
BR	N/A	Ground or Return

Limit Switches and Angle Sensors

Limit Switch Legend



1 RSP1AO
2 RSP1AS
3 LSP1RO
4 LST20
5 LST10
6 LST1S
7 LSS1RS
8 LSS1RO
9 RSS1AO
10 RSS1AS
11 LSP1EO
12 RSJ1AO
13 LSJ1RO
14 Plat Angle Sensor
15 PCON
16 SCON
17 RSRA1SO
18 LSRA1ES
19 RSLR1SO
20 RSRR1SO
21 DCON
22 RSRF1SO
23 RSLF1SO
24 LSFA1ES
25 RSFA1SO

Limit Switches and Angle Sensors

Types of Limit Switches

There are two types of limit switches, found in various locations throughout the machine: mechanical-type **operational/safety** switches and **rotation** or **angle** sensors. As in aircraft, which features redundant safety systems, each mechanical operational switch is backed up with a separate, independently functioning safety switch.

The mechanical-type **operational** or **safety** switches are used to sense a positive displacement or movement of the limit switch actuator, or arm, as the machine moves through its range of operational functions. The **rotation** or **angle** sensors utilize Hall Effect technology and must be calibrated when replaced. Included in this group are envelope limit switches which sense the extended length and angle of the booms and rotational position of the turntable.

For example, when the secondary boom is fully raised and the operational sensor is activated, it tells the ECM at the ground controls to start extending the secondary boom.

Another example is the drive enable limit switch, which disables the drive function anytime the boom is rotated past the rear tires, indicated by the 'circle' end of the drive chassis.In some cases, the engine will be stopped if safety parameters are exceeded.

Numbering Legend

LS		FA		1	L		O	
LS	Limit Switch	FA	Front Axle	Circuit Number	L	Load moment	O	Operational
LT	Stringpot	RA	Rear Axle		A	Angle	S	Safety
RS	Rotary Sensor	LF	Left Front		D	Down		
		LR	Left Rear		E	Extend		
		RF	Right Front		R	Retract		
		RR	Right Rear					
		J	Jib Boom					
		P	Boom					
		T	Turntable					

Limit Switch Numbering

LSP1RO	Primary boom length retracted
LSP1EO	Primary boom length fully extended
LSS1RO	Secondary boom fully retracted
LSS1RS	Secondary boom fully retracted, safety
LSJ1RO	Jib boom length fully retracted
LST1O	Drive enable, left direction
LST2O	Drive enable, right direction
LST1S	Drive enable safety, retracted axles
LSFA1ES	Front axle fully retracted
LSRA1ES	Rear axle fully retracted

Limit Switches and Angle Sensors

Rotary Sensor Numbering

RSP1AO	Primary boom angle sensor
RSP1AS	Primary boom angle sensor, safety
RSJ1AO	Jib boom angle sensor
RSS1AO	Secondary boom angle sensor
RSS1AS	Secondary boom angle sensor, safety
RSFA1O	Front axle postioning sensor
RSRA1O	Rear axle positioning sensor
RSLF1SO	Left front wheel positioning sensor
RSRF1SO	Right front wheel positioning sensor
RSLR1SO	Left rear wheel positioning sensor
RSRR1SO	Right rear wheel positioning sensor

Limit Switch Functions

Platform Angle Sensor: Measures the angle of the platform. The range of measurement is +/- 20 degrees. The safety cutout is set at +/- 10 degrees from gravity and will disable the primary and secondary boom up/down functions and the platform level up/down functions.

Jib Bell Crank Angle Sensor: Measures the angle of the jib bell crank. The range of measurement is + 60 / -70 degrees.

Safety Controller (SCON): Redundant dual axis tilt sensors measuring the X and Y tilt angles of the turntable. Also provides safety switch logic for function cut-off. Alarm sounds at ±4.5 degrees.

LSFA1ES: Limit switch, Front Axle #1 Extended Safety. Prevents boom functions with the axles retracted. Switch closes when axles are fully extended.

LSRA1ES: Limit switch, Rear Axle #1 Extended Safety. Prevents boom functions with the axles retracted. Switch closes when axles are fully extended.

LST1O: Limit switch, Turntable #1 Operational. Activates the drive enable zone when the turntable is rotated in the left direction.

LST2O: Limit switch, Turntable #2 Operational. Activates the drive enable zone when the turntable is rotated in the right direction.

LST1S: Limit switch, Turntable #1 Safety. Prevents the turntable from rotating out past either rear tire when axles are retracted.

LSS1RO: Limit switch, Secondary Boom #1 Retracted Operational. NOHC when secondary boom is fully retracted. Used to reduce turntable rotate speed when secondary boom is extended and to disable secondary boom down unitl fully retracted.

LSS1RS: Limit switch, Secondary Boom #1 Retract Safety Switch. Backup switch for LSS1RO. Used to cut circuits P9B, P_11 and P_30.

LSJ1RO: Limit Switch, Jib Boom #1 Retract Operational. Switch is held closed when the jib boom fully retracted. Used to limit turntable rotate speed and drive speed when jib boom is extended.

LSP1EO: Limit Switch, Primary Boom #1 Extend Operational. Switch closes when the primary boom is fully extended. NOHC when fully extended.

LSP1RO: Limit Switch, Primary Boom #1 Retract Operational. Switch closes when the primary boom is extended. NCHO when fully retracted

Limit Switches and Angle Sensors

Rotary Sensor Functions

RSP1AO: Rotary Sensor, Primary #1 Angle Operational. Provides operational primary boom angle positioning relative to secondary boom angle.

RSP1AS: Rotary Sensor, Primary #1 Angle Safety. Provides safety primary boom angle positioning relative to secondary boom angle.

RSJ1AO: Rotary Sensor, Jib #1 Angle Operational. Used to level jib bell crank relative to the primary, secondary and turntable angles.

RSS1AO: Rotary Sensor, Secondary #1 Angle Operational. Used to measure the angle of the secondary boom. Lowers drive speed when elevated, sequences secondary boom up/extend and down/retract.

RSS1AS: Rotary Sensor, Secondary #1 Angle Safety. Backup safety angle sensor for RSS1AO. Cuts power to circuits P9B, P_11 and P_30 if the secondary boom drifts down while still extended.

RSFA1O: Rotary Sensor, Front Axle #1 Operational. Provides front axle positioning information for adjusting steering neutral setting during axle extension.

RSRA1O: Rotary Sensor, Rear Axle #1 Operational. Provides front axle positioning information for adjusting steering neutral setting during axle extension.

RSLF1SO: Rotary Sensor, Left Front #1 Steer Operational. Provides wheel position information during steering. Master wheel in all steer modes except rear steer.

RSRF1SO: Rotary Sensor, Right Front #1 Steer Operational. Provides wheel position information during steering.

RSLR1SO: Rotary Sensor, Left Rear #1 Steer Operational. Provides wheel position information during steering. Master wheel for rear steer mode.

RSRR1SO: Rotary Sensor, Right Rear #1 Steer Operational. Provides wheel position information during steering.

Circuit Connector Legend

Number	Description
J9	Ribbon connector from TCON to membrane #1
J10	Ribbon connector from TCON to membrane #2
J11	Black 23 pin AMP connector on TCON
J12	Black 35 pin AMP connector on TCON
J13	White 23 pin AMP connector on TCON
J14	White 35 pin AMP connector on TCON
J15	Black 4 pin DTP connector on PCON
J17	16 pin Molex mini fit circuit board to key switch
J20	12 pin Deutsch connector lower/upper limit switch harness
J21	Black 23 pin AMP connector on PCON
J22	White 35 pin AMP connector on PCON
J23	10 pin ribbon connector PCON to LED driver board
J24	20 pin Molex connector LED driver board
J25	6 pin Deutsch connector on drive/steer joystick
J28	6 pin Deutsch connector on secondary boom up/extend and down/retract joystick
J29	16 pin Molex conn on PCON PCB
J31	Black 23 pin AMP connector on DCON
J32	White 23 pin AMP connector on DCON
J46	4 pin Deutsch connector on LSS1RS
J49	4 pin Deutsch connector on sec boom retract (LSS1RO)
J55	6 pin Deutsch connector on platform tilt sensor
J57	3 pin Deutsch connector on RPM solenoid
J58	2 pin Deutsch connector for pri boom up/down flow control
J59	2 pin Deutsch connector for primary boom up valve
J60	2 pin Deutsch connector for primary boom down valve
J61	2 pin Deutsch connector for primary boom ext/ret flow control valve
J62	2 pin Deutsch DT pri boom extend valve
J63	2 pin Deutsch DT pri boom retract valve
J65	2 pin Deutsch connector for secondary boom extend valve
J66	2 pin Deutsch connector for secondary boom retract valve
J67	2 pin Deutsch connector for secondary boom up valve
J68	2 pin Deutsch connector for secondary boom down valve
J69	2 pin Deutsch connector for turntable rotate flow control
J70	2 pin Deutsch connector for turntable rotate CW valve
J71	2 pin Deutsch connector for turntable rotate CCW valve
J76	2 pin Deutsch DT platform rotate CW valve (Y70)
J78	2 pin Deutsch connector for jib boom up valve
J79	2 pin Deutsch connector for jib boom down valve
J82	2 pin Deutsch connector for prox kill
J84	2 pin Deutsch connector for platform footswitch

Circuit Connector Legend

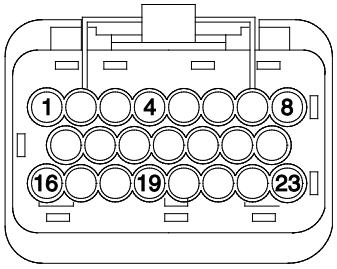
Number	Description
J87	2 pin Deutsch connector for two-speed motor stroke valve
J91	2 pin Deutsch connector for right rear steer right valve
J92	2 pin Deutsch connector for right rear steer left valve
J93	2 pin Deutsch connector for left rear steer right valve
J94	2 pin Deutsch connector for left rear steer left valve
J95	2 pin Deutsch connector for right front steer right valve
J96	2 pin Deutsch connector for right front steer left valve
J97	2 pin Deutsch connector for left front steer right valve
J98	2 pin Deutsch connector for left front steer left valve
J99	2 pin Deutsch connector for axle extend valve
J100	2 pin Deutsch connector for axle retract valve
J106	2 pin Deutsch connector for brake release valve
J107	3 pin Deutsch connector for right rear steer sensor
J108	3 pin Deutsch connector for left rear steer sensor
J109	3 pin Deutsch connector for right front steer sensor
J110	3 pin Deutsch connector for left front steer sensor
J114	6 pin Deutsch connector for primary boom angle sensor (PBAS)
J119	2 pin Deutsch connector for jib not retracted
J120	4 pin Weatherpack EDC connection
J121	12 pin Deutsch gray SCON connector
J122	12 pin Deutsch black SCON connector
J124	2 pin Deutsch connector for drive enable right limit switch (LST1O)
J125	2 pin Deutsch connector for drive enable left limit switch (LST2O)
J126	4 pin Deutsch connector for drive enable safety limit switch (LST1S)
J127	6 pin Deutsch connector for primary boom up/down, ext/ret and turntable joystick
J128	6 pin Deutsch connector for jib boom up/down, ext/ret and platform rotate
J129	2 pin Deutsch connector for boom composite/lower limit switch harness
J135	2 pin Deutsch connector for jib boom bellcrank up
J136	2 pin Deutsch connector for jib boom bellcrank down
J137	2 pin Deutsch connector for front axle safety switch
J138	2 pin Deutsch connector for rear axle safety switch
J140	2 pin Deutsch connector for jib extend
J141	2 pin Deutsch connector for jib retract
J146	2 way Deutsch connector for lower limit switch harness/engine harness
J147	1 way Deutsch connector for platform power jib/primary

Circuit Connector Legend

Number	Description
J148	1 way Deutsch connector for platform ground jib/primary
J149	2 pin Deutsch connector, boom composite
J150	4 pin Deutsch connector, boom composite
J151	3 pin Deutsch connector, CAN connector, jib/primary
J152	3 pin SAE Deutsch tee
J153	2 pin Deutsch connector for engine and manifold harness
J154	6 pin Deutsch connector for secondary boom angle sensor
J157	2 pin Deutsch connector for PCON manifold/boom composite harness
J160	4 pin Deutsch connector for front axle angle sensor
J161	4 pin Deutsch connector for rear axle angle sensor
J162	3 pin Deutsch connector for jib bellcrank angle sensor
J163	2 pin Deutsch connector for secondary boom up/down flow control
J164	2 pin Deutsch connector for secondary boom extend/retract flow control
J165	12 pin Deutsch connector located at PCON
J166	6 pin Deutsch connector for jib bellcrank sensor
J168	1 way 0.25 inch slide terminal for belt generator excite
J169	20 pin Molex connector for circuit board to joystick and switches #2
J175	2 pin Deutsch connector

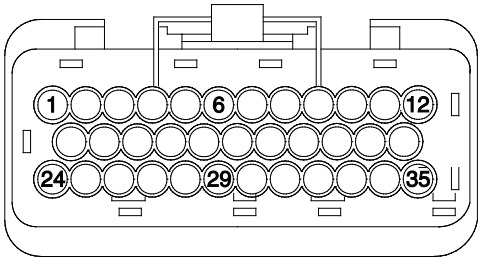
Number	Description
J223	CAN Gateway 8 pin Molex connector
J224	Telematics connector
J228	Gateway to TCON interface connector
J231	Tier IV A1 or D2.1 ECU connector
J232	Tier IV K1 or D2.2 ECU connector
J233	Tier IV engine interface connector

Drive Chassis and Platform Controller Pin Legend



Pin Numbering - 23 pin connector

J21	Plat Controller	J22	Plat Controller
1	GNDPCON - BR	1	VLVRET1 - BR
2	P52PCON - WH	2	V153JBE - BK
3	(UNUSED)	3	V18PRR - GR/BK
4	S56PRV - RD	4	V17PRL - GR
5	(UNUSED)	5	V43JU - GR
6	(UNUSED)	6	V44JD - GR/BK
7	P56PRV - RD/WH	7	V14PLU - OR
8	(UNUSED)	8	V15PLD - OR/BK
9	(UNUSED)	9	V154JBR - BK/WH
10	(UNUSED)	10	(UNUSED)
11	(UNUSED)	11	C90PXS - RD/BK
12	(UNUSED)	12	GR/YL
13	(UNUSED)	13	OR
14	(UNUSED)	14	BK
15	C47OUT - WH/BK	15	C88PTS - RD/BK
16	C46HN - WH	16	C64LS -OR/BK
17	D81CAN(-) - GR	17	C56FTS - RD
18	D82CAN(+) - YL	18	C154JBR - BK/WH
19	(UNUSED)	19	P85RET - BR
20	(UNUSED)	20	C84TAY - GR/BK
21	(UNUSED)	21	P85PTS - GR
22	(UNUSED)	22	P87RET - BR
23	P23PCON - BK	23	P87PTS - RD
		24	(UNUSED)
		25	(UNUSED)
		26	(UNUSED)
		27	(UNUSED)
		28	V146JBU - BL
		29	V147JBD - BL/BK
		30	P109JBS - GR/WH
		31	P110JBS - BK
		32	C148JBS - BL/WH
		33	(UNUSED)
		34	VLVRET2 - BR
		35	(UNUSED)



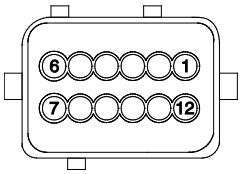
Pin Numbering - 35 pin connector

J32	Drive Chassis	J31	Drive Chassis
1	VLVRET1 - BR	1	GND-DCON - BR
2	V61AXRT - GR	2	P21DCON - WH
3	V60AXEX - GR/WH	3	P53LS - WH/BK
4	V29MS - RD/WH	4	(UNUSED)
5	(UNUSED)	5	S56PRV - RD
6	(UNUSED)	6	C61AXRT - GR
7	(UNUSED)	7	(UNUSED)
8	V36RRS - BL	8	(UNUSED)
9	V37RRS - BL/BK	9	(UNUSED)
10	C111RRS - OR	10	(UNUSED)
11	C111LRS - OR	11	(UNUSED)
12	C111RFS - OR	12	(UNUSED)
13	C111LFS - OR	13	(UNUSED)
14	VLVRET2 - BR	14	(UNUSED)
15	V32BRK - WH/RD	15	(UNUSED)
16	V36LRS - BL	16	(UNUSED)
17	V37LRS - BL/BK	17	D81CAN(-) - GR
18	V36RFS - BL	18	D82CAN(+) - YL
19	P110RT - BK	19	(UNUSED)
20	P109ANG - GR/WH	20	C60FAP - GR/WH
21	V37RFS - BL/BK	21	C60RAP - GR/WH
22	V36LFS - BL	22	(UNUSED)
23	V37LFS - BL/BK	23	P61LSA - GR

Safety Controller Pin Legend

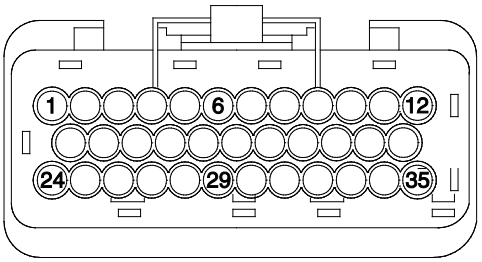
J121	Safety Controller
1	S132LDS - BL/WH
2	S73SLE - BL/RD
3	(UNUSED)
4	C145CAL - RD/WH
5	(UNUSED)
6	D82CAN (+) - YL
7	D81CAN (-) - GR
8	S59CNK - GR/WH
9	S56PRV - RD
10	S137PLL - RD/WH
11	S139TRF - WH/RD
12	GNDSCON - BR

Pin Numbering for 12 pin connectors

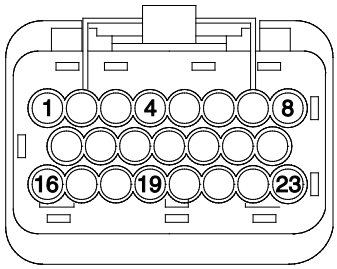


J122	Safety Controller
1	P21DCON - WH
2	C142SBS - OR
3	C141PBS - RD
4	C60AXE - GR/WH
5	S12SB - BL/WH
6	S13DE - BL/RD
7	P53LS - WH/BK
8	S140ENL - OR/RD
9	P54ENG - BK/WH
10	P58LS - RD/BK
11	S56PRV - RD
12	C61AXR - GR

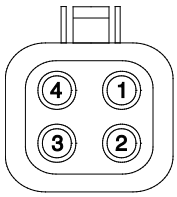
Turntable Controller Pin Legend



Pin Numbering - 35 pin connector



Pin Numbering - 23 pin connector



Pin Numbering - 4 pin connector

J11	Turntable Controller
1	GNDPCON - BR
2	P52PCON - WH
3	C46HN - WH
4	C47OUT - WH/BK
5	P23PCON - BK
6	S56PRV - RD
7	P56PRV - RD/WH
8	(UNUSED)
9	R117FB - RD
10	(UNUSED)
11	C145CAL - RD/WH
12	(UNUSED)
13	(UNUSED)
14	(UNUSED)
15	(UNUSED)
16	(UNUSED)
17	D81CAN(-) - GR
18	D82CAN(+) - YL
19	(UNUSED)
20	(UNUSED)
21	(UNUSED)
22	(UNUSED)
23	(UNUSED)

J12	Turntable Controller
1	GNDSCON - BR
2	P21DCON - WH
3	P53LS - WH/BK
4	P54ENG - BK/WH
5	S56PRV - RD
6	P53LS - WH/BK
7	P58LS - RD/BK
8	S59CNK - GR/WH
9	S140ENL - OR/RD
10	C61AXR - GR
11	(UNUSED)
12	(UNUSED)
13	C64LS - OR/BK
14	C65LOF - BL/WH
15	C144DER - BL/WH
16	C73SBR - BL/RD
17	C67SBD - BL
18	C64LS - OR/BK
19	C70PBR - BL/WH
20	C71PBE - BL/BK
21	(UNUSED)
22	(UNUSED)
23	(UNUSED)
24	(UNUSED)
25	SNSR GND - BR
26	P109ANG - GR/WH
27	(UNUSED)
28	C143DEL - BL/RD
29	(UNUSED)
30	(UNUSED)
31	(UNUSED)
32	C123PBS - RD/BK
33	C124SBS - OR/BK
34	S140ENL - OR/RD
35	GND16 - BR

J13	Turntable Controller
1	(UNUSED)
2	C35RPM - BK/RD
3	C21IGN - WH
4	C34SA - BK/WH
5	(UNUSED)
6	(UNUSED)
7	C46HRN - WH
8	(UNUSED)
9	C33STR - BK
10	C30EDC - WH
11	C31EDC - WH/BK
12	C25PSR - WH/BK
13	C26TSR - WH/RD
14	(UNUSED)
15	(UNUSED)
16	(UNUSED)
17	S137PLL - RD/WH
18	C41RPM - OR/BK
19	S139TRF - WH/RD
20	(UNUSED)
21	(UNUSED)
22	C45GEN - GR/WH
23	(UNUSED)

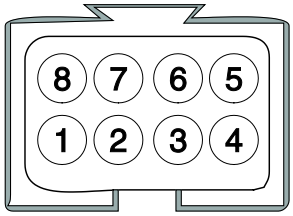
J14	Turntable Controller
1	VLVRET4 - BR
2	V03PUD - RD/WH
3	V09PER - BK/RD
4	V06TRF - WH/RD
5	V12SUD - BL/WH
6	V176SER - GR/WH
7	VO1PBU - RD
8	V02PBD - RD/BK
9	V07PBE - BK
10	V08PBR - BK/WH
11	(UNUSED)
12	V11SBD - BL/BK
13	(UNUSED)
14	VLVRET5 - BR
15	(UNUSED)
16	(UNUSED)
17	VLVRET5 - BR
18	VLVRET5 - BR
19	V10SBU - BL
20	V73SBR - GR/BK
21	V72SBE - GR
22	(UNUSED)
23	(UNUSED)
24	(UNUSED)
25	V04TRL - WH
26	V05TRR - WH/BK
27	VLVRET7 - BR
28	(UNUSED)
29	(UNUSED)
30	VLVRET6 - BR
31	(UNUSED)
32	C27AUX - RD
33	(UNUSED)
34	V155PCE - OR/RD
35	V150HG - GR/BK

J15	Turntable Controller
1	B1BAT - RD
2	GND - BR
3	GND - BR
4	(UNUSED)

Telematics Connector Pin Legend

Genie installed Telematics connector is wired with an Active High digital input.

Connector Pin Numbering



Note: A Deutsch plug p/n DT06-08SA mates with the Genie Telematics connector

Pin	Circuit Type	Circuit Properties	Genie Machine Function(s)	Telematics Use Case
1	System Power	12 VDC 5 Amp Max. allowed draw	Battery Positive – constant power	Supply power to device
2	System Ground	0 VDC	Battery Negative	Device Ground
3	Digital Output 1	12 VDC	Engine Run Hour Meter 12V = engine run, 0V = engine off	Monitor Engine Hours
4	Digital Output 2	12 VDC	Key Switch Activation 12V = key switch on, 0V = key switch off	Monitor machine utilization
5	Digital Output 3	12 VDC	Foot switch 12V = active, 0V = inactive	Monitor machine utilization
6	Digital Input 1	12 VDC	Remote Disable Engine Start	Remotely Prevent Engine Start
7*	Databus H	CAN HIGH	Genie Databus	J1939 Engine Messages, Receive Proprietary Genie Telematics Message
8*	Databus L	CAN LOW	Genie Databus	J1939 Engine Messages, Receive Proprietary Genie Telematics Message

* Tier IV engine models only, J1939 engine message available.

* Genie proprietary databus support.

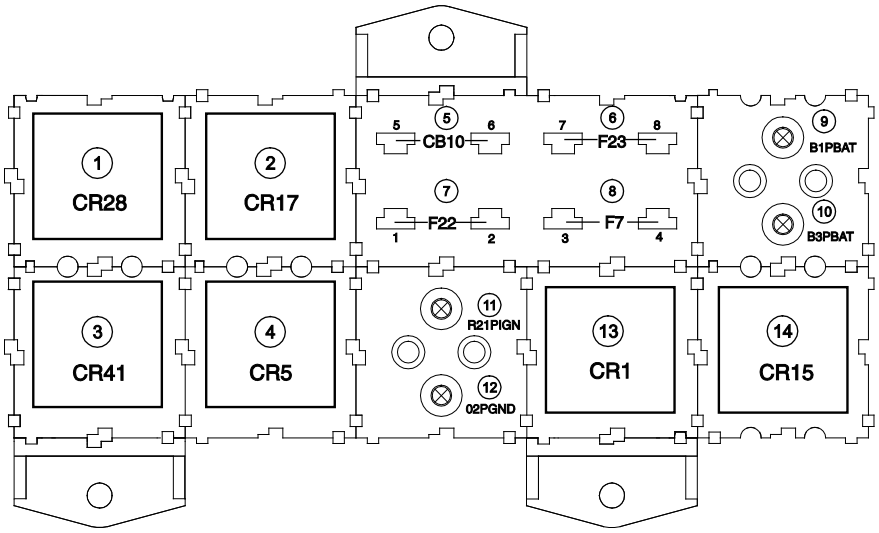
Wireless Certifications

Telematic device(s) should comply with specific wireless carrier certifications where applicable and comply with the following:

North America	PTCRB, FCC/IC
Europe	CE, R&TTE

Engine Relay and Fuse Panel Legend - Deutz TD2011L04i

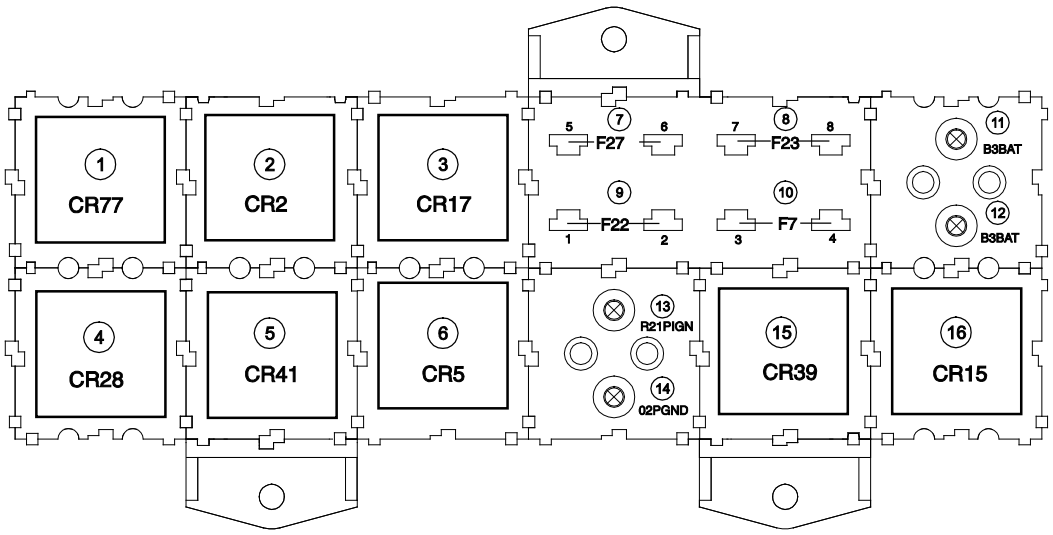
Deutz TD2011L04i Models



Number	Component	Description
1	CR28	Start Relay
2	CR17	Hydraulic Oil Cooler Fan Relay
3	CR41	Flashing Beacon Relay
4	CR5	Horn Relay
5	CB10	Circuit Breaker, 20A, Hydraulic Oil Cooler / Horn
6	F23	Fuse, 30A, Eng / Start / Alt
7	F22	Fuse, 60A, Glow Plug
8	F7	Fuse, 20A, Hydraulic Oil Cooler / Horn
9	B1PBAT	Power from Battery
10	B3PBAT	Fused Power from B1
11	R21PIGN	Ignition Fuse, 20A, RPM Solenoid
12	02PGND	Ground
13	CR1	Start Relay
14	CR15	Glow Plug Relay

Engine Relay and Fuse Panel Legend- Deutz TD2.9 Models

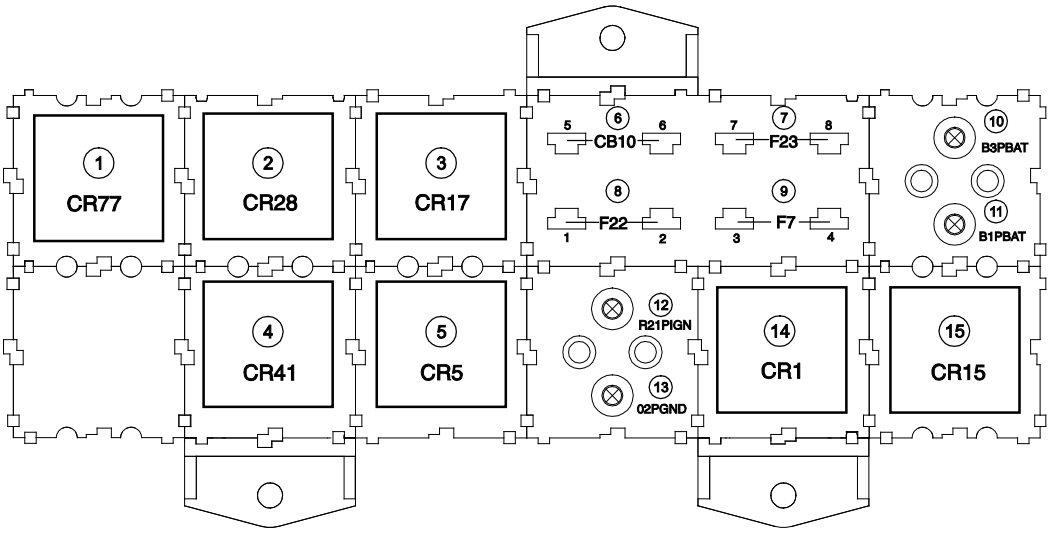
Deutz TD2.9 Models



Number	Component	Description
1	CR77	PCE #1
2	CR2	Engine Alt. Relay
3	CR17	Hydraulic Oil Cooler / Fan Relay
4	CR28	Fuel Pump
5	CR41	Flashing Beacon Relay
6	CR5	Horn Relay
7	F27	Fuse, 30A, ECU Power
8	F23	Fuse, 30A, Eng / Start/ Alt
9	F22	Fuse, 60A, Glow Plug
10	F7	Fuse, 20A, Hydraulic Oil Cooler / Horn
11	B3BAT	Fused Power from B1
12	B3BAT	Fused Power from B1
13	R21IGN	Ignition
14	02GND	Ground
15	CR39	Engine Shutdown
16	CR15	Glow Plug Relay

Engine Relay and Fuse Panel Legend - Perkins 1104D-44T

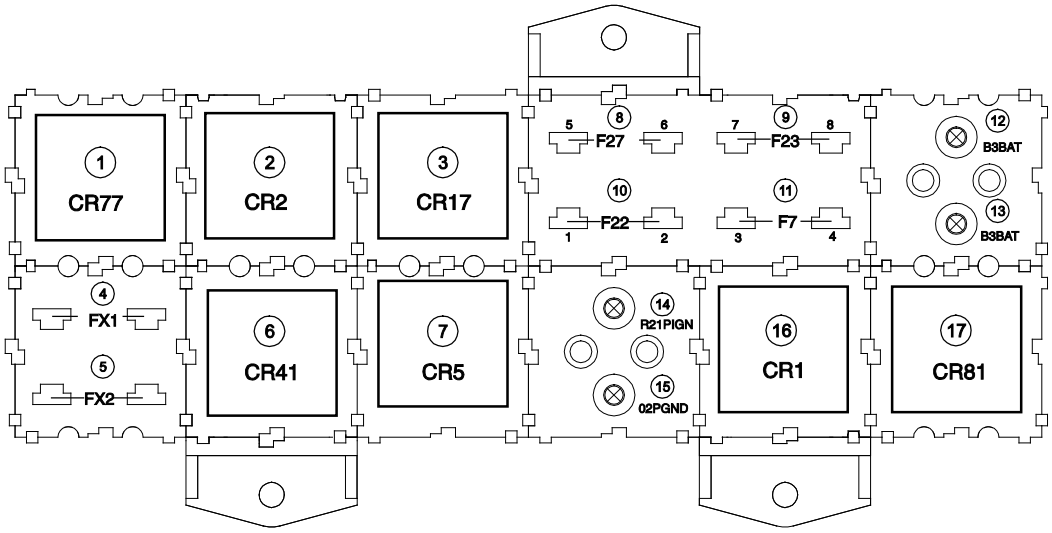
Perkins 1104D Models



Number	Component	Description
1	CR77	Function Enable Relay
2	CR28	Start Relay
3	CR17	Hydraulic Oil Cooler Fan Relay
4	CR41	Flashing Beacon Relay
5	CR5	Horn Relay
6	CB10	Circuit Breaker, 20A, Hydraulic Oil Cooler / Horn
7	F23	Fuse, 30A, Eng / Start / Alt
8	F22	Fuse, 60A, Glow Plug
9	F7	Fuse, 20A, Hydraulic Oil Cooler / Horn
10	B3PBAT	Fused Power from B1
11	B1PBAT	Power from Battery
12	R21PIGN	Ignition Fuse, 20A, RPM Solenoid
13	02PGND	Ground
14	CR1	Start Relay
15	CR15	Glow Plug Relay

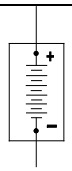
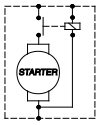
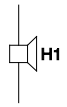
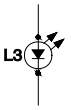
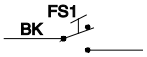
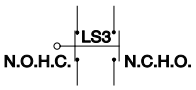
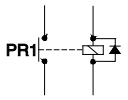
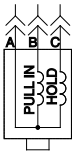
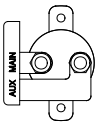
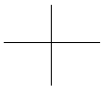
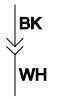
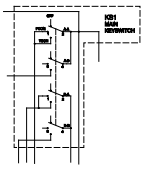
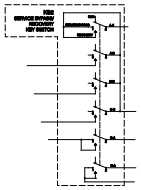
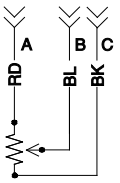
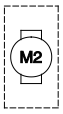
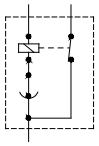
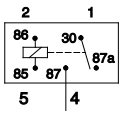
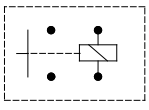
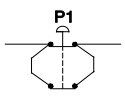
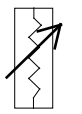
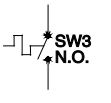
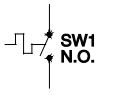
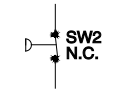
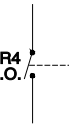
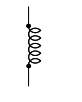
Engine Relay and Fuse Panel Legend- Perkins 854F Models

Perkins 854F-34T Models

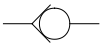
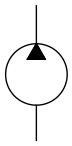
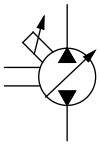
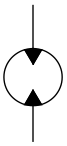
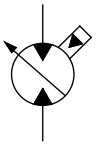
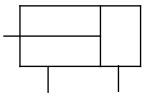
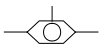
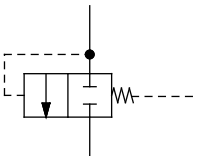
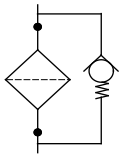
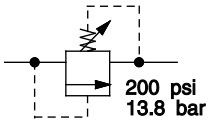
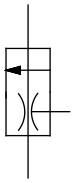
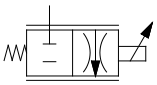
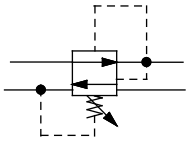
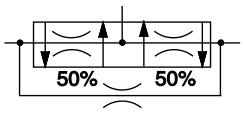
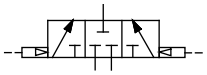
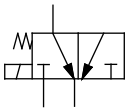
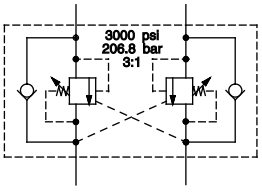
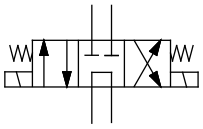
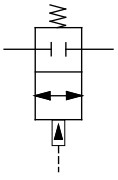
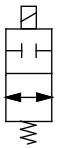


Number	Component	Description
1	CR77A	PCE#1
2	CR2	Engine Alt
3	CR17	Hydraulic Oil Cooler Fan Relay
4	FX1	Fuse, 30A, ECU Power
5	FX2	Fuse, 20A, Key Switch Power
6	CR41	Flashing Beacon Relay
7	CR5	Horn Relay
8	F27	Fuse, 20A, RPM Solenoid
9	F23	Fuse, 30A, Eng / Start / Alt
10	F22	Fuse, 60A, Glow Plug
11	F7	Fuse, 20A, Hydraulic Oil Cooler / Horn
12	B3BAT	Fused Power from B1
13	B1BAT	Power from Battery
14	R21PIGN	Ignition
15	02PGND	Ground
16	CR1	Engine Starter
17	CR81	ECU Power

Electrical Symbols Legend

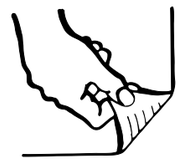
				
Battery	Motor	Horn or alarm	Flashing beacon	Gauge
				
Diode	Hour meter	LED	Fuse with amperage	Foot switch
				
Circuit connection	Limit Switch	Power relay	Coil with suppression	Fuel or RPM solenoid
				
Connection - no terminal	Battery separator	Circuits crossing no connection	Quick disconnect terminal	Circuit breaker with amperage
				
Main Key switch	Service Bypass Key switch	Steer sensor	Auxiliary Pump	Tilt sensor
				
Relay	Power relay	Emergency Stop button	Hydraulic oil cooling fan	Gauge sending unit
				
Oil temperature switch normally open	Coolant temperature switch - normally open	Oil pressure switch normally closed	Control relay contact normally open	Diode starting aid, glow plug or flame ignitor

Hydraulic Symbols Legend

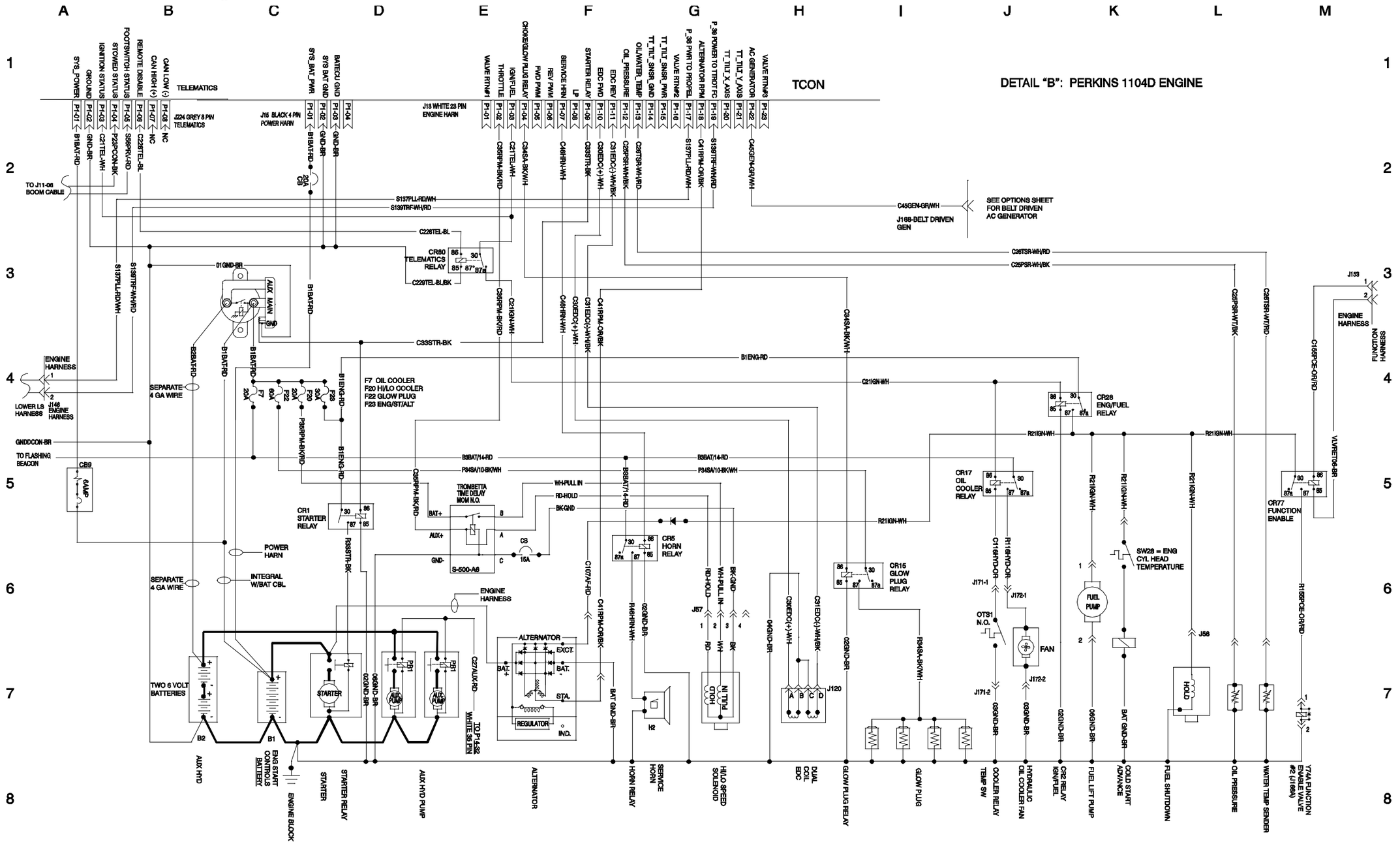
 Orifice with size	 Check valve	 Shut off valve	 Brake
 Pump, fixed displacement	 Pump, bi-directional variable displacement	 Motor, bi-directional	 Motor, 2 speed bi-directional
 Cylinder, double acting	 Pump, prime mover (engine or motor)	 Shuttle valve. 2 position, 3 way	 Differential sensing valve
 Filter with bypass relief valve	 Relief valve with pressure setting	 Priority flow regulator	 Solenoid operated proportional valve
 Pressure reducing valve	 Flow divider/combiner valve	 Pilot operated 3 position, 3 way shuttle valve	 Solenoid operated 2 position, 3 way directional valve
 Counterbalance valve with pressure and pilot ratio	 Solenoid operated 3 position 4 way directional valve	 Pilot operated 2 position, 2 way directional valve	 2 position, 2 way solenoid valve

This page intentionally left blank.

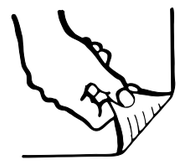
Perkins 1104D-44T Engine Electrical Schematic



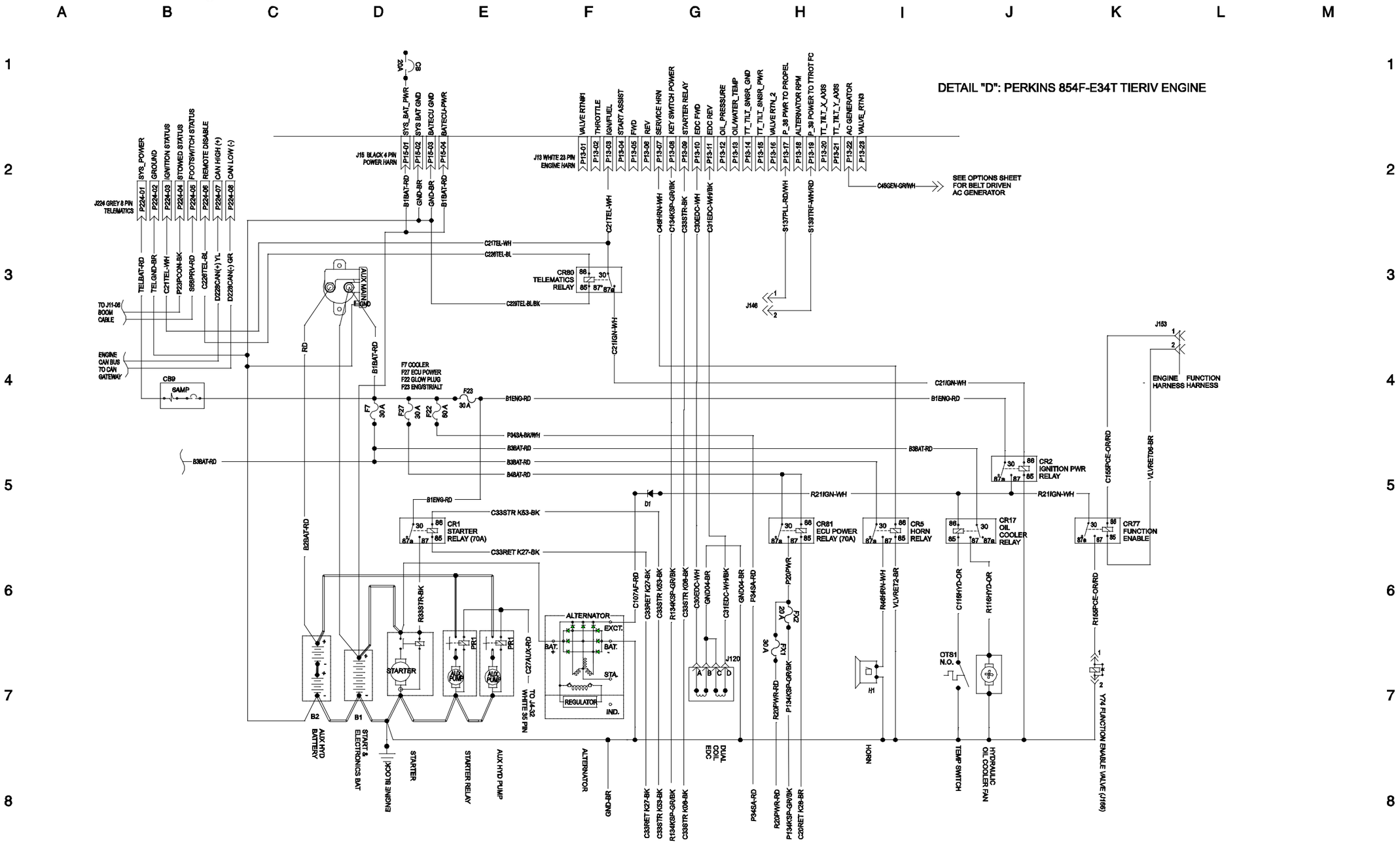
Perkins 1104D-44T Engine Electrical Schematic



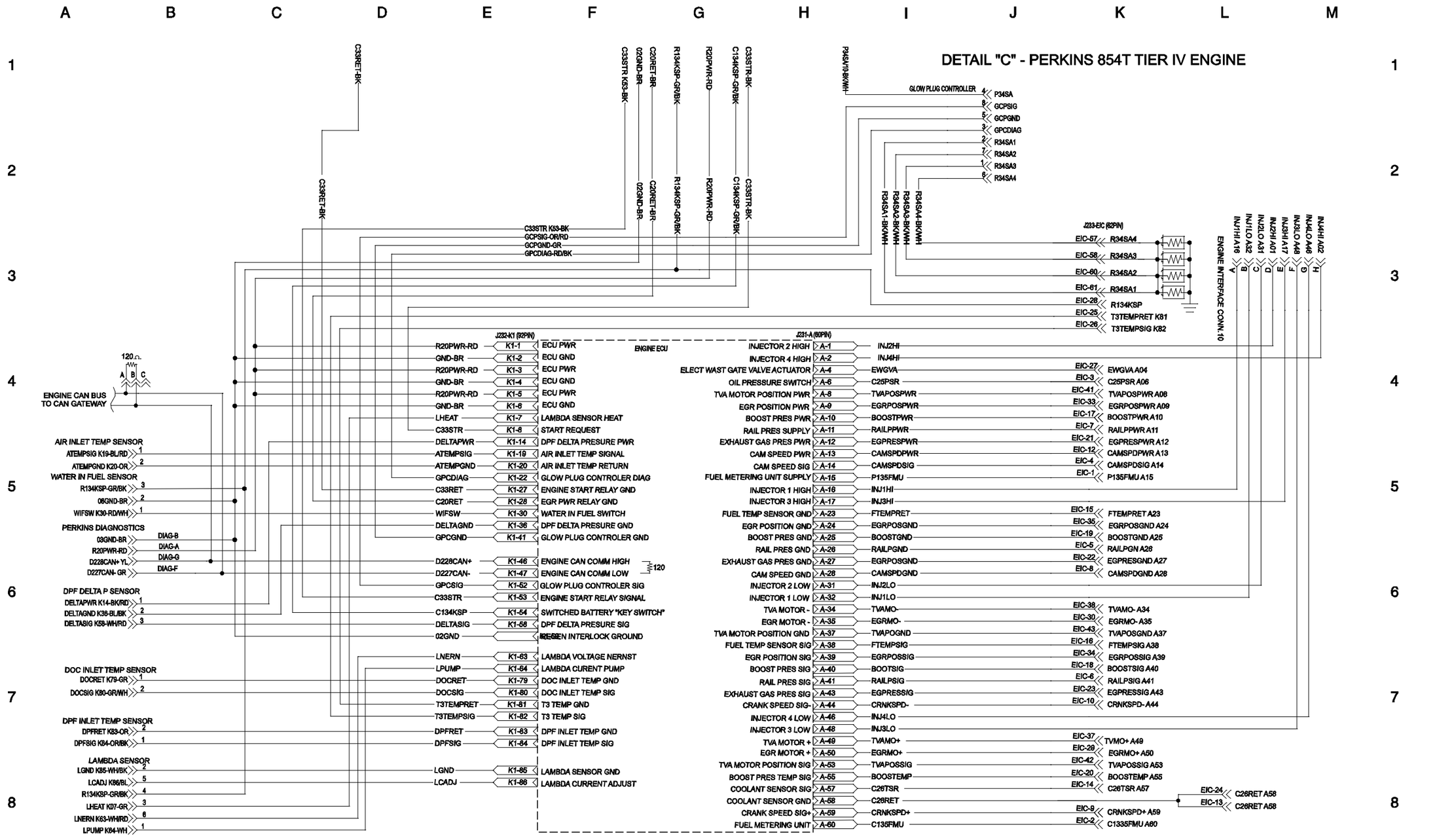
Perkins 854F-34T Engine Electrical Schematic



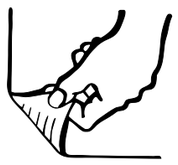
Perkins 854F-34T Engine Electrical Schematic



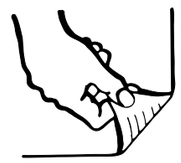
Perkins 854F-34T Engine Harness



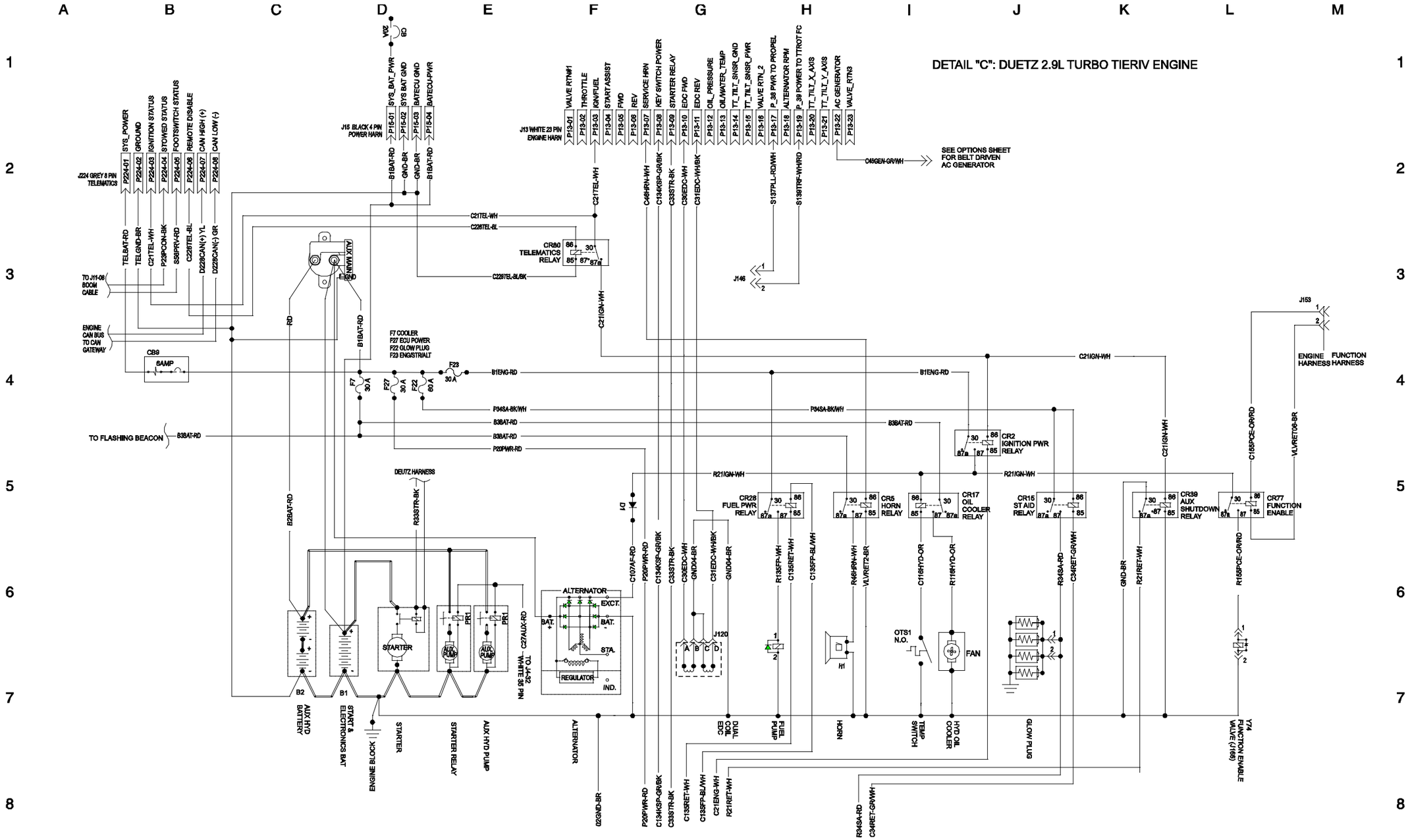
Perkins 854F-34T Engine Harness



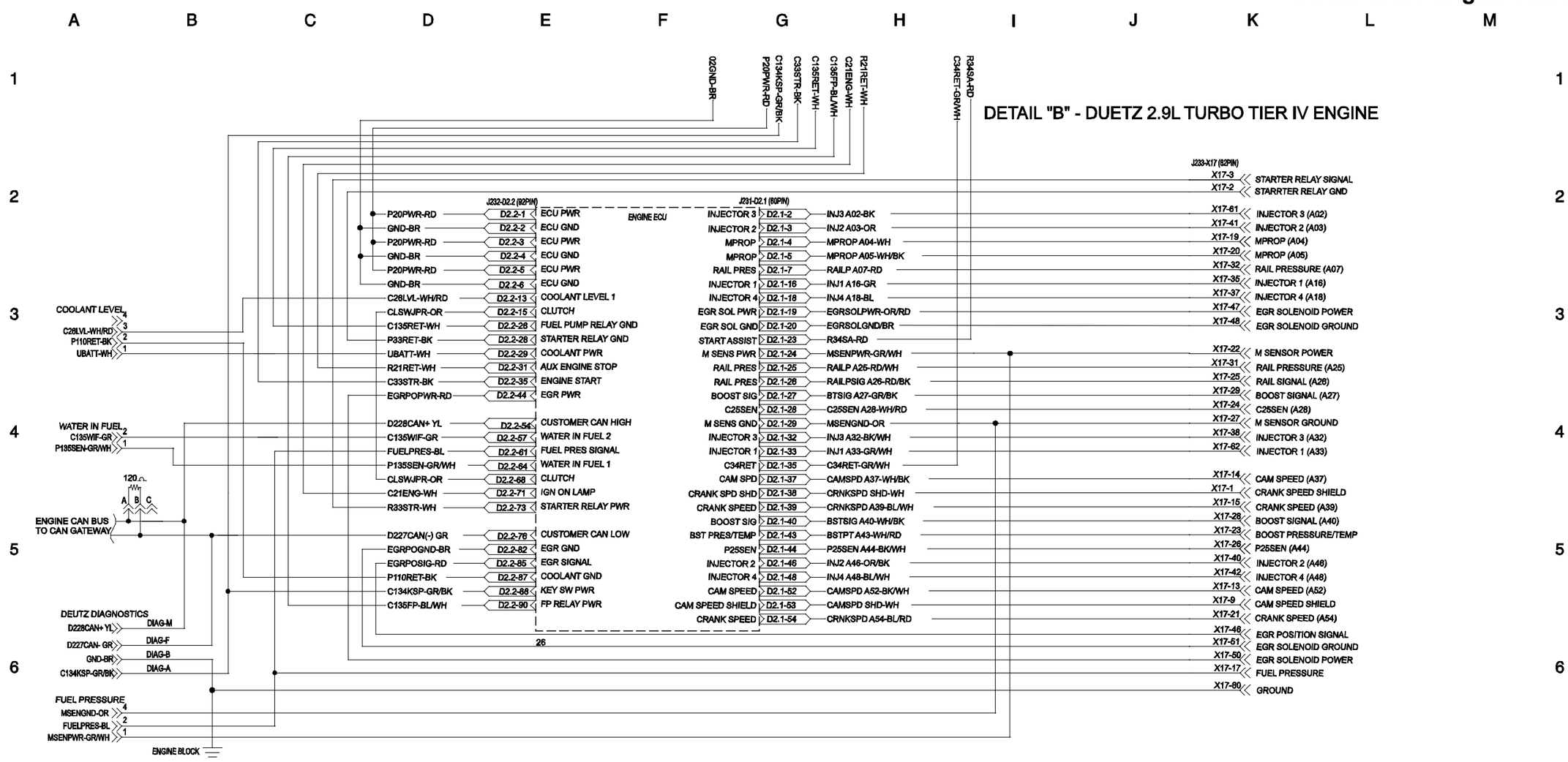
Deutz TD2.9 Engine Electrical Schematic



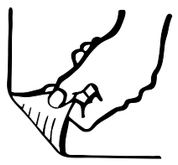
Deutz TD2.9 Engine Electrical Schematic



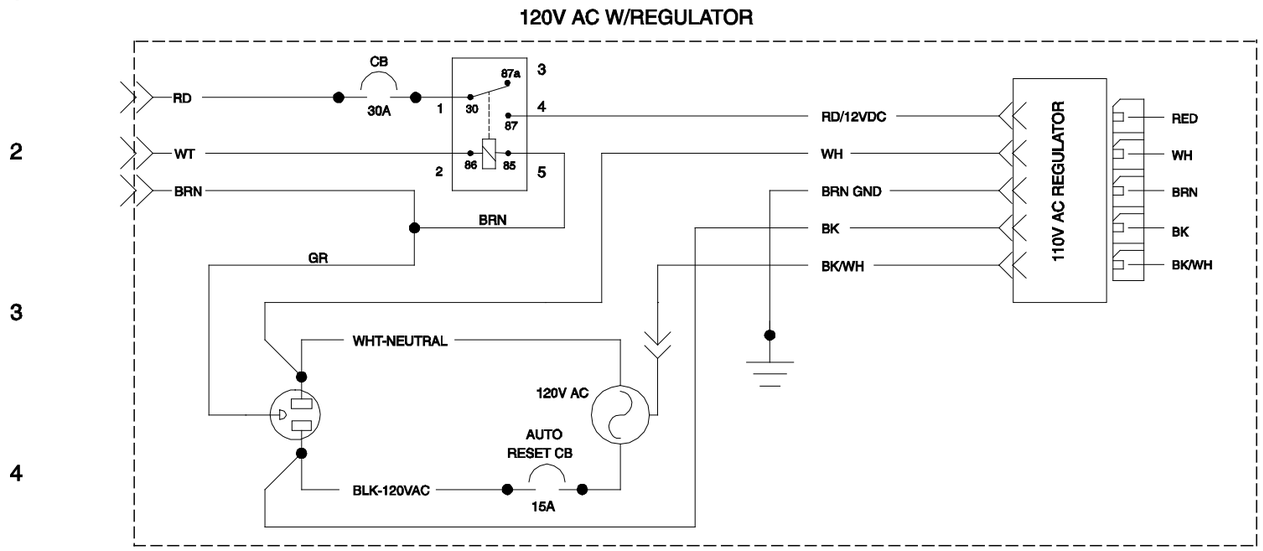
Deutz TD2.9 Engine Harness

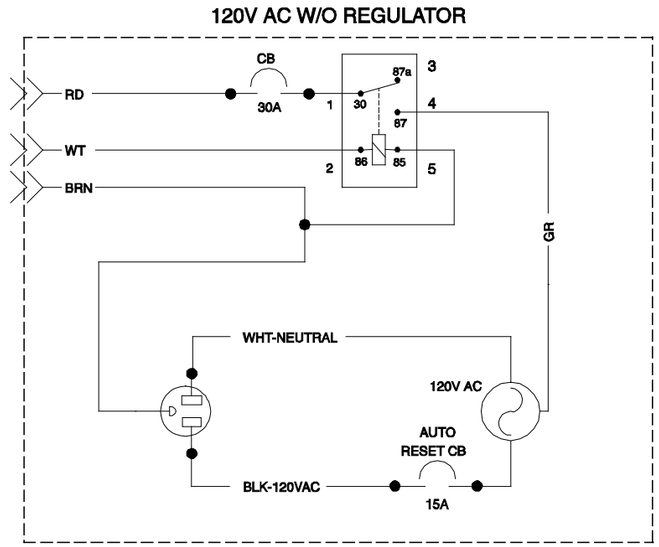


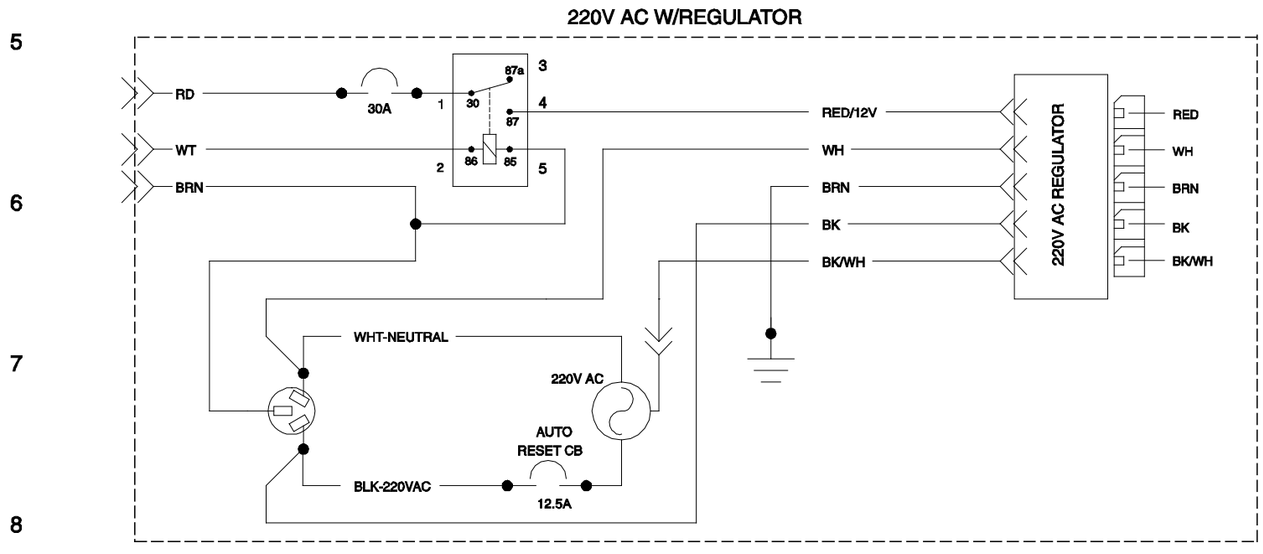
Deutz TD2.9 Engine Harness



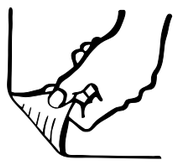
Generator Wiring Schematic



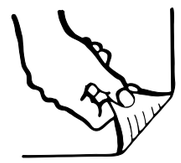




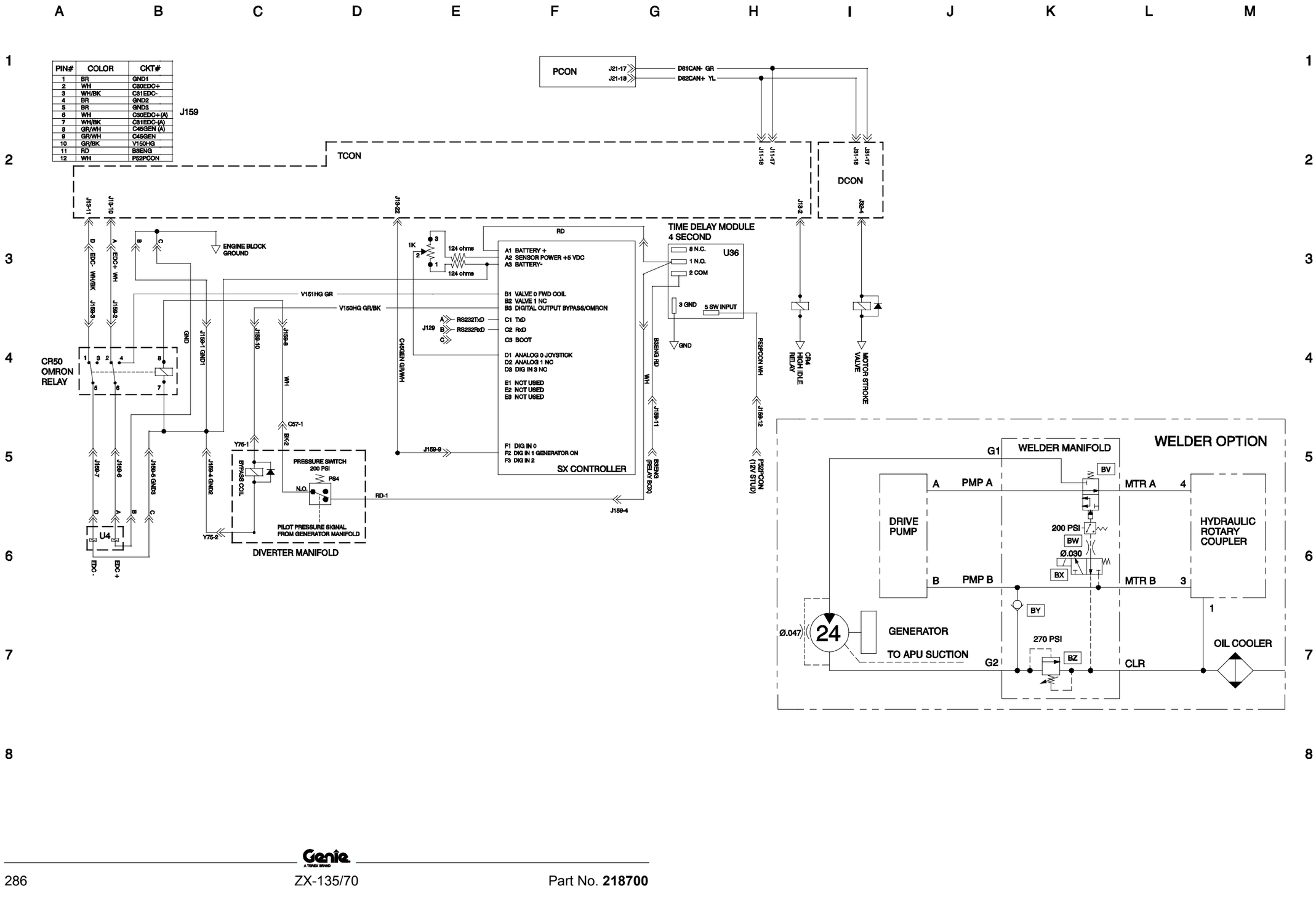
Generator Wiring Schematic



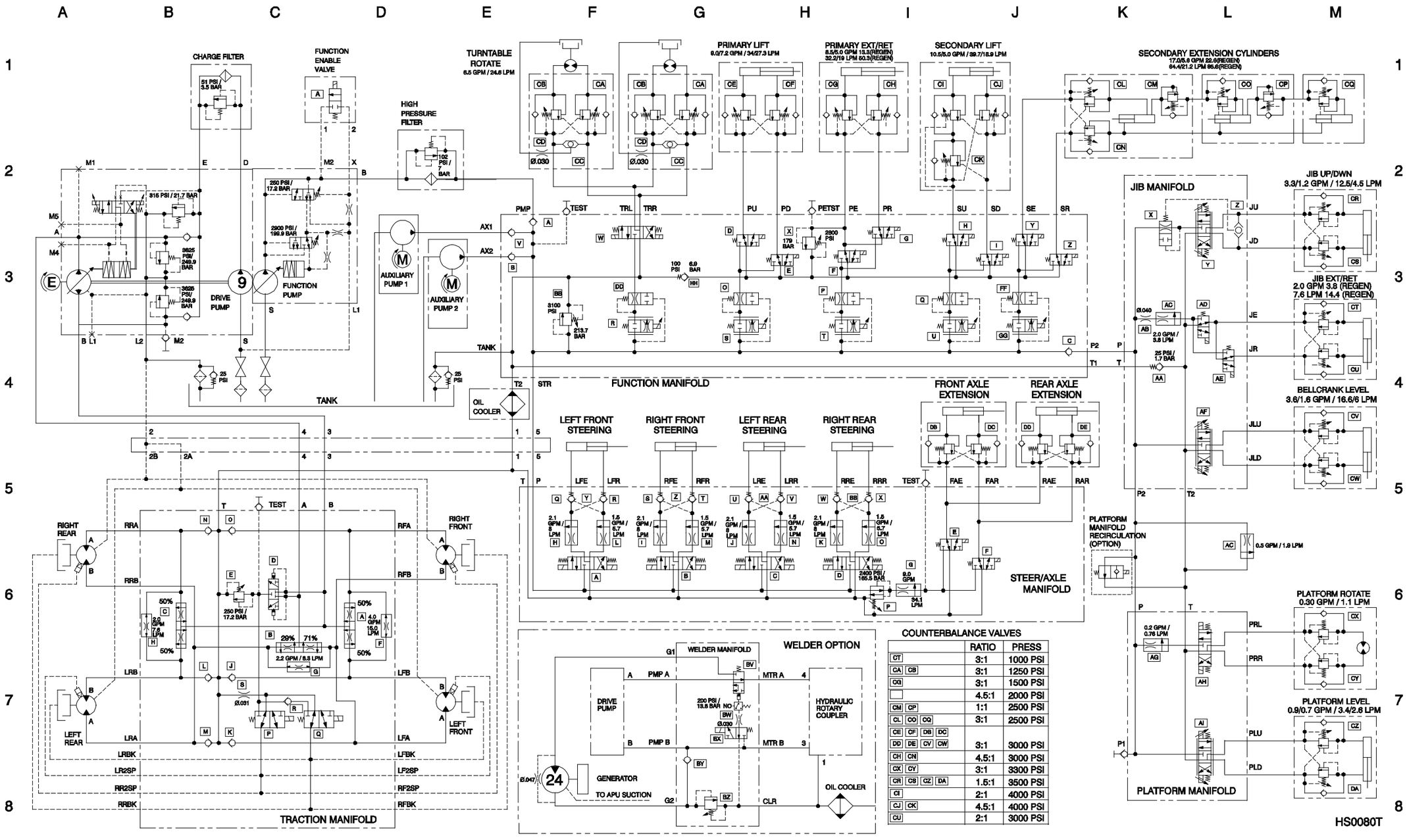
Hydraulic Generator (Welder Option)



Hydraulic Generator (Welder Option)



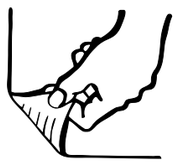
Hydraulic Schematic



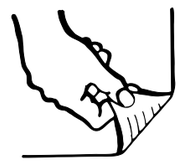
	RATIO	PRESS
CT	3:1	1000 PSI
CA CB	3:1	1250 PSI
CQ	3:1	1500 PSI
	4.5:1	2000 PSI
CM CP	1:1	2500 PSI
CL CO CQ	3:1	2500 PSI
CE CF DB DC		
DD DE CV CW	3:1	3000 PSI
CH CN	4.5:1	3000 PSI
CX CY	3:1	3300 PSI
CR CS CZ DA	1.5:1	3500 PSI
CI	2:1	4000 PSI
CJ CK	4.5:1	4000 PSI
CU	2:1	3000 PSI

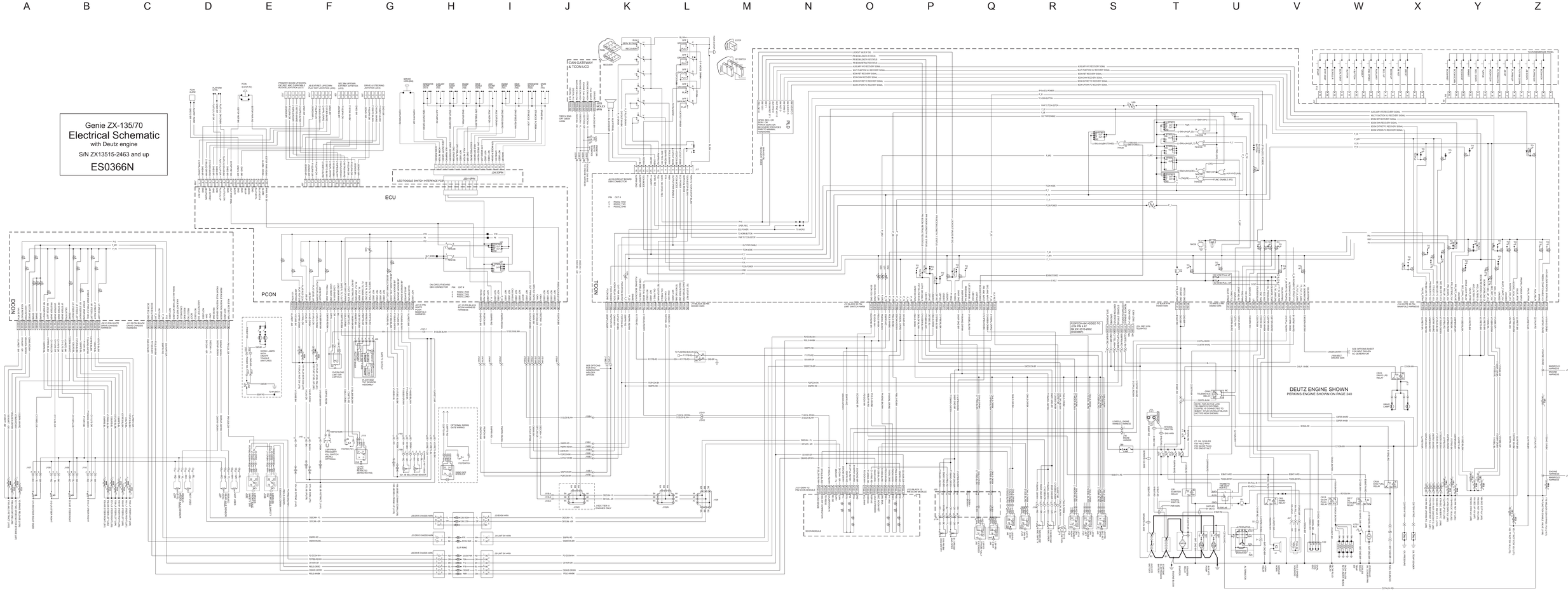
HS0080T

Hydraulic Schematic



Electrical Schematic (Includes Deutz Engine)




Genie ZX-135/70
Electrical Schematic
with Deutz engine
S/N ZX13515-2463 and up
ES0366N
ECU
PCON
TCON
DEUTZ ENGINE SHOWN
PERKINS ENGINE SHOWN ON PAGE 240

California Proposition 65

Warning

The exhaust from this product contains chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer, birth defects or other reproductive harm.

Distributed By:

Genie North America
Phone 425.881.1800
Toll Free USA and Canada 800.536.1800
Fax 425.883.3475

Genie Australia Pty Ltd.
Phone +61 7 3375 1660
Fax +61 7 3375 1002

Genie China
Phone +86 21 53853768
Fax +86 21 53852569

Genie Singapore
Phone +65 67533544
Fax +65 67533544

Genie Japan
Phone +81 3 6436 2020
Fax +81 3 5445 1231

Genie Korea
Phone +82 2 558 7267
Fax +82 2 558 3910

Genie Brasil
Phone +55 11 4082 5600
Fax +55 22 4082 5630

Genie Holland
Phone +31 183 581 102
Fax +31 183 581 566

Genie Sweden
Phone 0046 3157 5101
Fax 0046 3157 5104

Genie France
Phone 0033 237 260 986
Fax 0033 237 260 998

Genie Iberica
Phone 0034 900 808 110
Fax 0034 935 725 080

Genie Germany
Phone 0800 180 9017
Phone 0049 4221 491 810
Fax 0049 4221 491 820

Genie U.K.
Phone 0044 1476 584 333
Fax 0044 1476 584 330

Genie Mexico City
Phone +52 55 5666 5242
Fax +52 55 5666 3241